(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau

(43) International Publication Date
9 April 2015 (09.04.2015)

WIPO | PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2015/050871 A2

(51) International Patent Classification:
A61K 48/00 (2006.01) *C07F 9/6512* (2006.01)
C07H 21/02 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:
PCT/US2014/058314

(22) International Filing Date:
30 September 2014 (30.09.2014)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
61/886,760 4 October 2013 (04.10.2013) US

(71) Applicant *(for all designated States except US)*: **NOVARTIS AG** [CH/CH]; Lichtstrasse 35, 4056 Basel (CH).

(72) Inventors; and

(71) Applicants *(for US only)*: **BARYZA, Jeremy, Lee** [US/US]; Novartis Institutes for BioMedical Research, Inc., 250 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139 (US). **BLOMMERS, Marcel** [NL/CH]; Novartis Pharma AG, Postfach, 4002 Basel (CH). **FERNANDEZ, Cesar** [CH/CH]; Novartis Pharma AG, Postfach, 4002 Basel (CH). **GENO, Erin** [US/US]; Novartis Institutes for BioMedical Research, Inc., 250 Masschusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139 (US). **GOSSERT, Alvar** [CH/CH]; Novartis Pharma AG, Postfach, 4002 Basel (CH). **GREENIDGE, Paulette** [GB/CH]; Novartis Pharma AG, Postfach, 4002 Basel (CH). **HUESKEN, Dieter** [DE/CH]; Novartis Pharma AG, Postfach, 4056 Basel (CH). **HUNZIKER, Juerg** [CH/CH]; Novartis Pharma AG, Postfach, 4002 Basel (CH). **NATT, Francois, Jean-Charles** [FR/CH]; Novartis Pharma AG, Postfach, 4002 Basel (CH). **PATNAIK, Anup** [IN/US]; Novartis Institutes for BioMedical Research, Inc., 250 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139 (US). **PATTERSON, Andrew** [US/US]; Novartis Institutes for BioMedical Research, Inc., 250 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139 (US). **RONDEAU, Jean-Michel, Rene** [FR/CH]; Novartis Pharma AG, Postfach, 4002 Basel (CH). **WEILER, Jan** [DE/US]; Novartis Institutes for BioMedical Research, Inc., 250 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139 (US). **ZHU, Meicheng** [US/US]; 6 Rumbrook Road, Leominster, MA 01453 (US). **HOLDORF, Meghan** [US/US]; Novartis Vaccines and Diagnostics, Inc., 4560 Horton Street, Emeryville, CA 94608 (US).

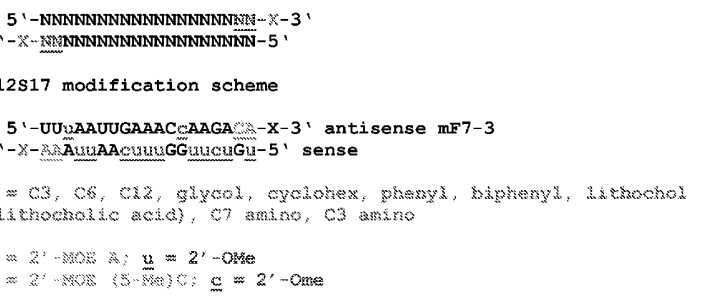
(74) Common Representative: **NOVARTIS AG**; Lichtstrasse 35, 4056 Basel (CH).

(81) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available)*: AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JP, KE, KG, KN, KP, KR,

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: ORGANIC COMPOUNDS TO TREAT HEPATITIS B VIRUS

FIG. 1



(57) Abstract: The disclosure relates to compositions comprising a HBV RNAi agent. In some embodiments, the HBV RNAi agent comprises a sense and an anti-sense strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the 3' end of both the sense and anti-sense strand further comprise, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. The two strands can have the same or different spacers, phosphates or modified internucleoside linkers, and/or 3' end caps. The strands can be ribonucleotides, or, optionally, one or more nucleotide can be modified or substituted. Optionally, at least one nucleotide comprises a modified internucleoside linker. Optionally, the RNAi agent can be modified on one or both 5' end. Optionally, the sense strand can comprise a 5' end cap which reduces the amount of the RNA interference mediated by this strand. Optionally, the RNAi agent is attached to a ligand. This format can be used to devise RNAi agents to a variety of different targets and sequences. The disclosure also relates to processes for making such compositions, and methods and uses of such compositions, e.g., to mediate RNA interference. The disclosure also pertains to methods of treating, ameliorating and preventing HBV in a patient involving the step of administering to the patient a therapeutic amount of a HBV RNAi agent.

WO 2015/050871 A2

KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU, RW, SA, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available)*: ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, ST, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— *without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report (Rule 48.2(g))*

ORGANIC COMPOUNDS TO TREAT HEPATITIS B VIRUS

[001] FIELD OF THE INVENTION

[002] The present disclosure pertains to RNAi agents to Hepatitis B Virus (HBV).

[003] In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is that of any sequence of Table 8C (any of SEQ ID NOs: 138 – 157 or 217-220).

[004] In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to HBV RNAi agents which comprise any sequence or an 18-nt portion of any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10 (e.g., nt 1-18 or nt 2-19 of any sequence in these tables). In various embodiments, these HBV RNAi agents are blunt-ended.

[005] In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to HBV RNAi agents which comprise any sequence of at least 15 contiguous nt of any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10 (e.g., nt 1-15, 2-16, 3-17, 4-18, or 5-19, etc. of any sequence in these tables).

[006] In various embodiments, the disclosure relates to compositions comprising a HBV RNAi agent having a novel format (the “18-mer format”). These HBV RNAi agents comprise a sense and an anti-sense strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3’ end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5’ to 3’ order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3’ end cap. In some embodiments, the 3’ end of both the sense and anti-sense strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprise, in 5’ to 3’ order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3’ end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a HBV RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strand are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3’ end of the first strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5’ to 3’ order: a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3’ end cap; and wherein the 3’ end of the second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3’ end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a HBV RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3’ end of both the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and both further comprise a 3’ end

cap. In some embodiments, the first strand is the antisense strand and the second strand is the sense strand. In other embodiments, the first strand is the sense strand and the second strand is the antisense strand. The two strands can have the same or different spacers, phosphates or modified internucleoside linkers, and/or 3' end caps. The strands can be ribonucleotides, or, optionally, one or more nucleotide can be modified or substituted. Optionally, at least one nucleotide comprises a modified internucleoside linker. Optionally, the RNAi agent can be modified on one or both 5' end. Optionally, the sense strand can comprise a 5' end cap which reduces the amount of the RNA interference mediated by this strand. Optionally, the RNAi agent is attached to a ligand. The disclosure also relates to processes for making such compositions, and methods and uses of such compositions, e.g., to mediate RNA interference.

[007] BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

[008] Globally, over 400 million people are chronically infected with hepatitis B virus (HBV), and more than 12 million reside in the United States alone. Of those chronically infected patients, up to 40 percent will eventually develop complications of liver failure from cirrhosis or development of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). One of the key diagnostic symptoms of chronic HBV (CHB) is the high serum levels of the hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg or sAg) which may play a role in suppression of the host innate immune response. Clinical data in the recent years suggest that sustained virologic response is often associated with on-treatment HBsAg decline during the early phase of the treatment (as early as week 8). CHB patients who experienced larger and faster decreases in serum HBsAg levels achieved significantly higher rate (~40%) of sustained virologic response as defined by sustained viral control post treatment. Current treatment options, comprising mainly of nucleoside/nucleotide inhibitors of the viral DNA polymerase, focus on reduction in the level of viremia and toleration of hepatic dysfunction, may have adverse side-effects, and select for drug-resistant virus variants during long term therapy. More importantly, these therapies cannot eradicate the intrahepatic HBV cccDNA (covalently closed circular DNA) pool in chronic hepatitis B patients or limit the transcription of HBsAg from the pre-existing cccDNA, nor do they affect the secretion of synthesized HBsAg into patients' blood to counteract the host innate immune response. As a result, these HBV treatments are in most cases life-long therapy and discontinuation often leads to virological relapse. Based on these observations but without wishing to be bound by any particular theory, this disclosure contemplates that novel therapeutic approaches, in conjunction with current nucleoside/nucleotide inhibitors, that target 1) elimination of the cccDNA pool, or 2) reduction of cccDNA-dependent transcription and synthesis/secretion of HBsAg will significantly enhance

sustained virologic response among CHB patients and achieve a meaningful clinical cure of this debilitating viral disease.

[009] There exists the need for novel treatments for HBV.

[0010] BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[0011] In one embodiment, the disclosure pertains to RNAi agents to Hepatitis B Virus (HBV).

[0012] In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is that of any sequencedisclosed herein, e.g., any sequence of Table 8C (any of SEQ ID NOs: 138 – 157 or 217-220).

[0013] In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to HBV RNAi agents which comprise any sequence or an 18-nt portion of any sequence disclosed herein, e.g, any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10 (e.g., nt 1-18 or nt 2-19 of any sequence in these tables). In various embodiments, these HBV RNAi agents are blunt-ended.

[0014] In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to HBV RNAi agents which comprise any sequence of at least 15 contiguous nt of any sequence disclosed herein, e.g., any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10 (e.g., nt 1-15 or nt 2-16 of any sequence in these tables).

[0015] In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to HBV RNAi agents which comprise a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are both 18-mers and together the first and second strands form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is the sequence of nt 1-18 or 2-19 of any sequence disclosed here, e.g., any sequence in any of Tables 8B - 8E or 10.

[0016] The disclosure also relates to compositions comprising a HBV RNAi agent having a novel format (the “18-mer format”). These RNAi agents comprise a sense and an anti-sense strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3’ end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate (designated herein as “p” or “PO”) or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5’ to 3’ order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3’ end cap. In some embodiments, each strand terminates at the 5’ end with a hydroxyl, optionally linked to a 5’ end cap or a ligand. In some embodiments, the 3’ end of both the sense and anti-sense strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprise, in 5’ to 3’ order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3’ end cap. The two strands can

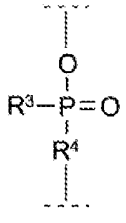
have the same or different spacers, phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and/or 3' end caps. The strands can be ribonucleotides, or, optionally, one or more nucleotide can be modified or substituted. Optionally, at least one nucleotide comprises a modified internucleoside linker. Optionally, the RNAi agent can be modified on one or both 5' end. Optionally, the sense strand can comprise a 5' end cap which reduces the amount of the RNA interference mediated by this strand. Optionally, the RNAi agent is attached to a ligand. The disclosure also relates to processes for making such compositions, and methods and uses of such compositions, e.g., to mediate RNA interference.

[0017] In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to HBV RNAi agents which comprise a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strands are 18-mers and together the first and second strands form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is the sequence of nt 1-18 or 2-19 or any sequence in any of Tables 8B - 8E or 10, and wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a 3' end cap.

[0018] In some embodiments of the HBV RNAi agent, the spacer is ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide. In some embodiments of the HBV RNAi agent, the spacer is a ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide, 2'-deoxyribitol, or 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol (ribitol with 2'-MOE), a C3, C4, C5 or C6, or 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol.

[0019] In various embodiments, the spacer is ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide, 2'-deoxy-ribitol, diribitol, 2'-methoxyethoxy-ribitol (ribitol with 2'-MOE), C3, C4, C5, C6, or 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol. In various embodiments, the spacers on the sense and anti-sense strands can be the same or different.

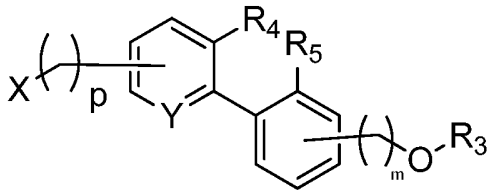
[0020] In various embodiments, the modified internucleoside linker is selected from phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate, boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, and a compound of formula (I):



(I), where R^3 is selected from O^-, S^-, NH_2, BH_3, CH_3, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{6-10} aryl, C_{1-6} alkoxy and C_{6-10} aryl-oxy, wherein C_{1-6} alkyl and C_{6-10} aryl are unsubstituted or optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 groups independently selected from halo, hydroxyl and NH_2; and R^4 is selected from O, S, NH, or CH_2.

[0021] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is selected from those represented by formula 1a or 1b, disclosed in Tables 1A, 1B, 1C, 1D, 1E, or 1, or otherwise described herein or known in the art. In various embodiments, the 3' end caps on the sense and anti-sense strands can be the same or different.

[0022] In one embodiment, the 3' end cap encompasses a compound of formula Ia:



Ia

in which:

X is the 3' end of a strand of a HBV RNAi agent, or the 3' end of a molecule comprising a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or internucleoside linker and optionally further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a second phosphate or internucleoside linker;

Y is CH or N;

m is 0 or 1;

p is 1, 2 or 3;

R_3 is hydrogen, 2-(hydroxy-methyl)-benzyl, 3-(hydroxy-methyl)-benzyl, succinate, or a solid support;

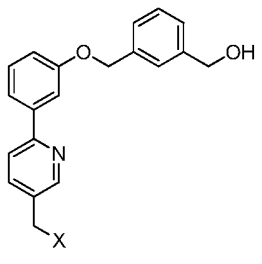
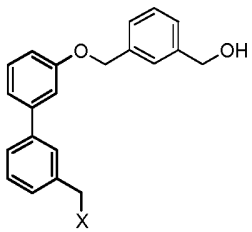
wherein the $(CH_2)_m$-O-R_3 moiety is attached to the phenyl ring at position 3 or 4;

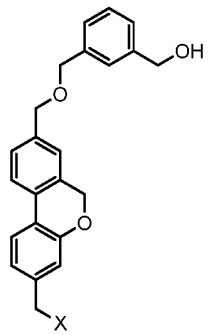
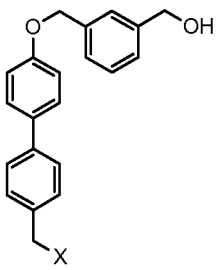
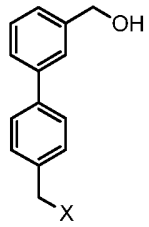
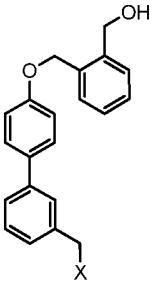
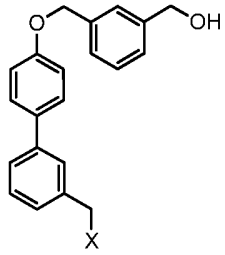
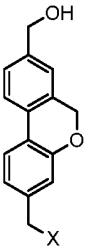
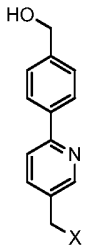
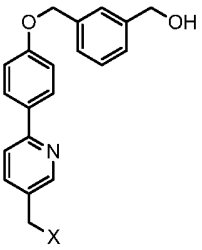
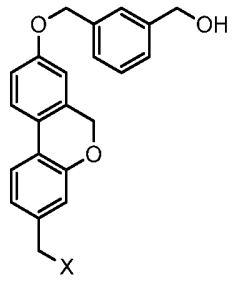
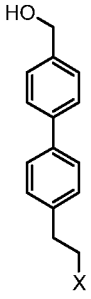
R_4 is hydrogen;

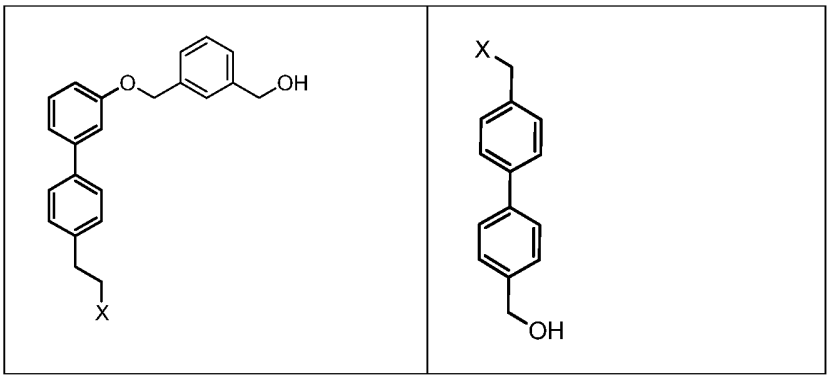
R_5 is hydrogen; or R_4 and R_5, together with the phenyl rings to which R_4 and R_5 are attached, form 6H-benzo[c]chromene.

[0023] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap encompasses a compound selected from Table 1A.

TABLE 1A.

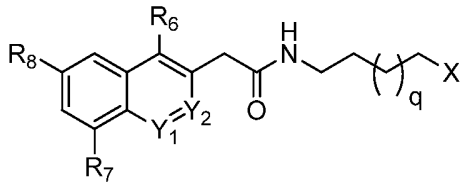
	
	
	
	
	



in which:

X is the 3' end of a strand of a HBV RNAi agent, or the 3' end of a molecule comprising a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or internucleoside linker and optionally further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a second phosphate or internucleoside linker.

[0024] In one embodiment, the 3' end cap encompasses a compound of formula Ib:



Ib

in which:

X is the 3' end of a strand of a HBV RNAi agent, or the 3' end of a molecule comprising a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or internucleoside linker and optionally further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a second phosphate or internucleoside linker;

q is 0, 1 or 2;

R_6 is phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with a group selected from benzoxy and 3,4-dihydroxybutyl;

R_7 is hydrogen or hydroxy-ethyl, wherein if R_7 is hydroxy-ethyl, the hydroxyl can be optionally functionalized as succinate or attached to a solid support;

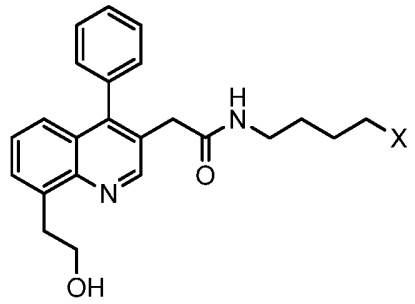
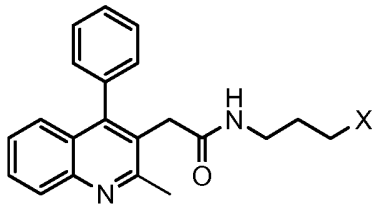
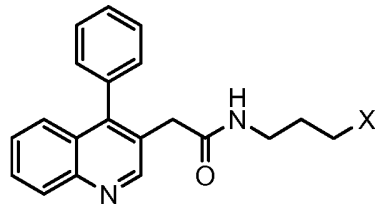
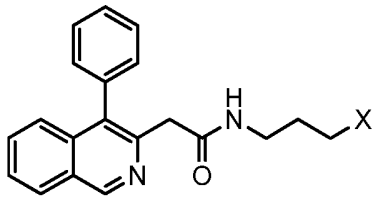
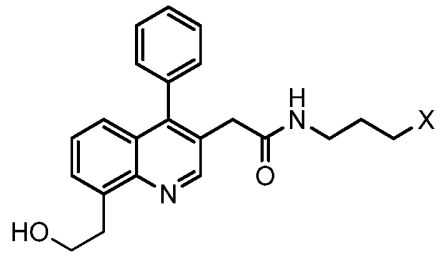
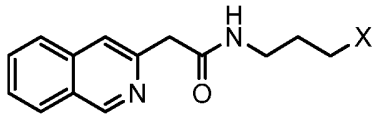
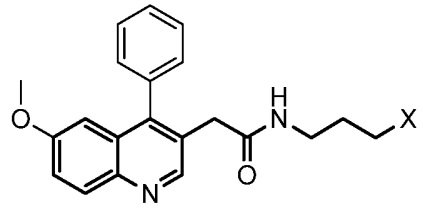
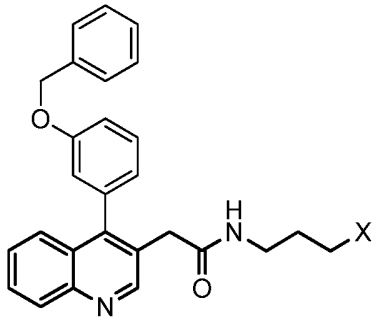
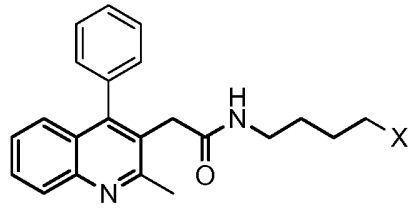
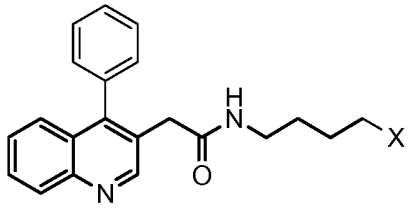
R_8 is hydrogen or methoxy;

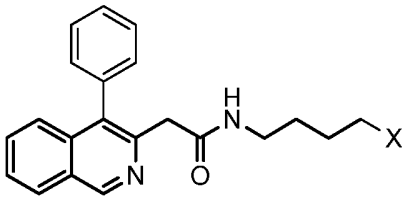
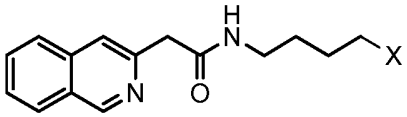
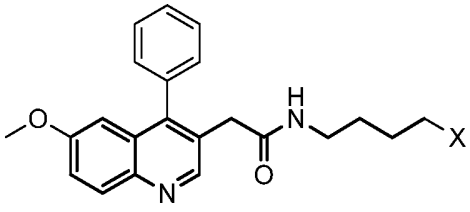
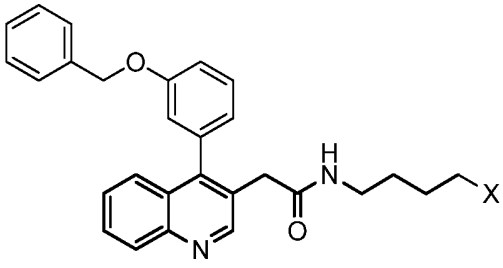
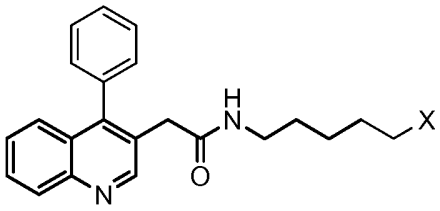
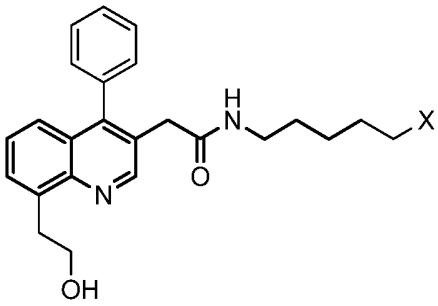
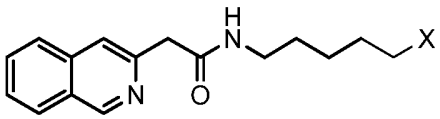
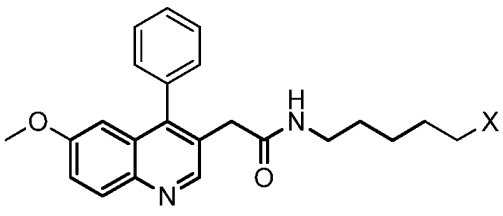
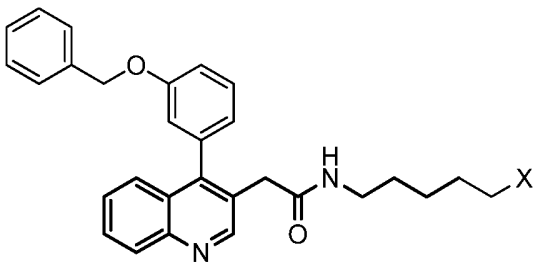
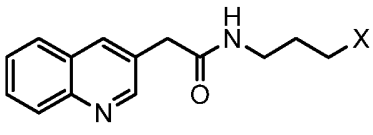
Y_1 is CH or N; and

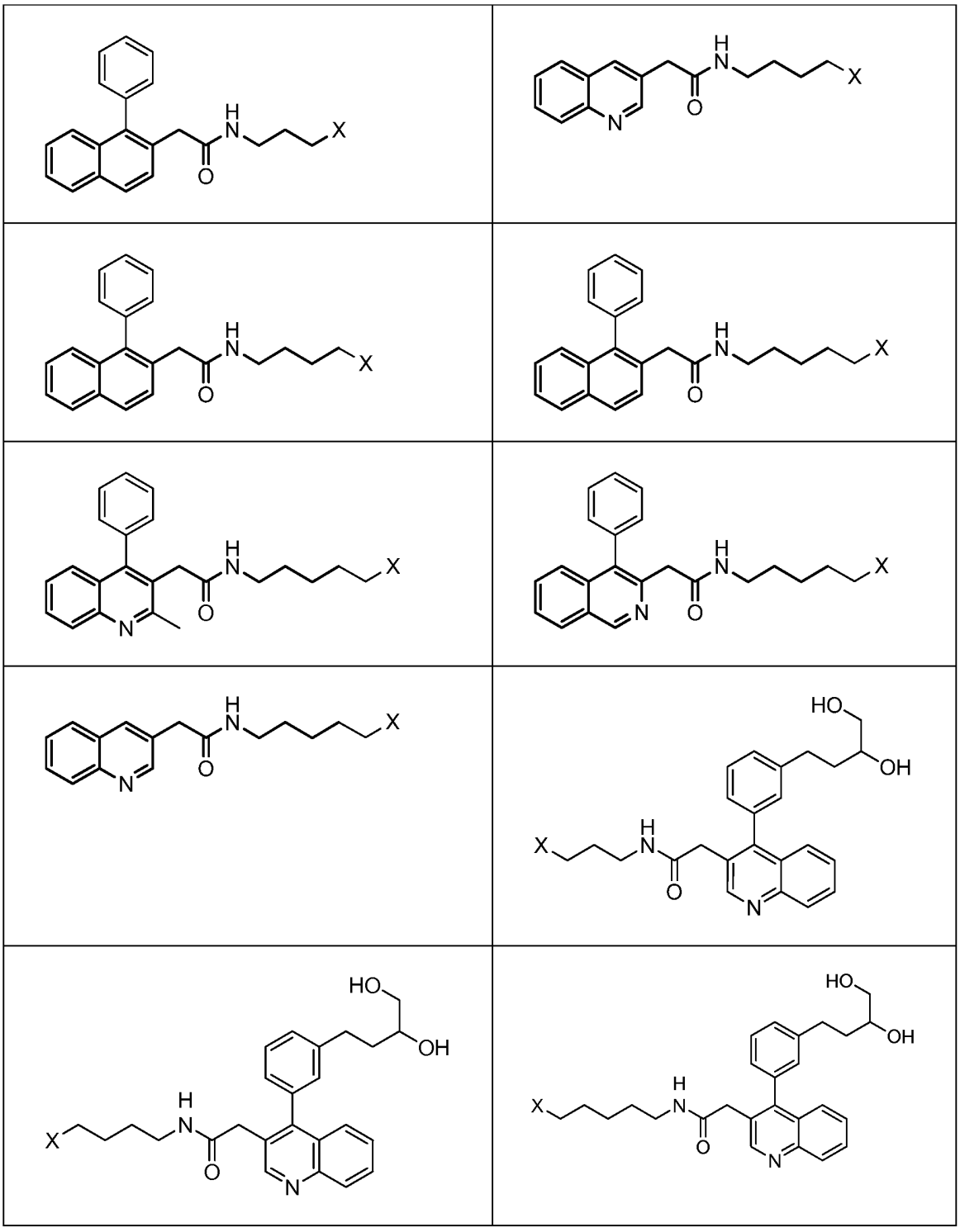
Y_2 is N or CR_9; wherein R_9 is selected from hydrogen and methyl.

[0025] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap encompasses a compound selected from Table 1B.

TABLE 1B.



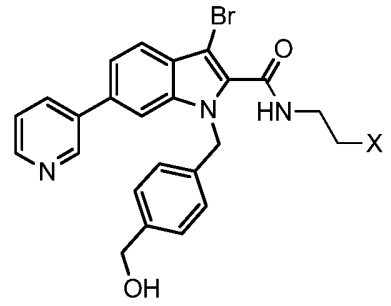
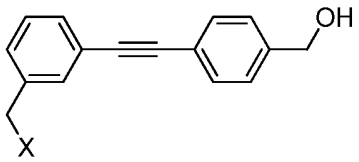
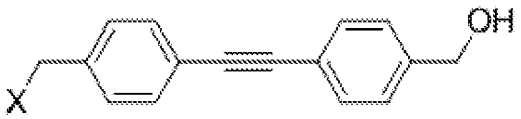
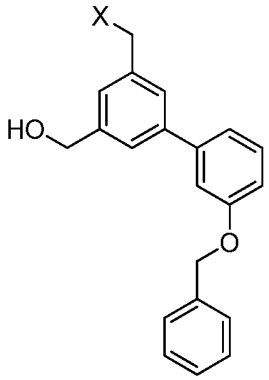
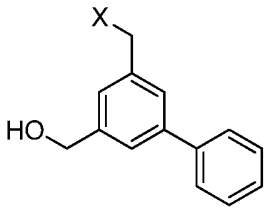
in which:

X is the 3' end of a strand of a HBV RNAi agent, or the 3' end of a molecule comprising a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a

phosphate or internucleoside linker and optionally further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a second phosphate or internucleoside linker.

[0026] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap encompasses a compound selected from Table 1C.

TABLE 1C.

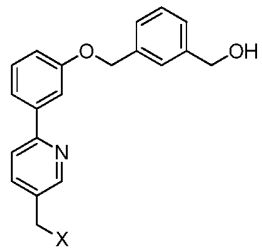
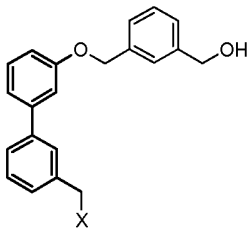
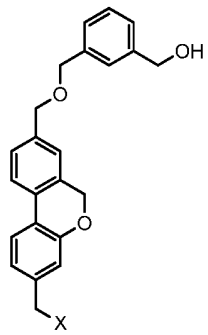
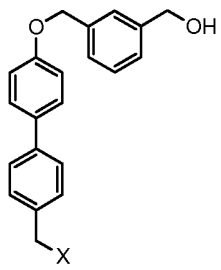
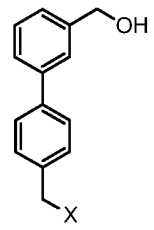
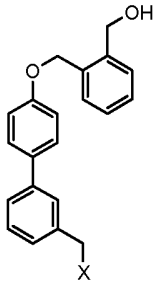
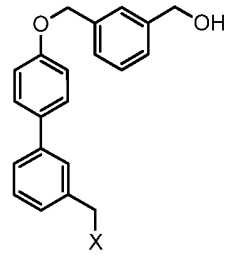
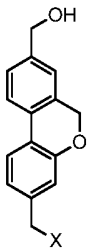
in which:

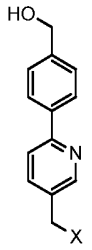
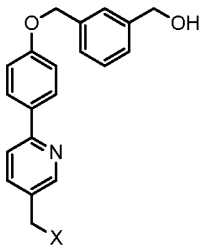
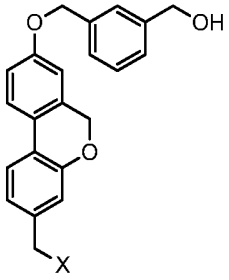
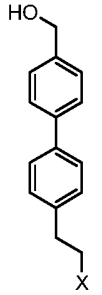
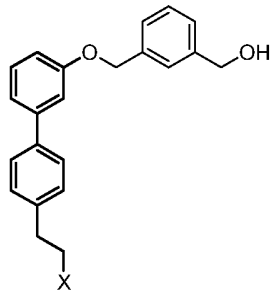
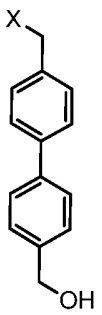
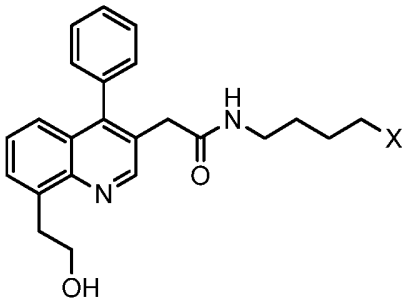
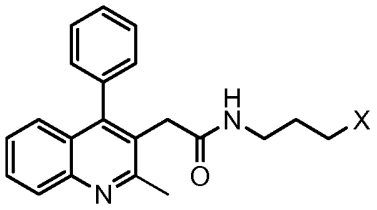
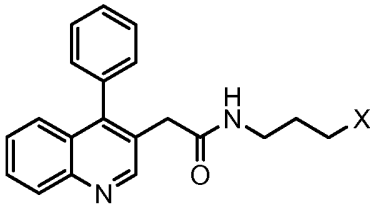
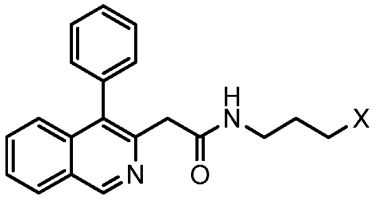
X is the 3' end of a strand of a HBV RNAi agent, or the 3' end of a molecule comprising a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or internucleoside linker and optionally further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a second phosphate or internucleoside linker, and

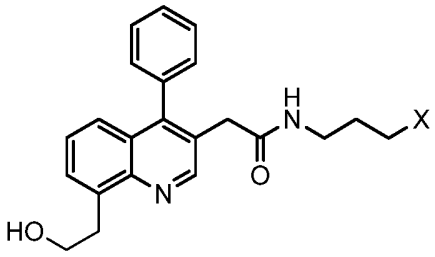
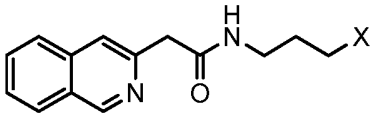
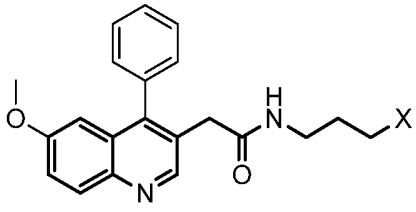
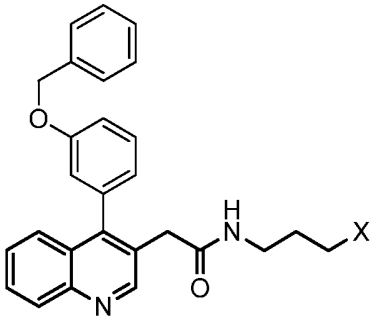
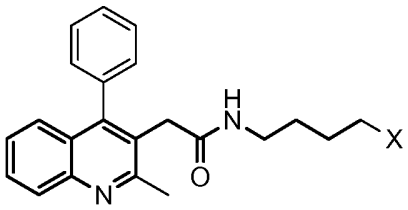
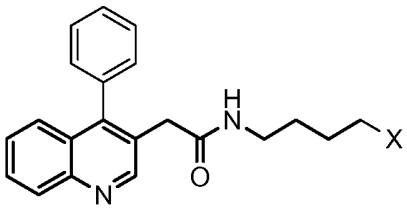
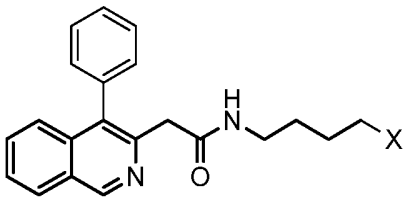
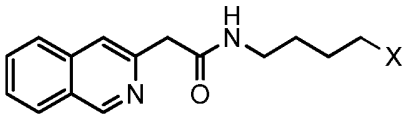
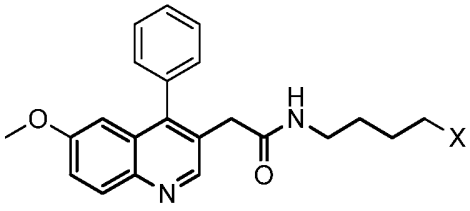
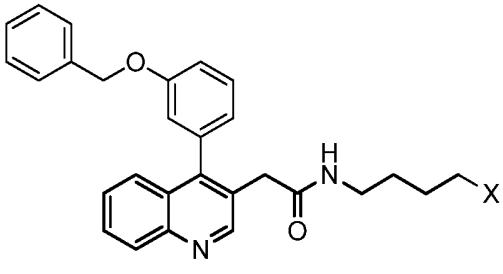
q is selected from 1 and 2.

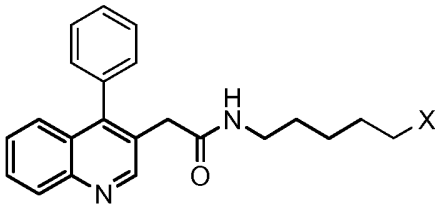
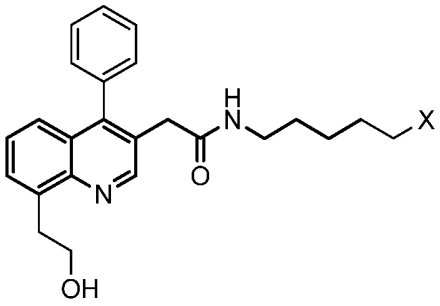
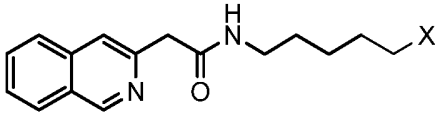
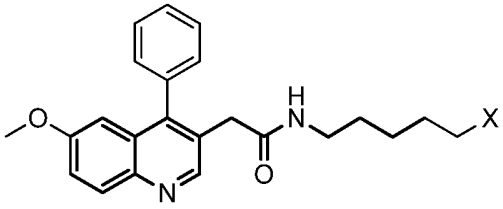
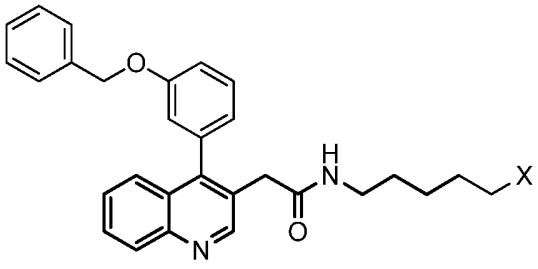
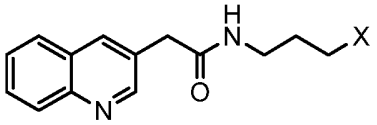
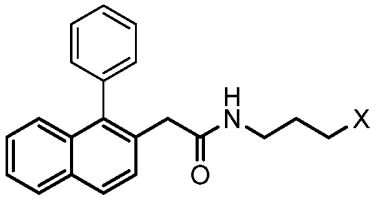
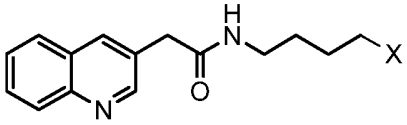
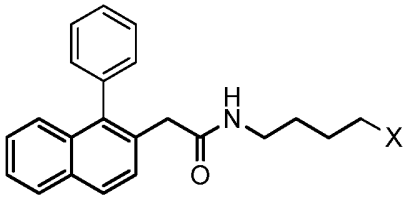
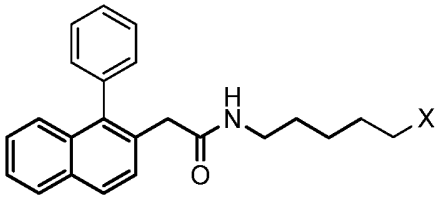
[0027] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap encompasses a compound selected from Table 1D.

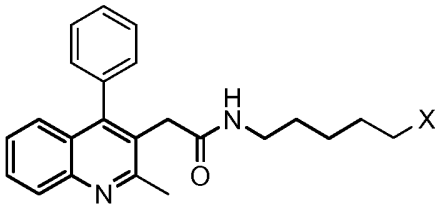
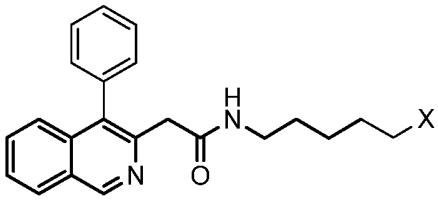
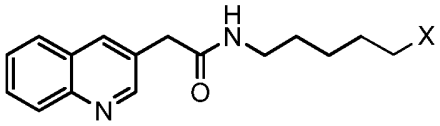
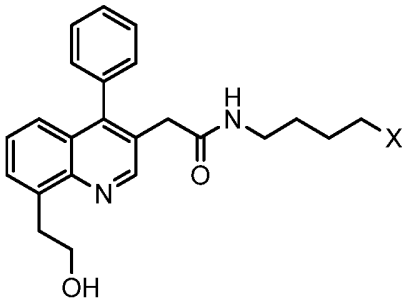
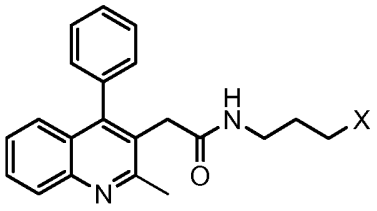
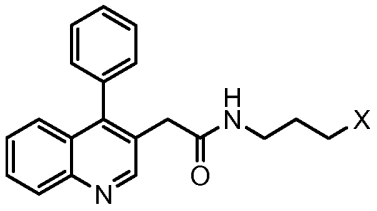
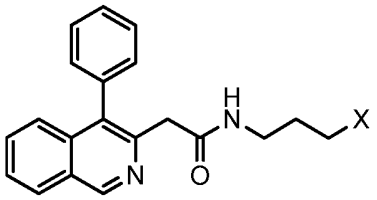
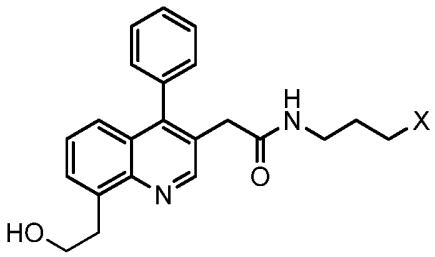
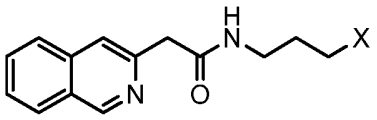
TABLE 1D.

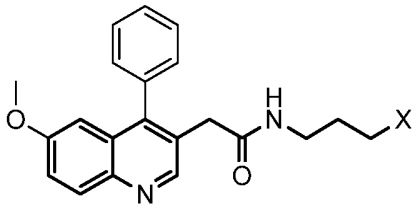
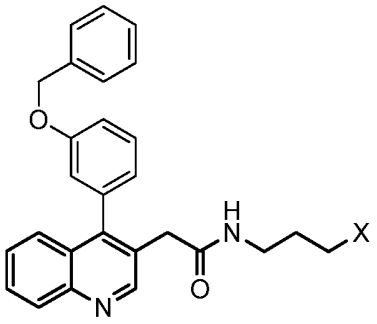
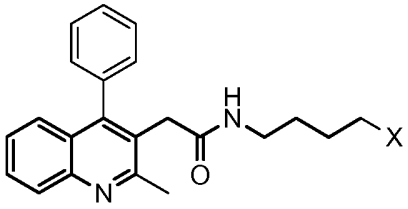
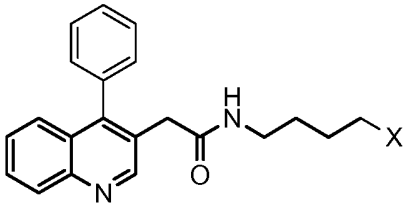
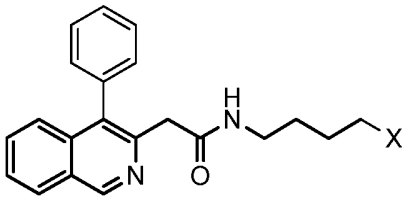
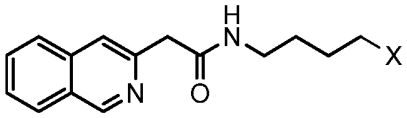
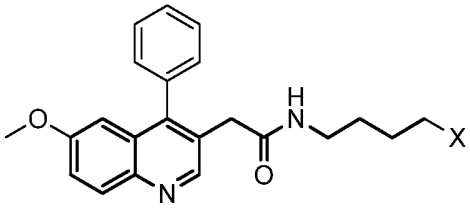
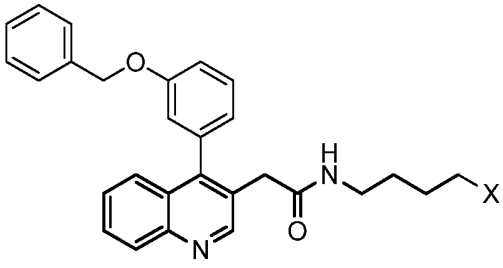
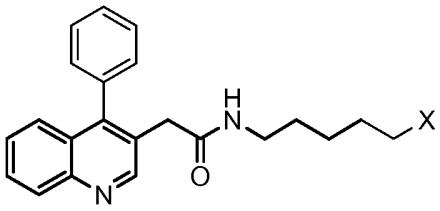
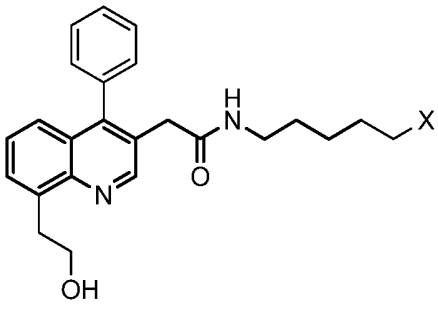
	
	
	
	

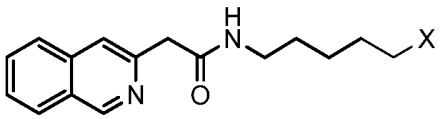
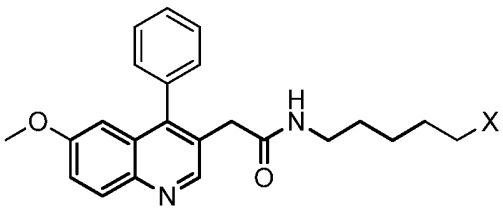
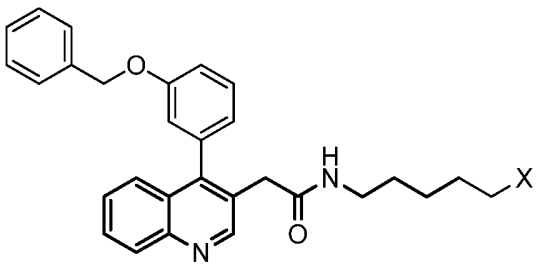
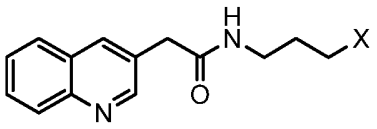
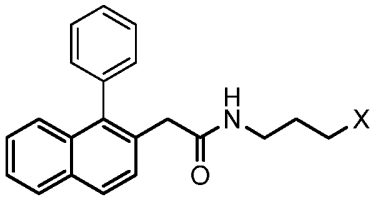
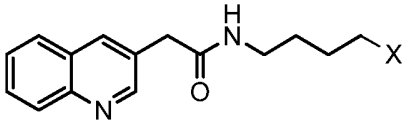
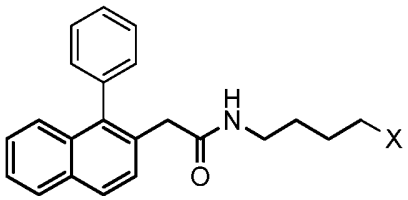
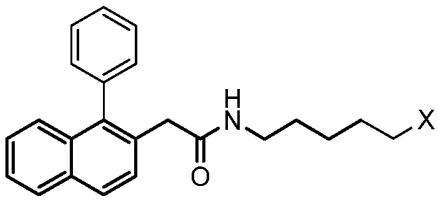
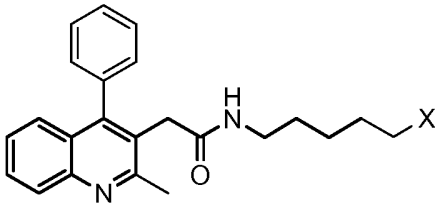
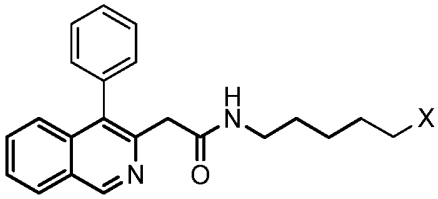
	
	
	
	
	

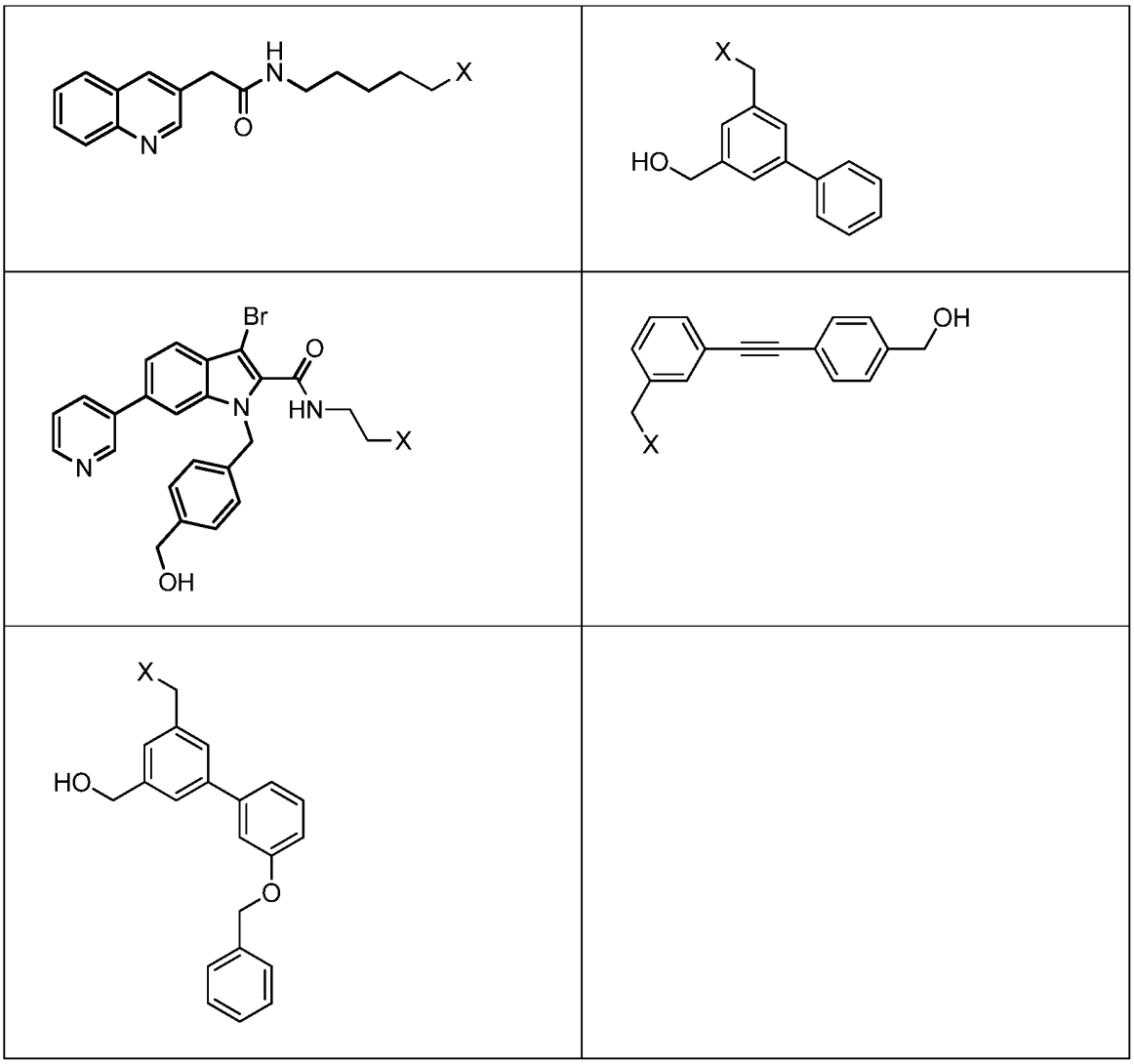
	
	
	
	
	

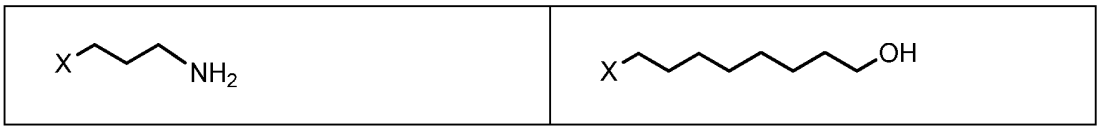


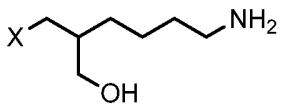
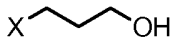
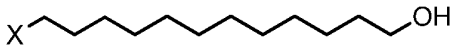
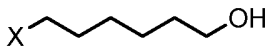
in which:

X is the 3' end of a strand of a HBV RNAi agent, or the 3' end of a molecule comprising a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or internucleoside linker and optionally further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a second phosphate or internucleoside linker.

[0028] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap encompasses a compound selected from Table 1E.

TABLE 1E.



X is the 3' end of a strand of a HBV RNAi agent, or the 3' end of a molecule comprising a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or internucleoside linker and optionally further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a second phosphate or internucleoside linker.

[0029] In various other embodiments, the 3' end cap is selected from: Triethylene glycol, Cyclohexyl (or Cyclohex), Phenyl, BP (Biphenyl), Adamantane and Lithocholic acid (or Lithochol). These are described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,097,716; 8,084,600; 8,344,128; 8,404,831; and 8,404,832.

[0030] In some embodiments, the 3' end cap is a ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide. Thus, in some embodiments, the HBV RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (e.g., a ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide, C3, C4, C5, C6, etc.), a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., a second ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide).

[0031] Thus, in some embodiments, the HBV RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a second ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide.

[0032] In some embodiments, the HBV RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide, a phosphate, and a second ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide. Such a structure is sometimes designated a "Diribitol" (as diagrammed in

Fig. 17. An 18-mer to ELAV1 comprising such a structure is shown to mediate RNAi interference in Table 7 (see "18-mer siRNA with ribprib").

[0033] In some embodiments, the HBV RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and 3' end cap which is a diribitol. Thus: In some embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (e.g., a ribitol, C3, C4, C5, C6, etc.), a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., a diribitol). In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand comprises a phosphate and further comprises: a spacer which is ribitol, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is di-ribitol (e.g., a second ribitol, a third phosphate and a third ribitol). This last embodiment is sometimes designated a "tri-ribitol".

[0034] In some embodiments, the HBV RNAi agent comprises a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap (but no spacer, or phosphate or modified internucleoside linker). Thus: In some embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap (e.g., BP, C6, X058 or any other 3' end cap disclosed herein).

[0035] In some embodiments, the HBV RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and further comprising a spacer (but no phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, or 3' end cap). Thus: In some embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and further comprising a spacer (e.g., ribitol). In some embodiments, the RNAi comprises an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and further comprising a spacer (e.g., a ribitol). In some embodiments, the RNAi comprises an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and further comprising, in 5' to 3' order, a spacer (e.g., a ribitol), a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a second spacer (e.g., ribitol).

[0036] In various embodiments, one or both strands can comprise ribonucleotide subunits, or one or more nucleotide can optionally be modified or substituted. Thus, in various embodiments, the RNAi agent can either contain only naturally-occurring ribonucleotide subunits, or one or more modifications to the sugar, phosphate or base of one or more of

nucleotide subunits. In one embodiment, the modifications improve efficacy, stability and/or reduce immunogenicity of the RNAi agent.

[0037] One aspect of the present disclosure relates to a RNAi agent comprising at least one non-natural nucleobase. In certain embodiments, the non-natural nucleobase is difluorotolyl, nitroindolyl, nitropyrrolyl, or nitroimidazolyl. In a particular embodiment, the non-natural nucleobase is difluorotolyl. In certain embodiments, only one of the two strands contains a non-natural nucleobase. In certain embodiments, both of the strands contain a non-natural nucleobase.

[0038] In one embodiment, the first two base-pairing nucleotides on the 3' end of the sense and/or anti-sense strand are modified. In one embodiment, the first two base-pairing nucleotides on the 3' end of the sense and/or anti-sense strand are 2'-MOE (a 2' MOE clamp).

[0039] In one embodiment, the 3' terminal phosphate of the sense and/or anti-sense strands is replaced by a modified internucleoside linker.

[0040] In various embodiments, one or more nucleotides is modified or is substituted with DNA, a peptide nucleic acid (PNA), locked nucleic acid (LNA), morpholino nucleotide, threose nucleic acid (TNA), glycol nucleic acid (GNA), arabinose nucleic acid (ANA), 2´-fl uoroarabinose nucleic acid (FANA), cyclohexene nucleic acid (CeNA), anhydrohexitol nucleic acid (HNA), and/or unlocked nucleic acid (UNA).

[0041] In various embodiments, at least one nucleotide comprises a modified internucleoside linker, wherein the modified internucleoside linker is selected from phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate, boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, and a compound of formula (I).

[0042] In one embodiment, at least one nucleotide of the RNAi agent is modified.

[0043] In one embodiment, said at least one modified nucleotide is selected from among 2' alkoxyribonucleotide, 2' alkoxyalkoxy ribonucleotide, or 2'-fluoro ribonucleotide. In another embodiment, said at least one modified nucleotide is selected from 2'-OMe, 2'-MOE and 2'-H. In various aspects, the nucleotide subunit is chemically modified at the 2' position of the sugar. In one aspect, the 2' chemical modification is selected from a halo, a C1-10 alkyl, a C1-10 alkoxy, a halo, and the like. In specific aspects, the 2' chemical modification is a C1-10 alkoxy selected from $–OCH_3$ (i.e., "OMe"), $-OCH_2CH_3$ (i.e., "OEt") or $-CH_2OCH_2CH_3$ (i.e., methoxyethyl or "MOE"); or is a halo selected from F.

[0044] In various embodiments, one or more nucleotides is modified or is DNA or is replaced by a peptide nucleic acid (PNA), locked nucleic acid (LNA), morpholino nucleotide, threose nucleic acid (TNA), glycol nucleic acid (GNA), arabinose nucleic acid (ANA), 2´-fl

uoroarabinose nucleic acid (FANA), cyclohexene nucleic acid (CeNA), anhydrohexitol nucleic acid (HNA), and/or unlocked nucleic acid (UNA); and/or at least one nucleotide comprises a modified internucleoside linker (e.g., wherein at least one phosphate of a nucleotide is replaced by a modified internucleoside linker), wherein the modified internucleoside linker is selected from phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate, boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, and a compound of formula (I) (as described elsewhere herein).

[0045] In one embodiment, the first two base-pairing nucleotides on the 3' end of the first and/or second strand are modified.

[0046] In one embodiment, the first two base-pairing nucleotides on the 3' end of the first and/or second strand are 2'-MOE.

[0047] In various embodiments, optionally the 3' terminal phosphate of the sense and/or anti-sense strands is replaced by a modified internucleoside linker.

[0048] In various embodiments, the RNAi agent can be modified on one or both 5' end. In various embodiments, the sense strand can comprise a 5' end cap which reduces the amount of the RNA interference mediated by this strand.

[0049] In various embodiments, the sense strand comprises a 5' end cap selected: a nucleotide lacking a 5' phosphate or 5'-OH; a nucleotide lacking a 5' phosphate or a 5'-OH and also comprising a 2-OMe or 2'-MOE modification; 5'-deoxy-2'-O-methyl modification; 5'-OME-dT; ddT; and 5'-OTr-dT.

[0050] In various embodiments, the RNAi agent is optionally attached to a ligand. The ligand can be selected to improve one or more characteristic, such as, e.g., stability, distribution and/or cellular uptake of the agent, e.g., cholesterol or a derivative thereof.

[0051] In various embodiments, the RNAi agent can be isolated or be part of a pharmaceutical composition used for the methods described herein or known in the art.

[0052] In various embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition can be a lipid nanoparticle.

[0053] In various embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition can be a lipid nanoparticle Optionally, the pharmaceutical compositions can further comprise or be used in conjunction with any known treatment for any target gene-related disease.

[0054] The present disclosure further provides methods for reducing the level of target gene mRNA in a cell, particularly in the case of a disease characterized by over-expression or hyper-activity of the target gene product. The present disclosure also encompasses a method of treating a human subject having a pathological state mediated at least in part by target gene expression. Such methods comprise the step of administering to the subject a therapeutic

amount of one or more of the RNAi agents of the present disclosure. In various methods, the HVC RNAi agents can be used to treat or ameliorate HBV in human and other patients.

[0055] In another embodiment, the invention provides an RNAi agent with any one or more of the above properties for use as a medicament.

[0056] The methods and compositions of the present disclosure, e.g., the methods and target gene RNAi agent compositions, can be used with any dosage and/or formulation described herein, as well as with any route of administration described herein or known in the art.

[0057] In various embodiments, the HBV RNAi agent can be combined with one or more additional HBV RNAi agents in the same formulation. The one or more additional RNAi agents can have the same or different sequences, phosphates or modified internucleoside linkers, spacers, 3' end caps, nucleotide replacements modifications, and/or ligands, etc. In various embodiments, the one or more additional RNAi agents can have a sense and an anti-sense strand wherein each is an 18-mer and together form a blunt-ended duplex. The one or more additional RNAi agent can target the same or different sequence. In various embodiments, the HBV RNAi agent can be combined with one or more additional RNAi agents which target a different target (i.e., a target which is not HBV), but which is associated with HBV or required by HBV.

[0058] Thus: Multiple RNAi agents can be administered separately or co-administered. The multiple RNAi agents can be administered in the same delivery vehicle, the same type of delivery vehicle, or in different delivery vehicles.

[0059] Various additional embodiments are described below.

[0060] The details of one or more embodiments of the present disclosure are set forth in the accompanying drawings and the description below.

[0061] The details of one or more aspects of the present disclosure are set forth in the accompanying drawings and the description below. Elements of the various aspects (e.g., sequences, modifications, substitutions, spacers, modified internucleoside linkers, endcaps, combinations of RNAi agents, delivery vehicles, combination therapy involving a RNAi agent and another agent, etc.) disclosed herein or known in the art which are not mutually exclusive can be combined with each other, provided that the agent or agents are still capable of mediating RNA interference. For example, any RNAi agent sequence disclosed herein can be combined with any set of modifications or endcaps disclosed herein. Similarly, any combination of modifications, 5' end caps, and/or 3' end caps can be used with any RNAi agent sequence disclosed herein. Any RNAi agent disclosed herein (with any combination of modifications or

endcaps or without either modifications or endcaps) can be combined with any other RNAi agent or other treatment composition or method disclosed herein.

[0062] Other features, objects, and advantages of the present disclosure will be apparent from this description, the drawings, and from the claims.

[0063] BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

[0064] FIG. 1 illustrates the structures and sequence of the RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap used in Example 1. In this figure, the generic antisense sequence is SEQ ID NO: 1; the generic sense sequence is SEQ ID NO: 2; the antisense mF7 (mouse Factor VII) sequence is SEQ ID NO: 3; and the sense mF7 sequence is SEQ ID NO: 4. The structures of the 3' end caps are provided herein and/or in U.S. Pat. No. 8,084,600.

[0065] FIG. 2 shows the efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising a 3' end cap [C3, C6, C12, glycol (triethylene glycol), cyclohexyl, phenyl, biphenyl, lithochol, C7 amino or C3 amino] as described in Example 1, in allowing the RNAi agent to mediate RNA interference. The structure of these 3' end caps is described herein and/or in U.S. Pat. No. 8,084,600.

[0066] FIG. 3 shows the efficacy of the 3' end caps described in Example 1 in reducing and/or preventing nuclease degradation in serum.

[0067] FIGs. 4A and 4B show residual expression level, indicating *in vitro* RNA interference or KD (knockdown) mediated by various RNAi agents comprising an 18-mer guide strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and and further comprises: a spacer (ribitol or Rib) and a 3' end cap; or only a 3' end cap. In various constructs 3' end cap used is: BP (biphenyl), C6, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, and X069, as described in Example 3A. These RNAi agents are without a 2'-MOE clamp (-) or with a 2'-MOE clamp (MOE); or without a ribitol spacer (-) or with a ribitol spacer (rib). Descriptions for FIG. 5A are provided at the bottom of FIG 5B, and this data pertains to Example 3A.

[0068] FIGs. 5A and 5B detail some of the RNAi agents used in the data shown in FIGS 5A and 5B and Example 3A. The strands of these RNAi agents comprise a human sequence (hs) 18-mer to Hepcidin (HAMP), wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap (C6 or X058). In FIG. 5A, the sequences are represented, from top to bottom, by SEQ ID NOs: 5 to 17. In FIG 5B, the sequences are represented, from top to bottom, by SEQ ID NOs: 18 to 31.

[0069] FIG. 6 illustrates mouse hepcidin mm reporter levels at 72 hours in COS1 cells, with a dose range of 1.57 to 15 nM. The guide strand of mouse Hepcidin sequence 254 is SEQ ID

NO: 49. The RNAi agents used comprised an 18-mer guide strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate and a 3' end cap. The various 3' end caps used include: X027, X058, X067, X038, X069, and X052. The format of the strands is indicated, as described in Example 3A.

[0070] Figs. 7A and 7B show that in both the ABI Hamp1 Taqman assay (Fig. 8A) and the Hamp1 specific Taqman Assay (Fig. 8B) all of the RNAi agents with different 3' end caps were able to mediate Hepcidin knockdown in vivo at 48 hours post-dose, with a 1x3 mg/kg dose. 3' end caps used were: X052, X058, X067, X038, X069, and X027, with C6 as a control, as described in Example 3B. These are RNAi agents to mouse Hepcidin tested in vivo.

[0071] Fig. 8A shows that in the Hamp1 specific Taqman assay, the mouse hepcidin 18-mer Hamp 254 duplex comprising the X058 3' end cap was still able to mediate RNA interference (measured by Hepcidin knockdown) at 168 hours (7 days) post-dose in vivo, with a 1x3 mg/kg dose, as described in Example 3B. FIG. 8B shows the increased association of the duplex comprising the X058 3' end cap with Ago2, compared to the association of the duplex comprising the C6 3' end cap. These are RNAi agents to mouse Hepcidin tested in vivo.

[0072] FIG. 9 shows the *in vivo* comparison of RNAi agents of A160 & A161 formats and various 3' end caps (C6 or BP) or a ribitol spacer and a 3' end cap (ribC6), as described in Example 3B. These are human Hepcidin RNAi agents.

[0073] Fig. 10 shows specific examples of an 18-mer format RNAi agent, comprising two 18-mer strands, the 3' end of each 18-mer strand terminating in a phosphate and further comprising, in 5' to 3' order, a spacer (ribitol or rib), a phosphate (p) and a 3' end cap (X058 or C6). Various substitutions (DNA) and modifications (2'-OMe and 2'-MOE) are also shown. These non-limiting examples are functional siRNAs to human Hepcidin (HAMP). In FIG. 10, the generic guide strand (top) is represented by SEQ ID NO: 32; the generic sense strand is SEQ ID NO: 33. The specific modified siRNA 400 guide strand is SEQ ID NO: 34 and the modified sense strand is SEQ ID NO: 35. The specific modified siRNA 402 guide strand is SEQ ID NO: 36 and the modified sense strand is SEQ ID NO: 36.

[0074] FIG. 11 shows the in vitro efficacy of various RNAi agents of different lengths, to Factor VII (FVII). These include a 21-mer format (including two dinucleotide overhangs); a blunt-ended 19-mer format, including 3' end caps (C6) replacing the dinucleotide overhangs); an 18-mer, wherein each strand comprises an 18-mer and a 3' end cap (C6); and an 18-mer format RNAi agent, wherein each strand comprises an 18-mer, further comprising in 5' to 3' order, a spacer (C3), a phosphate (p) and a 3' end cap (C6) (collectively, C3pC6). In FIG. 14, the guide

and sense strands of the various constructs are represented by SEQ ID NOs: 37 and 38 (21-mer); 39 and 40 (19-mer); 41 and 42 (18-mer C6); and 43 and 44 (18-mer C3pC6). These RNAi agents do not comprise a ribitol.

[0075] FIG. 12 illustrates an example of modification schemes for a canonical 21-mer siRNA, as well as 19-mer and 18-mer formats. The location of 2'-OMe and 2'-MOE modifications is indicated, as is the location of a 3' end cap (L) (which can alternatively comprise a spacer, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and a 3' end cap, not shown). In this figure, the last two nt of the 3' end of each strand are 2'-MOE; this is known as a "2'-MOE clamp" or "MOE clamp". In FIG. 12, the genetic antisense and sense strands are represented by SEQ ID NOs: 45 and 46 (top) and 47 and 48 (bottom).

[0076] FIG. 13A shows the efficacy of 18-mer RNAi agents to HuR (ELAVL1), with a dose response in Huh-7 cells. 0.016 to 1 nM of RNAi agent is used. The tested RNAi agents comprise a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate, further comprising a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap. The various 3' end caps used were: X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X058, and C6 as a positive control. A corresponding 21-mer is also used. FIG13B shows the structure of the molecules used in this experiment and others. The RNAi agents comprising X109, X110, X111, X112, or X113 comprise a DNA modification at the 5' end of the anti-sense strand. The sequences in FIG. 13B are represented by SEQ ID NOs: 96 (first sequence) and 97 (second). The duplexes are numbered 20 to 28. The tested sequence, designated 1186, is listed as human ("hs" or Homo sapiens), but is cross-reactive for human, mouse and rat.

[0077] FIGs. 14A and B and 15 show the efficacy of various SSB [Sjogren's syndrome antigen B] RNAi agents comprising a 19-mer with a C6, C8 or C10 3' end cap, as described in Example 5. The compound designated SSB-309 A22S26 is a 21-mer control. These experiments were done in vivo in the mouse. Fig. 15 shows the individual data points used to generate the bar graphs in FIGS 14A and 14B.

[0078] FIG. 16 shows example structures of a 3' terminus of an RNAi agent strand. The strand terminates in a nucleotide (with BASE) and 3' phosphate which is bound to: a dinucleotide (wt or wild-type); or a 3' end cap (C6, C8 or C10). These structures were used in, for example, LNP-formulated SSB siRNAs (such as those used in the experiments illustrated in FIGS. 14A and B and 15), but can be used for any RNAi agent of any sequence or target. Any of the phosphates of either or both strands of the RNAi agent can be replaced by the depicted compound.

[0079] FIG. 17 diagrams the terminal structures of, for example, a RNAi agent strand terminating in U. These include: a dinucleotide (e.g., CU overhang), for example, as a dinucleotide overhang of a 21-mer; or 18-mer strand terminating in U (with a phosphate), further comprising a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap (a second ribitol) (collectively, in this case, a diribitol); ribitol; and X027. Also shown are the structures of a 3' terminal nucleotide (a 2'-MOE) bound to, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap (C6 or X058).

[0080] FIG. 18 illustrates a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises: a ribitol, a phosphate and a X058 3' end cap (top); a C3 spacer, a phosphate and a X058 3' end cap (middle); or a A5300 spacer, a phosphate, and a X058 3' end cap (bottom). The Figure depicts the spacers in the context of an 18-mer RNAi agent and a specific 3' end cap, but the spacers can be used with any RNAi agent strand of sequence or target, and with any 3' end cap.

[0081] FIG. 19 shows the efficacy and duration of RNAi agent activity of example RNAi agents comprising an 18-mer, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is a ribitol (rib), C3 or 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol (A5300); a phosphate; and a 3' end cap which is X058 or C6. The duplexes are numbered 1 to 6. These are RNAi agents to HuR (ELAVL1). UNT: Untreated (negative control). NTC: Non-target control (negative control using an unrelated RNAi that targets a different target).

[0082] FIGs. 20A-C show the efficacy of HuR RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap which is: X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1024 or X1025 (Fig. 20A); X1011, X1012, X1013, X058, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1026, X1027 (Fig. 20B): or X1018; X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022 or X1028 (Fig. 20C). The terms C3 linker, C4 linker and C5 linker indicate portions of the 3' end caps.

[0063] FIGs. 21 and 22 show efficacy and duration of HuR RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap which is: X110, X1012, X1018, X111, X1013, X112, X058, X1019, X1025, X1027, or X1028. The designations C3, C4 and C5 refer to the length of a linker portion of the 3' end cap.

[0064] FIG. 23 shows the efficacy of mouse 18-mer Hepcidin RNAi agents, wherein each 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a ribitol spacer, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X052, X058, X067, X038, X069, X027 or C6 (positive control). PBS: phosphate-buffered saline (negative control). This experiment was performed in vivo in the mouse. These were single 3 mg/kg dose i.v., and Hepcidin mRNA knockdown in liver was measured after 2 and 7 days. All PAZ ligands were equal

or more potent than C6 parent at day 2. X058 was the only PAZ ligand still active at day 7; thus, it has an impact on the in vivo duration of effect.

[0065] FIG. 24 shows the efficacy after 48 hrs and 168 hrs of 18-mer Hepcidin RNAi agents comprising a ribitol spacer and a C6 3' end cap or X058 3' end cap. These are compared to the 21-mer format. This shows that, at 48 hours, the C6 and X058 formats were more efficacious than the 21-mer format. This experiment was performed in vivo in the mouse.

[0066] FIG. 25 shows the efficacy of various formats (21-mer, 19-mer, 18-mer, 17-mer, and 16-mer) of several SSB RNAi agents. The numbers (309, 880, 1586, 180, 1596 and 1591) indicate the location within the human (hs) sequence, though these sequences are cross-reactive in human, rat and mouse. The sequences of some of these are provided, from top to bottom, in SEQ ID NOs: 50 to 59.

[0067] FIG. 26 shows the structure of the X058, X109, X110, X111, X112 and X113 3' end caps. TF-26-BC53 indicates a strand of a RNAi agent, wherein the 3' end of the strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linkerand optionally further comprises in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker. These 3' end caps can be used with either or both strands of any RNAi agent of any sequence or target.

[0068] FIG. 27 shows a comparison of corresponding 19-mer and 18-mer format Hepcidin RNAi agents. RNAi agents include: hs_HAMP (human HAMP) 36, 37, 93, 160, 185, 232, 296, 299, 300, 301, 309, 312, 325, 328, 332, 397, 398, 400, 401, 402, 403 (starting position).

[0069] FIG. 28 shows the efficacy of various 21-mer and 18-mer RNAi agents to HBV.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[0083] The present disclosure pertains to RNAi agents to Hepatitis B Virus (HBV). In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is that of any sequence of Table 8C (any of SEQ ID NOs: 138 – 157 or 217-220). In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to HBV RNAi agents which comprise any sequence or an 18-nt portion of any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10 (e.g., nt 1-18 or nt 2-19 of any sequence in these tables). In various embodiments, these HBV RNAi agents are blunt-ended. In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to HBV RNAi agents which comprise any sequence of at

least 15 contiguous nt of any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10 (e.g., nt 1-15 or nt 2-16 or nt 3-17 or nt 4-18 or nt 5-19, etc., of any sequence in these tables). One of ordinary skill in the art can prepare 18-mer sequences from the 19-mer sequences disclosed above, e.g., by using nt 1-18 or 2-19 of the various sequences. For example, nt 1-18 of a guide strand, above, can be paired with nt 2-19 of the corresponding sense strand to form a blunt-ended duplex. In addition, nt 2-19 of the guide strand can be paired with nt 1-18 of the corresponding sense strand to form a blunt-ended duplex. A duplex of 18-mers corresponding to any HBV sequence disclosed herein can be used to make a 18-mer format HBV RNAi agent.

[0084] In various embodiments, the disclosure relates to compositions comprising a HBV RNAi agent having a novel format (the "18-mer format"). These HBV RNAi agents comprise a sense and an anti-sense strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, each strand terminates at the 5' end with a hydroxyl, optionally linked to a 5' end cap or a ligand, and terminates at the 3' end with a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker. In some embodiments, the 3' end of both the sense and anti-sense strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprise, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strand are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap; and wherein the 3' end of the second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of both the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and both further comprise a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the first strand is the antisense strand and the second strand is the sense strand. In other embodiments, the first strand is the sense strand and the second strand is the antisense strand. The two strands can have the same or different spacers, phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and/or 3' end caps. Optionally, one or more nucleotide can be modified or substituted. Optionally, at least one nucleotide comprises a modified internucleoside

linker. Optionally, the RNAi agent can be modified on one or both 5' end. Optionally, the sense strand can comprise a 5' end cap which reduces the amount of the RNA interference mediated by this strand. Optionally, the RNAi agent is attached to a ligand. The disclosure also relates to processes for making such compositions, and methods and uses of such compositions, e.g., to mediate RNA interference.

[0085] In various embodiments, the disclosure encompasses a HBV RNAi agent comprising a sense strand and an anti-sense strand, wherein the sequence of the sense and/or anti-sense strand is, comprises, comprises and is no longer than about 30 nt, comprises 18 contiguous nt of, is 18 contiguous nt of, comprises 15 contiguous nt of, or comprises 15 contiguous nt of with 0-3 mismatches from: any HBV sequence disclosed herein.

[0086] In various embodiments, the disclosure encompasses a HBV RNAi agent comprising a sense strand and an anti-sense strand,wherein the sequence of the sense and/or anti-sense strand is, comprises, comprises 15 contiguous nt of, or comprises 15 contiguous nt of with 0-3 mismatches from any HBV sequence disclosed herein or 18-nt portion thereof, wherein each strand is an 18-mer, and the sense and anti-sense strand together they form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3'-terminus of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, wherein the spacer is a ribitol, 2'-deoxy-ribitol, diribitol, 2'-methoxyethoxy-ribitol (ribitol with 2'-MOE), C3, C4, C5, C6, or 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol; wherein the modified internucleoside linker is selected from phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate, boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, and a compound of formula (I); wherein the 3' end cap is selected from a compound of formula Ia or Ib, a compound from Table 1A, 1B, 1C, 1D, 1E, or 1, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein; wherein: optionally at least one nucleotide of the RNAi agent is modified or substituted, and/or optionally said at least one modified nucleotide is selected from among 2' alkoxyribonucleotide, 2' alkoxyalkoxy ribonucleotide, or 2'-fluoro ribonucleotide, and optionally said at least one modified nucleotide is selected from 2'-OMe, 2'-MOE and 2'-H; and/or optionally one or more nucleotides is modified or is substituted with DNA, a peptide nucleic acid (PNA), locked nucleic acid (LNA), morpholino nucleotide, threose nucleic acid (TNA), glycol nucleic acid (GNA), arabinose nucleic acid (ANA), 2´-fl uoroarabinose nucleic acid (FANA), cyclohexene nucleic acid (CeNA), anhydrohexitol nucleic acid (HNA), and/or unlocked nucleic acid (UNA); and/or optionally at least one nucleotide comprises a modified internucleoside linker, wherein the modified internucleoside linker is selected from phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate, boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, and a compound

of formula (I); and/or optionally the 3' terminal phosphate of the sense and/or anti-sense strands is replaced by a modified internucleoside linker; and/or optionally the first two base-pairing nucleotides on the 3' end of the sense and/or anti-sense strand are modified, and/or optionally the first two base-pairing nucleotides on the 3' end of the sense and/or anti-sense strand are 2'-MOE; and/or optionally the sense or the anti-sense strand comprise an 5' end cap, wherein optionally the sense strand comprises a 5' end cap which reduces the amount of the RNA interference mediated by the this strand, wherein optionally the 5' end cap is selected from: a nucleotide lacking a 5' phosphate or 5'-OH; a nucleotide lacking a 5' phosphate or a 5'-OH and also comprising a 2-OMe or 2'-MOE modification; 5'-deoxy-2'-O-methyl modification; 5'-OME-dT; ddT; and 5'-OTr-dT.

[0087] Any of the various elements of various embodiments disclosed herein [e.g., compositions and methods; and selection of spacers and 3' end caps, nucleotide modifications or substitutions, patterns of modifications, and/or 5' end caps and delivery vehicles] which are not mutually exclusive can be combined.

[0088] **18-mer format compared to canonical siRNA format**

[0089] The present disclosure encompasses RNAi agents to HBV. These include but are not limited to various 18-mer format HBV RNAi agents. These RNAi agents have a novel 18-mer format described herein.

[0090] In contrast to 18-mers, siRNAs naturally generated in a cell by Dicer typically comprise two 21-nt RNA strands, which form a 19-bp duplex region and two dinucleotide overhangs. This is the so-called "canonical" or 21-mer siRNA structure. See, for example, Elbashir et al. 2001 Nature 411: 494-498; Elbashir et al. 2001 EMBO J. 20: 6877.

[0091] The two dinucleotide overhangs do not contribute to target specificity. Elbashir et al. 2001 Nature 411: 494-498; Elbashir et al. 2001 EMBO J. 20: 6877-6888; and Kraynack et al. 2006 RNA 12:163-176. They do, however, help protect the ends of the siRNA from nuclease degradation and sometimes improve activity.

[0092] The terminal dinucleotides of a 21-mer are sometimes replaced by an artificial dinucleotide, such as UU, TT, dTdT, sdT, dTsdT, sdTsdT, or sdTdT.

[0093] The terminal dinucleotides can alternatively be deleted (and not replaced), leaving a functional siRNA comprising two 19-nt strands forming a 19-bp duplex. The dinucleotide overhangs can sometimes functionally be replaced by a 3' end cap, leaving a blunt-ended 19-bp duplex with one or two 3' end caps, which can protect the molecule from nucleases. See, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,097,716, 8,084,600; 8,404,831; 8,404,832, and 8,344,128.

[0094] Decreasing the length of the siRNA, particularly the antisense strand, below 19 nt can be problematic. siRNA strands naturally produced by Dicer are largely 21-mers (45%). While artificial 19-mers can be functional, they are rarely produced in nature (5%). Lengths less than 19, such as 18-mers, are even rarer (1%). Elbashir et al. 2001 Genes Dev. 15: 188-200. Length reduction below 19 nt, particularly of the anti-sense strand, also generally reduces or completely abolishes RNA interference activity. Less 18-mer siRNA is incorporated into RISC than 21-mer, and the 18-mer also degrades more quickly in cell extracts in vitro. Hoerter et al. May 27 2011 PLOS ONE. Czauderna et al. also concluded that the minimal length of a siRNA strand was about 19 nt. Czauderna et al. 2003 Nucl. Acids Res. 31: 2705-2716.

[0095] The present disclosure describes a novel format comprising a shorter version of a functional siRNA. This comprises two strands, each an 18-mer, which together form a blunt-ended duplex. The 3' terminus of one or both strands of the novel format further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap. In other embodiments, the 18-mer format encompasses a RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are 18-mers and together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprise a 3' end cap. In other embodiments, the 18-mer format encompasses a RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are 18-mers and together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein both of the 3' end of the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprise a 3' end cap. In other words, the present disclosure pertains to: An RNAi agent comprising two strands, wherein each strand is an 18-mer, and wherein the two strands together form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' terminus of one or both strands is bonded to, in 5' to 3' order, a spacer, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap. This 18-mer format can be used in various HBV RNAi agents.

[0096] **Use of 18-mer RNAi agent format for different sequences and targets**

[0097] The 18-mer RNAi agent format described herein can be used with HBV RNAi agents. The utility of the 18-mer RNAi agent format was validated using a variety of different sequences to different targets. Below are described these experiments.

[0098] Various experiments that have shown this novel format, sometimes designated "the 18-mer format", produces molecules that can mediate RNA interference against a variety of different mRNA targets, including Hepcidin, HuR (ELAVL1), PLK1, SSB and FVII (Factor 7 or

F7). Successful 18-mer format RNAi agents were also constructed for several additional gene targets (not described herein). Successful 18-mer format RNAi agents were also constructed for use against a variety of mammalian targets in a variety of mammalian cells (e.g., mouse and human). Successful 18-mer format RNAi agents were constructed which worked both in vitro and in vivo. Thus, the 18-mer format can be used with a variety of different sequences, targets and mammalian source material.

[0099] Clearly, as would be known to one of ordinary skill in the art, not every 18-mer sequence will yield a successful RNAi agent, and certainly not in combination with any spacer, phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and 3' end cap. However, the format described herein can be used to devise and test various RNAi agents, some of which can have activity approximately equal to that of other formats (e.g., the canonical structure); and some can produce improved qualities (e.g., increased activity, duration or activity, decreased off-target effects, etc.).

[00100] The novel 18-mer format disclosed herein, therefore, can be used with a variety of different sequences and gene targets.

[00101] **Hepcidin 18-mers.** As detailed in Examples 3A and 3B and Figures 4 to 10, and 23 and 24, effective RNAi agents of the 18-mer format were constructed targeting human and mouse Hepcidin.

[00102] These constructs are detailed in the Examples, Figures and Figure legends. These constructs successfully targeted both mouse and human Hepcidin with 18-mer RNAi agents.

[00103] Other 18-mer RNAi agents can be constructed targeting Hepcidin.

[00104] **HuR (ELAV1) 18-mers.** As detailed in Examples 4 to 6 and Figures 13, and 19-22, effective RNAi agents of the 18-mer format were constructed targeting HuR (ELAV1).

[00105] In addition, an example of an effective 18-mer RNAi agent to HuR is shown below:

```
AS:          u U a A u U a U c U a U u C c G u A rib C6
S: C6 rib  A a U u A a U a G a U a A g G c A u
```

n (a, c, g, u): 2'Ome-n (a, c, g, u)

The sequence of the AS (anti-sense) strand, shown above 5' to 3', is SEQ ID NO: 39; the sequence of the S (sense) strand, shown above, 3' to 5', is SEQ ID NO: 40. This RNAi agent comprises two strands, each comprising, in 5' to 3' order, an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end

of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate (not shown) and further comprises: a spacer (ribitol, rib), a second phosphate (not shown), and a 3' end cap (C6). Other spacers and 3' end caps can be used, and this and other phosphates can be replaced by a modified internucleoside linker.

Other effective HuR RNAi agents were produced wherein the sequence used was:
U002pUpApApU004pU004pApU004pCpU004pApU004pU004pCpCpGpU005pA005pC027pXnn nn (SEQ ID NO: 41)

Where:
C027 is ribitol (or other spacer such as C3 or C5300)
002 = DNA
004 = 2'Ome
005 = 2'MOE
All other positions are RNA
027 = ribitol
p = phosphate
Xnnn = 3' end cap (X058, X109, etc.)

In this and various other sequences disclosed herein, U004 indicates a nucleotide with a U base with a 2'Ome modification; U002 indicates a nucleotide with a U base which is DNA; U005 indicates a nt with a U base with a 2'MOE modification. Similarly, other nucleotides are modified, e.g., U004 indicates a nucleotide with a U base and a 2'Ome modification.

With this HuR sequence, effective RNAi agents were produced which comprise an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate and a 3' end cap (X058, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, or X1028). These were tested in vitro in cells and all demonstrated at least about 60% to 80% gene knockdown at 30pM. See, for example, Fig. 13.

[00106] Several of these HuR 18-mer constructs were further tested, including those comprising the 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate and a 3' end cap (X058, X110, X111, X112, X1012, X1013, X1018, X1019, X1025, X1027, X1028). These

were tested in vitro in cells and all demonstrated at least about 80% to 90% gene knockdown at Day 3 at 1 nM.

[00107] Additional HuR 18-mer constructs were constructed, which comprised a strand with a 18-mer sequence, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: (a) a ribitol spacer, a phosphate and X058 3' end cap; (b) a ribitol spacer, a phosphate and C6 3' end cap; (c) a C3 spacer, a phosphate and a X058 3' end cap; (d) a C3 spacer, a phosphate and a C6 3' end cap; (e) a C5300 spacer, a phosphate and a X058 3' end cap; and (f) a C5300 spacer, a phosphate and a C6 3' end cap. Each of these constructs was tested in vitro in cells and all demonstrated about 90% gene knockdown at Day 3 at 1 nM. See FIG. 13B.

[00108] Additional 18-mer RNAi agents to HuR were constructed comprising two strands, each an 18-mer, the two strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a 3' phosphorothioate (PS) and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (ribitol), a modified internucleoside linker (another phosphorothioate), and a 3' end cap (C6).

[00109] Other 18-mer RNAi agents can be constructed targeting HuR.

[00110] **SSB [Sjogren's syndrome antigen B] 18-mers.** Effective 18-mer format RNAi agents were also constructed targeting SSB and PLK1. For example, in some RNAi agents to these targets, the 3' end of one or both 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (e.g., C3), a phosphate and a 3' end cap (C6).

[00111] For example, the 18-mer format human SSB RNAi agent designated hs_SSB_309_AS_18mer-C3-C6 was effective at mediating RNA interference in vitro, and is shown below:

AS:	UuAcAUuAAAGUCUGU87-C3pC6	8 = 2' methoxy ethyl T; 7 = 2' methoxy ethyl G
S:	cAAcAGAcuuuAAuGu55-C3pC6	5 = 2' methoxy ethyl A

n: 2'Ome-n

The sequence of the AS (anti-sense) strand, shown above 5' to 3', is SEQ ID NO: 42. The sequence of the S (sense) strand, shown above 5' to 3', is SEQ ID NO: 43. 8, 7, 5 and 5 are 2'-MOE nucleosides, as defined as above. Thus, the first and second strand comprise a 18-mer,

wherein the 3' end of the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate and further comprise, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (C3), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap (C6). This structure is collectively known as a C3pC6, and is illustrated, for example, at FIG. 11 (BOTTOM).

[00112] A variety of 18-mer format RNAi agents targeting SSB were constructed. These have a variety of target sequences. For example, in various SSB RNAi agents that were constructed, wherein the 3' end of one or both 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (C3 or ribitol), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap (C6, BP, a second ribitol, or a diribitol).

[00113] Additional 18-mer SSB constructs were prepared in which the 3' end cap is C6, C8 or C10. These also mediated RNA interference (see Fig. 14A and 14B).

[00114] The efficacy of several SSB 18-mer RNAi agents is shown in Fig. 25. These are designated by numbers 309, 880, 1586, 180, 1596 and 1591 in the human (hs) sequence, but are cross-reactive between human, mouse and rat. The 19-mers and 18-mers corresponding to these sequences were tested and the results shown in Fig. 25. For all of these sequences, the 18-mers showed greater RNAi activity than the 19-mer. The formats used were 19-mer blunt-ended with 3' end cap (C6), or 18-mer blunt-ended with 3' end cap (C6). No ribitol or other spacer was used.

[00115] Additional 18-mer format SSB RNAi agents were constructed with sequences to human (hs) 309, 880, 1586,180, 1596 and 1591. These comprise two 18-mer strands which together form a blunt-ended duplex, the 3' end of both strands terminating in a phosphate and further comprising a 3' end cap which is C6. Other constructs of these sequence were constructed comprising: comprise two 18-mer strands which together form a blunt-ended duplex, the 3' end of both strands terminating in a phosphate and further comprising, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (C3), a second phosphate and a 3' end cap (C6). The structure comprising the spacer, phosphate and 3' end cap, in this case, is also designated C3pC6. All of these molecules were able to mediate RNA interference.

[00116] Other 18-mer RNAi agents can be constructed targeting SSB.

[00117] **Factor VII 18-mers.** A variety of 18-mer format RNAi agents targeting Factor VII (F7) were also constructed. This includes, as a non-limiting example, a RNAi comprising a 18-mer strand terminating in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprising, in 5' to 3' order, a spacer (C3), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap (C6).

[00118] Two example Factor VII 18-mer RNAi agents are shown in Fig. 11.

[00119] One comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a 3' end cap which is C6. This construct is designated "C6 overhang" in Fig. 11 and lacks a spacer and second phosphate or internucleoside linker.

[00120] Another Factor VII 18-mer RNAi agent diagrammed in Fig. 11 comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a spacer which is C3, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is C6. This construct is designated "C3pC6 overhang" in Fig. 11.

[00121] The C3 spacer can be replaced by other spacers; the phosphates can be independently substituted or not substituted with modified internucleoside linkers, and the 3' end cap can be substituted with other 3' end caps.

[00122] Other 18-mer RNAi agents can be constructed targeting F7.

[00123] **PLK1 18-mers.** An 18-mer format RNAi agent was also constructed to the target PLK1, comprising an 18-mer strand further comprising at the 3' terminus, in 5' to 3' order, a spacer (C3), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap (C6).

[00124] In addition, other 18-mer RNAi agent were constructed targeting PLK1. These include RNAi agents to human sequences starting at nt 1720, 664, 572, 969, 1651, 578 of the PLK1 sequence. Successful 18-mer format RNAi agents were constructed for all these sequences. These all comprise a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate and further comprise a 3' end cap, which is C6. These were tested in 786-O cells in vitro. In all cases except 1720, the 18-mer format PLK1 RNAi agent was more active in mediating RNA interference than the corresponding 19-mer format (also a blunt-ended 19-mer, with C6 3' end cap on both strands).

[00125] Thus, successful 18-mer format RNAi agents were constructed to the targets Hepcidin, HuR (ELAVL1), PLK1, SSB and FVII (Factor 7 or F7). Successful 18-mer format RNAi agents were also constructed for several additional gene targets (not described herein). Both mouse and human Hepcidin were successfully targeted. Various RNAi agents of the 18-mer format have been shown to function in vitro and in vivo. The 18-mer format is thus not limited to any particular sequence or target, or mammalian source. The 18-mer format can be used, for example, in producing HBV RNAi agents.

[00126] **Improved activity of 18-mers.** As noted herein, in many cases, the 18-mer format has also shown to have the same or increased activity relative to a corresponding siRNA of a canonical structure. Various siRNAs of a 18-mer format have shown, in different experiments, in vitro and in vivo, to have increased RNA interference activity, increased duration of activity, increased resistance to nuclease degradation, and/or increased specificity.

[00127] For example, several test siRNAs were constructed against the target F7, including a 21-mer (of the canonical structure) and a 18-mer, comprising a C3pC6. In this 18-mer, the 3' end of the anti-sense strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is C3, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is C6. Both the 21-mer and 18-mer target the same sequence; both have the same 5' start. The 18-mer, however, showed a lower ED50 (0.44 (±0.022) mg/kg) than the 21-mer (0.61 (±0.017) mg/kg).

[00128] In addition, when an 18-mer format Hepcidin RNAi agent (with a X058 3' end cap) was tested in vivo, it was found, after 2 days, to be more potent than a corresponding 21-mer RNAi agents. For hepcidin, several 18-mers more potent than corresponding 21-mers have been developed.

[00129] It was also found that a hepcidin 21-mer siRNA was more prone to sense strand incorporation into RISC than the corresponding 18-mer. Thus, in this case, the 21-mer is less specific than the 18-mer format.

[00130] 18-mer formats of HuR RNAi agents also had improved IC50 compared to a corresponding 23/21-mer and 21-mer. A 23/21-mer HuR RNAi agent was constructed; this construct comprises a 23-mer AS strand terminating in a aa dinucleotide overhang (but no spacer or 3' end cap) and a 21-mer S strand terminating in a X023 3' end cap (without a spacer). The sense strand is 3'-cholesterol-labeled and the construct had an IC50 of approximately 0.9 μM. Replacing the aa dinucleotide overhang with a X058 3' end cap resulted in a double-stranded 21-mer, with AS strand terminating in a X058 3' end cap (without a spacer) and S strand terminating in a X023 3' end cap (without a spacer); this construct had an improved IC50, of approximate 0.7 μM. The corresponding 18-mer format RNAi agents had even further improved IC50. Several corresponding 18-mer format RNAi agents were constructed comprising: an 18-mer AS strand, the 3' end of which terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate and a X058 3' end cap; and an 18-mer S strand, the 3' end of which terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a

spacer (ribitol), a phosphate and a 3' end cap (X023). Several of these constructs demonstrated a further improved IC50 of approximately 0.3 μM.

[00131] The improved efficacy of several other 18-mer RNAi agents is shown in Fig. 25. These are designated by numbers 309, 880, 1586, 180, 1596 and 1591 in the human (hs) sequence, but are cross-reactive between human, mouse and rat. The 19-mers and 18-mers corresponding to these sequences were tested and the results shown in Fig. 25. For all of these sequences, the 18-mers showed greater RNAi activity than the 19-mer. The formats used were 19-mer blunt-ended with 3' end cap (C6), or 18-mer blunt-ended with 3' end cap (C6). No ribitol or other spacer was used.

[00132] The improved efficacy of 18-mer format RNAi agents compared to 19-mers was also shown with RNAi agents targeting PLK1. These include RNAi agents to human sequences starting at nt 1720, 664, 572, 969, 1651, 578 of the PLK1 sequence. Successful 18-mer format RNAi agents were constructed for all these sequences. These all comprise a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate and further comprise a 3' end cap, which is C6. These were tested in 786-O cells. In all cases except 1720, the 18-mer format PLK1 RNAi agent was more active in mediating RNA interference than the corresponding 19-mer format (also a blunt-ended 19-mer, with C6 3' end cap on both strands).

[00133] Thus, in several experiments, various 18-mer format RNAi agents have demonstrated improved activity compared to a corresponding 21-mer siRNA.

[00134] The present disclosure also encompasses methods of decreasing the expression of a target gene or reducing the level of its gene product, or of treating a disease associated with over-expression of a target gene, in vitro, or in an organism, such as a mammal, such as a human being, wherein the method comprises the step of administering to the human being a physiologically active amount of a composition comprising a RNAi agent of the 18-mer format, as disclosed herein. The 18-mer format can be used, for example, for producing HBV RNAi agents.

[00135] HBV RNAi AGENTS

[00136] The present disclosure encompasses various HBV RNAi agents.

[00137] Many of the HBV RNAi agent sequences disclosed encompass HBV RNAi agents in the 18-mer format. It should be noted, though, that one of ordinary skill in the art will be able to use this disclosure to construct a variety of useful HBV RNAi agents, some with the

18-mer format, and others which have a different format (e.g., 19-mer blunt-ended, 21-mers, 19-mer on one strand and 21-mer on the other, etc.). It is also noted that various authors have shown that once a successful RNAi agent is designed, generally adding a few nt to one or both strands does not impair RNA activity. Thus, this disclosure encompasses RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand comprises the sequence of any HBV RNAi agent disclosed herein, further comprising 1-5 nt.

[00138] Novel RNAi agents to HBV were thus developed.

[00139] The most potent WHV sequences for the woodchuck surrogate model were picked by only looking at WHV sequences and likewise for the HBV sequences. WHV is the Eastern woodchuck model of Hepatitis B virus. Woodchucks are a natural host of Hepatitis B infection and develop both acute infections and chronic. Animals are infected as neonates in the laboratory, and a determination of chronic infection is made 9 months later. Almost all chronic infections lead to HCC, and the time to first tumor is 24-30 months. WHV has a high degree of sequence homology to HBV. S-Antigen, X-protein and epsilon are the most highly conserved sequences.

[00140] Several hundred sequences were determined to be cross-reactive between human HBV and WHV. Many of these were screened in vitro as 18-mers.

[00141] Twelve of the best HBV RNAi agents identified are listed below, in various formats, in Tables 8A-8E, 9 and 10.

The tables show:

Table 8A. 19-mer DNA sequence

Table 8B. 19-mer RNA sequence

Table 8C. 18-mer sequence (generic)

Table 8D. Example (1) 18-mer sequence

Table 8E. Example (2) 18-mer sequence

Table 9. Efficacy of HBV RNAi agents. The sequences in Table 8E were used to prepare HBV RNAi agents used to generate data shown in Table 9.

Table 10. Sequences of an additional HBV RNAi agent, HBV 279.

TABLE 8A. HBV RNAi AGENT SEQUENCES (19-MER DNA)

No.	sense strand	SEQ ID NO:	antisense strand	SEQ ID

				NO:
1	GCACTTCGCTTCACCTCTG	98	CAGAGGTGAAGCGAAGTGC	108
2	GCCCTTGTATGCATGTATA	99	TATACATGCATACAAGGGC	109
3	CCATACTGCGGAACTCCTA	100	TAGGAGTTCCGCAGTATGG	110
4	GAGGCTGTAGGCATAAATT	101	AATTTATGCCTACAGCCTC	111
5	CCGTGTGCACTTCGCTTCA	102	TGAAGCGAAGTGCACACGG	112
6	GGCTGTAGGCATAAATTGG	103	CCAATTTATGCCTACAGCC	113
7	GCTGTAGGCATAAATTGGT	104	ACCAATTTATGCCTACAGC	114
8	CAGCAATGTCAACGACCGA	105	TCGGTCGTTGACATTGCTG	115
9	GGAGGCTGTAGGCATAAAT	106	ATTTATGCCTACAGCCTCC	116
10	GAGATTAGGTTAAAGGTCT	107	AGACCTTTAACCTAATCTC	117
11	GGTTCTTCTGGATTATCAA	209	TTGATAATCCAGAAGAACC	211
12	GGACTTCTCTCAATTTTCT	210	AGAAAATTGAGAGAAGTCC	212

TABLE 8B. HBV RNAi AGENT SEQUENCES (19-MER RNA)

Number	sense strand	SEQ ID NO:	antisense strand	SEQ ID NO:
1	GCACUUCGCUUCACCUCUG	118	CAGAGGUGAAGCGAAGUGC	128
2	GCCCUUGUAUGCAUGUAUA	119	UAUACAUGCAUACAAGGGC	129
3	CCAUACUGCGGAACUCCUA	120	UAGGAGUUCCGCAGUAUGG	130
4	GAGGCUGUAGGCAUAAAUU	121	AAUUUAUGCCUACAGCCUC	131
5	CCGUGUGCACUUCGCUUCA	122	UGAAGCGAAGUGCACACGG	132
6	GGCUGUAGGCAUAAAUUGG	123	CCAAUUUAUGCCUACAGCC	133
7	GCUGUAGGCAUAAAUUGGU	124	ACCAAUUUAUGCCUACAGC	134
8	CAGCAAUGUCAACGACCGA	125	UCGGUCGUUGACAUUGCUG	135
9	GGAGGCUGUAGGCAUAAAU	126	AUUUAUGCCUACAGCCUCC	136
10	GAGAUUAGGUUAAAGGUCU	127	AGACCUUUAACCUAAUCUC	137
11	GGUUCUUCUGGAUUAUCAA	213	UUGAUAAUCCAGAAGAACC	215
12	GGACUUCUCUCAAUUUUCU	214	AGAAAAUUGAGAGAAGUCC	216

TABLE 8C. HBV RNAi AGENT SEQUENCES (GENERIC 18-MER RNA).

No.	Duplex Concept Nickname	Sense Modified Sequence String	SEQ ID NO.	Antisense Modified Sequence String	SEQ ID NO.
1	vv HBV 1599	CACUUCGCUUCACCUCUG	138	CAGAGGUGAAGCGAAGUG	148
2	vv HBV 1074	CCCUUGUAUGCAUGUAUA	139	UAUACAUGCAUACAAGGG	149
3	vv HBV 1284	CAUACUGCGGAACUCCUA	140	UAGGAGUUCCGCAGUAUG	150
4	vv HBV 1795	AGGCUGUAGGCAUAAAUU	141	AAUUUAUGCCUACAGCCU	151
5	vv HBV 1593	CGUGUGCACUUCGCUUCA	142	UGAAGCGAAGUGCACACG	152
6	vv HBV 1797	GCUGUAGGCAUAAAUUGG	143	CCAAUUUAUGCCUACAGC	153
7	vv HBV 1798	CUGUAGGCAUAAAUUGGU	144	ACCAAUUUAUGCCUACAG	154
8	vv HBV 1693	AGCAAUGUCAACGACCGA	145	UCGGUCGUUGACAUUGCU	155
9	vv HBV 1794	GAGGCUGUAGGCAUAAAU	146	AUUUAUGCCUACAGCCUC	156
10	vv HBV 1767	AGAUUAGGUUAAAGGUCU	147	AGACCUUUAACCUAAUCU	157
11	vv HBV 457	GUUCUUCUGGAUUAUCAA	217	UUGAUAAUCCAGAAGAAC	219
12	vv HBV 279	GACUUCUCUCAAUUUUCU	218	AGAAAAUUGAGAGAAGUC	220

These sequences can be unmodified or modified. For example, these sequences can be used to construct 18-mer format HBV RNAi agents which comprise a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand are 18-mers, and the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a 3' end cap. As another non-limiting example, these sequences can be used to construct 18-mer format HBV RNAi agents which comprise a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand are 18-mers, and the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap. In another embodiment, the disclosure encompasses a HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the 3' end of the first strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap; and wherein the 3' end of the second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap.

The disclosure also encompasses a HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand comprises the sequence of any HBV sequence disclosed herein, further comprising 1-5 nt. `

In some of these various RNAi agents, both strands are 18-mers and together the two strands form a blunt-ended duplex.

In Table 8D, below, are listed example modified 18-mer sequences. These can be optionally further modified (e.g., the 3' end of either strand can further comprise a 3' end cap and/or a spacer and a 3' end cap.

TABLE 8D. HBV RNAi AGENT SEQUENCES (EXAMPLE MODIFIED 18-MER)

No.	Duplex Concept Nickname	Sense Modified Sequence String	SEQ ID NO.	Antisense Modified Sequence String	SEQ ID NO.
1	vv HBV 1599 A107 S42	C004 A C004 U004 U004 C004 G C004 U004 U004 C004 A C004 C004 U004 C004 U005 G005	158	C002 A G A G G U004 G A A G C G A A G U005 G005	168
2	vv HBV 1074 A107 S42	C004 C004 C004 U004 U004 G U004 A U004 G C004 A U004 G U004 A U005 A005	159	U002 A U004 A C A U004 G C A U004 A C A A G G005 G005	169
3	vv HBV 1284 A107 S42	C004 A U004 A C004 U004 G C004 G G A A C004 U004 C004 C004 U005 A005	160	U002 A G G A G U004 U004 C C G C A G U004 A U005 G005	170
4	vv HBV 1795 A107 S42	A G G C004 U004 G U004 A G G C004 A U004 A A A U005 U005	161	A002 A U004 U004 U004 A U004 G C C U004 A C A G C C005 U005	171
5	vv HBV 1593 A107 S42	C004 G U004 G U004 G C004 A C004 U004 U004 C004 G C004 U004 U004 C005 A005	162	U002 G A A G C G A A G U004 G C A C A C005 G005	172
6	vv HBV 1797 A107 S42	G C004 U004 G U004 A G G C004 A U004 A A A U004 U004 G005 G005	163	C002 C A A U004 U004 U004 A U004 G C C U004 A C A G005 C005	173
7	vv HBV 1798 A107 S42	C004 U004 G U004 A G G C004 A U004 A A A U004 U004 G G005 U005	164	A002 C C A A U004 U004 U004 A U004 G C C U A C A005 G005	174

8	vv HBV 1693 A107 S42	A G C004 A A U004 G U004 C004 A A C004 G A C004 C004 G005 A005	165	U002 C G G U004 C G U004 U004 G A C A U U004 G C005 U005	175
9	vv HBV 1794 A107 S42	G A G G C004 U004 G U004 A G G C004 A U004 A A A005 U005	166	A002 U U004 U004 A U004 G C C U004 A C A G C C U005 C005	176
10	vv HBV 1767 A107 S42	A G A U004 U004 A G G U004 U004 A A A G G U004 C005 U005	167	A002 G A C C U004 U004 U004 A A C C U004 A A U004 C005 U005	177
11	vv HBV 457	G U004 U004 C004 U004 U004 C004 U004 G G A U004 U004 A U004 C004 A005 A005	221	U002 U G A U004 A A U004 C C A G A A G A A005 C005	223
12	vv HBV 279	G A C004 U004 U004 C004 U004 C004 U004 C004 A A U004 U004 U004 U004 C005 U005	222	A002 G A A A A U004 U004 G A G A G A A G U005 C005	224

002 = DNA

004 = 2'Ome

005 = 2'MOE

All other positions are RNA

TABLE 8E. HBV RNAi AGENT SEQUENCES (EXAMPLE MODIFIED 18-MER FORMAT)

No.	Duplex Concept Nickname	Sense Modified Sequence String	SEQ ID NO.	Antisense Modified Sequence String	SEQ ID NO.
1	vv HBV 1599 A107 S42	C004 A C004 U004 U004 C004 G C004 U004 U004 C004 A C004 C004 U004 C004 U005 G005 027 X003	178	C002 A G A G G U004 G A A G C G A A G U005 G005 027 X003	188
2	vv HBV 1074 A107 S42	C004 C004 C004 U004 U004 G U004 A U004 G C004 A U004 G U004 A U005 A005 027 X003	179	U002 A U004 A C A U004 G C A U004 A C A A G G005 G005 027 X003	189

3	vv HBV 1284 A107 S42	C004 A U004 A C004 U004 G C004 G G A A C004 U004 C004 C004 U005 A005 027 X003	180	U002 A G G A G U004 U004 C C G C A G U004 A U005 G005 027 X003	190
4	vv HBV 1795 A107 S42	A G G C004 U004 G U004 A G G C004 A U004 A A A U005 U005 027 X003	181	A002 A U004 U004 U004 A U004 G C C U004 A C A G C C005 U005 027 X003	191
5	vv HBV 1593 A107 S42	C004 G U004 G U004 G C004 A C004 U004 U004 C004 G C004 U004 U004 C005 A005 027 X003	182	U002 G A A G C G A A G U004 G C A C A C005 G005 027 X003	192
6	vv HBV 1797 A107 S42	G C004 U004 G U004 A G G C004 A U004 A A A U004 U004 G005 G005 027 X003	183	C002 C A A U004 U004 U004 A U004 G C C U004 A C A G005 C005 027 X003	193
7	vv HBV 1798 A107 S42	C004 U004 G U004 A G G C004 A U004 A A A U004 U004 G G005 U005 027 X003	184	A002 C C A A U004 U004 U004 A U004 G C C U A C A005 G005 027 X003	194
8	vv HBV 1693 A107 S42	A G C004 A A U004 G U004 C004 A A C004 G A C004 C004 G005 A005 027 X003	185	U002 C G G U004 C G U004 U004 G A C A U U004 G C005 U005 027 X003	195
9	vv HBV 1794 A107 S42	G A G G C004 U004 G U004 A G G C004 A U004 A A A005 U005 027 X003	186	A002 U U004 U004 A U004 G C C U004 A C A G C C U005 C005 027 X003	196
10	vv HBV 1767 A107 S42	A G A U004 U004 A G G U004 U004 A A A G G U004 C005 U005 027 X003	187	A002 G A C C U004 U004 U004 A A C C U004 A A U004 C005 U005 027 X003	197
11	vv HBV 457	G U004 U004 C004 U004 U004 C004 U004 G G A U004 U004 A U004 C004	225	U002 U G A U004 A A U004 C C A G A A G A A005 C005 027 X003	227

		A005 A005 027 X003			
12	vv HBV 279	G A C004 U004 U004 C004 U004 C004 U004 C004 A A U004 U004 U004 U004 C005 U005 027 X003	226	A002 G A A A A U004 U004 G A G A G A A G U005 C005 027 X003	228

027 = ribitol spacer

X003 = C6 3' end cap

Thus, these HBV RNAi agents comprise a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are 18-mers and the first and second strands together for a blunt-ended duplex, and the 3' end of both the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprise, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

Specifically: these HBV RNAi agents comprise a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are 18-mers and the first and second strands together for a blunt-ended duplex, and the 3' end of both the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate and further comprise, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (e.g., a ribitol), a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap (e.g., C6).

TABLE 9. Efficacy of HBV RNAi agents

	EXPERIMENT 1			EXPERIMENT 2			AVERAGE	
Number	EC50 (nM)	Max% of sAg KD	Max % KD	EC50	Max% of sAg KD	Max % KD	EC50 (nM)	Max% KD
1	0.0703	55.9	44.1	ND	ND	ND	0.07	44.1
2	0.0717	44.8	55.2	0.011	41.9	58.1	0.04	56.65
3	0.111	50.2	49.8	0.016	61.3	38.7	0.06	44.25
4	0.017	56.7	43.3	0.056	51.4	48.6	0.04	45.95
5	0.127	58.7	41.3	0.013	62.2	37.8	0.07	39.55
6	0.008	62.7	37.3	0.13	61	39	0.07	38.15
7	0.038	58.5	41.5	0.409	59.7	40.3	0.22	40.9
8	0.025	62.5	37.5	0.177	42.2	57.8	0.10	47.65
9	0.131	51.2	48.8	0.67	50	50	0.40	49.4
10	0.066	42.7	57.3	0.437	49.1	50.9	0.25	54.1

11	0.039	34.61	65.39	0.105	46	54	0.07	59.695
12	0.093	63.11	36.89	ND	ND	ND	0.093	36.89

ND, not performed in second experiment.

The efficacy of various HBV RNAi agents was tested in HepG2.2.15 cells in vitro. The RNAi agents used are listed in Table 8E. 10μM was used. The third column shows the percent residual gene activity (e.g., 55.9% for Number 1), and the fourth column shows the percent knockdown (e.g., 44.1% RNAi activity for Number 1). It is noted that, due to the nature of the HepG2.2.15 cell line, it is difficult to achieve greater than 50% knockdown.

The data show that all HBV RNAi agents numbered 1 to 10 were able to mediate RNA interference in vitro in HepG2.2.15 cells.

A direct comparison was also performed between the corresponding 21-mer and 18-mer RNAi agents of two HBV sequences.

One sequence used was designated siHBV_1599_18mer_CAM, and corresponds to Number 5 in Table 8E. A corresponding 21-mer was prepared.

An 18-mer designated siHBV_1599_18mer_CAM was also prepared, with the sequences of Number 11E in Table 10, below. Table 10 also shows the corresponding 19-mer DNA, 18-mer DNA, generic 18-mer RNA sequence (which can be modified or unmodified, e.g., inserted into the 18-mer format), and two example modified 18-mer sequences.

TABLE 10. VARIOUS FORMATS OF HBV 279 SEQUENCE.

	Format	Sense strand:	SEQ ID NO:	Antisense strand:	SEQ ID NO:
11A	19-mer DNA	GGACTTCTCTCAATTTTCT	198	AGAAAATTGAGAGAAGTCC	204
11B	18-mer DNA	GGACTTCTCTCAATTTTC	200	AGAAAATTGAGAGAAGTCC	205
11C	18-mer RNA	GGACUUCUCUCAAUUUUC	201	AGAAAAUUGAGAGAAGUCC	206
11D	Example modified 1	G A C004 U004 U004 C004 U004 C004 U004 C004 A A U004 U004 U004 U004 C005 U005	202	A002 G A A A A U004 U004 G A G A G A A G U005 C005	207

11E	Example modified 2	G A C004 U004 U004 C004 U004 C004 U004 C004 A A U004 U004 U004 U004 C005 U005 027 X003	203	A002 G A A A A U004 U004 G A G A G A A G U005 C005 027 X003	208

A corresponding 21-mer of siHBV_279 was prepared.

These RNAi agents were used at 10 nM in HepG2.2.15 cells in vitro. The data, shown in Fig. 28, shows that both the 21-mers and corresponding 18-mers were able to mediate RNA interference. The 21-mer of 1599 was approximately 13% more effective than the corresponding 18-mer. The 21-mer of 279 was approximately 23% more effective than the corresponding 18-mer.

These experiments thus show that various efficacious HBV RNAi agents were constructed. Some of these have the 18-mer format, which is described in more detail below, though this disclosure again notes that HBV RNAi agents can be produced using the sequences disclosed in various formats including, but not limited to, the 18-mer format.

[00142] Various aspects of the 18-mer format for RNAi agents are detailed below.

18-MER FORMAT

[00143] The disclosure thus relates to compositions comprising a novel format, which can be used to devise RNAi agents to a variety of targets and sequences, including but not limited to HBV. These RNAi agents comprise a sense and an anti-sense strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the 3' end of both the sense and anti-sense strand further comprise, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strand are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap; and wherein the 3' end of the second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and

further comprises a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of both the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and both further comprise a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the first strand is the antisense strand and the second strand is the sense strand. In other embodiments, the first strand is the sense strand and the second strand is the antisense strand.

[00144] The two strands can have the same or different spacers, phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and/or 3' end caps. In various embodiments, one or more nt can be modified and/or substituted. Various spacers, modified internucleoside linkers and 3' end caps are described below.

[00145] SPACERS: RIBITOL, DIRIBITOL, 2'-DEOXYRIBITOL, 2'-METHOXYETHOXY RIBITOL, C3, C4, C5, C6, OR 4-METHOXYBUTANE-1,3-DIOL (5300)

[00146] In the present disclosure, in an 18-mer format RNAi agent, any of various spacers can be used in combination with strands of any sequence, with or without substitutions and/or modifications of nt, with phosphates or modified nucleoside spacers, and with any 3' end cap, in any combination without limitation. This includes the use of the 18-mer format to produce HBV RNAi agents.

[00147] A spacer is a chemical moiety intended or used to create or maintain a space (e.g., a proper or functional spacing) between two other chemical moieties; e.g., between two phosphates or modified internucleoside linkers. In various embodiments of the 18-mer format, the spacer is a ribitol, diribitol, 2'-deoxyribitol, or 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol (ribitol with 2'-MOE) or an equivalent abasic nucleotide known to one skilled in the art, or a lower alkyl or alkoxy group such as a C3, C4, C5 or C6, or 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol. Various embodiments are described in more detail below.

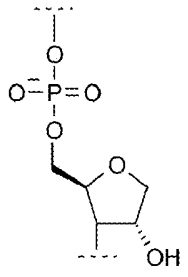
[00148] Ribitol spacer.

[00149] In some embodiments of the 18-mer format, the spacer is ribitol.

[00150] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand (comprising a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker); a spacer which is ribitol; a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap described herein or otherwise known in the art). In one embodiment, the RNAi agent

comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand comprising a 3' terminal phosphate; a spacer which is ribitol; a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap.

[00151] The structure of a 3' terminal phosphate and ribitol spacer is shown here:



ribitol spacer.

[00152] In some documents, the ribitol spacer is designated as N027 (C027, etc.).

[00153] One embodiment is shown in Fig. 18, wherein the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is ribitol, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X058. This structure can be on any RNAi strand of any sequence or target. In addition, any 3' end cap disclosed herein can be used in place of X058.

[00154] A related structure is shown in Fig. 17 ("ribitol with X058"), wherein the last nucleotide of the 18-mer strand is shown (and is a 2'-MOE), and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is ribitol, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X058.

[00155] Another embodiment is shown in Fig. 17 ("ribitol with C6 cap"), wherein the last nucleotide of the 18-mer strand is shown (and is a 2'-MOE), and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is ribitol, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is C6.

[00156] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a ribitol spacer, a phosphate, and a C6 3' end cap. This is diagrammed as ribpC6 (or ribC6) in Table 2.

[00157] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a ribitol spacer, a phosphate, and a BP 3' end cap. This is diagrammed as ribpBP (or ribBP) in Table 2.

[00158] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a ribitol spacer, a phosphate, and a C10 3' end cap. This is diagrammed as ribpC10 (or ribC10) in Table 2.

[00159] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12,

X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, X1064, or ribitol, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.

[00160] In some embodiments, the 3' end cap is a ribitol. Thus, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is ribitol, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap which is a second ribitol. In one embodiment, the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is ribitol, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is a second ribitol. Such as structure is illustrated in Fig. 17 (including the 3' terminal nucleotide and phosphate) and designated "diribitol".

[00161] The structure comprising an RNAi agent comprising, in 5' to 3' order, an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a ribitol spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap disclosed herein) can be used on any RNAi agent of sequence or target, including but not limited to a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are modified, and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, FANA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, and/or UNA.

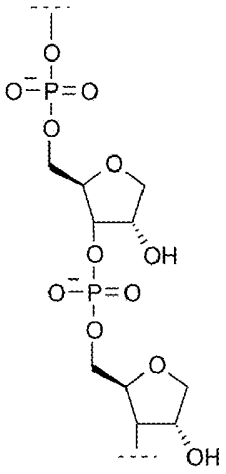
[00162] **Diribitol spacer.**

[00163] In some embodiments of the 18-mer format, the spacer is Diribitol.

[00164] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand wherein the 3' end of the strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (wherein the spacer comprises in 5' to 3' order: a first ribitol; a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker; a second ribitol; and a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker); and a 3' end cap.

[00165] Thus: In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand comprising a 3' terminal phosphate; a first ribitol; a phosphate; a second ribitol; a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap.

[00166] This structure of a 3' terminal phosphate, a first ribitol, a phosphate, and a second ribitol is shown here:


diribitol spacer

[00167] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand comprising a 3' terminal phosphate; a first ribitol spacer; a phosphate; a second ribitol spacer; a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap.

[00168] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a first ribitol spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a second ribitol spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap which is a ribitol; this structure is designated a triribitol.

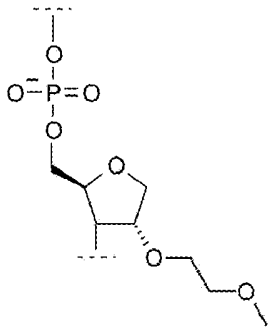
[00169] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, or X1064, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art or known in the art.

[00170] The structure comprising an RNAi agent comprising, in 5' to 3' order, an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a first ribitol spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a second ribitol spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap disclosed herein) can be used on any RNAi agent of sequence or target, including but not limited to a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are modified, and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, FANA, CeNA, and/or UNA.

[00171] 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol spacer.

[00172] In some embodiments, the spacer is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol or other type of abasic nucleotide.

[00173] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises a strand, wherein the 3' end of the strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end (e.g., any 3' end cap described herein or known in the art). In other words: In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a strand comprising a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker; a spacer which is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol; a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap described herein or known in the art). Thus: In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a strand comprising a 3' terminal phosphate; a spacer which is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol; a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap.

[00174] The structure of the 3' terminal phosphate and 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol spacer is shown here:  2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol spacer.

[00175] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X058. This structure can be on any RNAi strand of any sequence or target. In addition, any 3' end cap disclosed herein can be used in place of X058.

[00176] A related structure is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol with X058, wherein the last nucleotide of the 18-mer strand is a 2'-MOE), and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X058.

[00177] Another embodiment is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol with C6 cap, wherein the last nucleotide of the 18-mer strand is a 2'-MOE), and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in

a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is C6.

[00178] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol spacer, a phosphate, and a C6 3' end cap.

[00179] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol spacer, a phosphate, and a BP 3' end cap.

[00180] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol spacer, a phosphate, and a C10 3' end cap.

[00181] In another embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises a strand, wherein the 3' end of the strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X058.

[00182] In some embodiments, the 3' end cap is a 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol. Thus, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap which is a second 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol. In one embodiment, the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer which is 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is a second 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol.

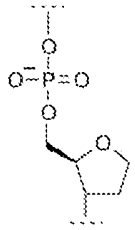
[00183] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, X1064, or 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art. The structure comprising an RNAi agent comprising, in 5' to 3' order, a strand terminating in a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap disclosed herein including but not limited to those listed in the previous sentence) can be used on any RNAi agent of any length, sequence or target, including but not limited to a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one

or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are modified, and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA, and/or UNA.

[00184] 2'-deoxyribitol spacer.

[00185] In some embodiments of the 18-mer format, the spacer is 2'-deoxyribitol.

[00186] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a spacer which is 2'-deoxyribitol (2'-deoxyrib), a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

[00187] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a spacer which is 2'-deoxyribitol (2'-deoxyrib), a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap. The structure of a 3' terminal phosphate and a 2'-deoxyribitol is shown here :  2'-deoxyribitol (2'-deoxyrib).

[00188] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a 2'-deoxyribitol spacer, a phosphate, and a C12 3' end cap. This is diagrammed as ribpC10 (or ribC10) in Table 2. This embodiment is designated "2'DeoxyribC12" and illustrated in Table 2.

[00189] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, or X1064, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.

[00190] The structure comprising an RNAi agent comprising, in 5' to 3' order, an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a 2'-deoxyribitol spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap disclosed herein) can be used on any RNAi agent of any sequence or target, including but not limited to a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are

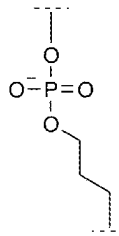
modified, and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA, and/or UNA.

[00191] **C3 spacer.**

[00192] In various embodiments of the 18-mer format, the spacer is C3.

[00193] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a 3' phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and further comprises a spacer which is C3, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

[00194] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises two 18-mer strands, wherein the 3' end of each 18-mer strand terminates in a 3' phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and further comprises a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, wherein the spacer in one or both strands is C3.

[00195] The C3 spacer has the chemical formula $-(CH_2)_3-$. The structure of a 3' terminal phosphate and a C3 spacer is shown here:  C3.

[00196] One embodiment is shown in Fig. 18, wherein the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a C3 spacer, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X058. This structure can be on any RNAi strand of any sequence or target. In addition, any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art can be used in place of X058, and any modified internucleoside linker can be used in place of phosphate.

[00197] Another embodiment is shown in Fig. 11, which illustrates a portion of a RNAi agent to Factor VII comprising an 18-mer strand, wherein the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises in 5' to 3' order: a C3 spacer, a phosphate and a 3' end cap which is C6. This is designated "C3pC6 overhang". This structure can be on any RNAi strand of any sequence or target. In addition, any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art can be used in place of C6, and any modified internucleoside linker can be used in place of phosphate.

[00198] The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising a C3 spacer is shown in Fig. 19. Two different HuR constructs were prepared comprising an 18-mer, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer terminates in a phosphate and further comprises in 5' to 3' order: a C3 spacer, a phosphate and a 3' end cap (which is C6 or X058). Both of these were able to mediate RNA interference.

[00199] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, or X1064, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.

[00200] The structure comprising an RNAi agent comprising, in 5' to 3' order, an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a C3 spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap disclosed herein) can be used on any RNAi agent of any sequence or target, including but not limited to a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are modified, and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA, and/or UNA.

[00201] **C4 spacer, C5 spacer and C6 spacer.**

[00202] In various embodiments of the 18-mer format, the spacer is C4 or C5 or C6.

[00203] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a 3' phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and further comprises a spacer which is C4 or C5 or C6, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

[00204] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises two 18-mer strands, wherein the 3' end of each 18-mer strand terminates in a 3' phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and further comprises a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, wherein the spacer in one or both strands is C4 or C5 or C6.

[00205] The C3 to C6 spacers can be defined as:

C3 = 1,3-propane-diol

C4 = 1,4-butane-diol

C5 = 1,5-pentane-diol

C6 = 1,6-hexane-diol

[00206] In some contexts:

[00207] The C4 spacer has the chemical formula $-(CH_2)_4-$.

[00208] The C5 spacer has the chemical formula -$(CH_2)_5$-.

[00209] The C6 spacer has the chemical formula -$(CH_2)_6$-.

[00210] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, or X1064, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.

[00211] The structure comprising an RNAi agent comprising, in 5' to 3' order, an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a C4 or C5 or C6 spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap disclosed herein) can be used on any RNAi agent of any sequence or target, including but not limited to a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are modified, and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA, and/or UNA.

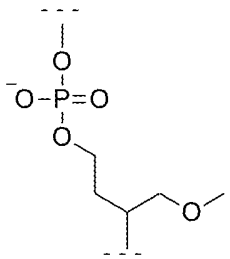
[00212] As a note of clarification, this disclosure notes that the terms "C3" [–$(CH_2)_3$-], "C4" [–$(CH_2)_4$-], and "C5" [–$(CH_2)_5$-] are generally used herein to designate spacers, similar terms (C3, C4, C5 "linkers") are also used to designate a portion of a 3' end cap, as illustrated in Fig. 20A, 20B and 20C. In these figures, the different linkers are used to differentiate portions various 3' end caps. It is also noted that the term "C3" is used to designate a C3 3' end cap (see, e.g, U.S. Pat. No. 8,097,716), a C3 spacer (Fig. 18), and a C3 linker (Fig. 26). The C6 spacer should also be differentiated from the C6 end cap.

[00213] 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol (5300) spacer.

[00214] In various embodiments of the 18-mer format, the spacer is 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol. 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol is also designated 5300, A5300, C5300, G5300, and UG5300.

[00215] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end terminates in a 3' phosphate (a 3' terminal phosphate) or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises: a spacer which is 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

[00216] The structure of a 3' terminal phosphate and a 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol spacer is



shown here:

[00217] In one embodiment, the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a spacer which is 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

[00218] One embodiment is shown in Fig. 18, wherein the RNAi agent comprises, in 5' to 3' order: an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' phosphate, a 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol spacer, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X058. This structure can be on any RNAi strand of any sequence or target. In addition, any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art can be used in place of X058, and any modified internucleoside linker can be used in place of phosphate.

[00219] The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising a C5300 spacer is shown in Fig. 19. Two different HuR constructs were prepared comprising an 18-mer, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a C5300 spacer, a phosphate and a 3' end cap (which is C6 or X058). Both of these were able to mediate RNA interference.

[00220] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, or X1064, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.

The structure comprising an RNAi agent comprising, in 5' to 3' order, an 18-mer strand terminating in a 3' terminal phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, a 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol spacer, a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap disclosed herein) can be used on any RNAi agent of any sequence or target, including but not limited to a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are modified,

and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA, and/or UNA. This 18-mer format can be used to produce, for example, RNAi agents to HBV. Additional aspects of the 18-mer format are described below.

[00221] PHOSPHATE OR MODIFIED INTERNUCLEOSIDE LINKER

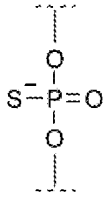
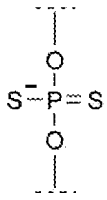
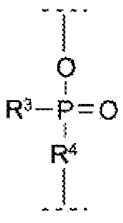
[00222] In various embodiments of the 18-mer RNAi agent, the modified internucleoside linker is: phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate, boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, or a compound of formula (I), as detailed below.

[00223] The disclosure relates to compositions comprising a RNAi agent having a novel format. These RNAi agents comprise a sense and an anti-sense strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the 3' end of both the sense and anti-sense strand further comprise, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strand are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap; and wherein the 3' end of the second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of both the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and both further comprise a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the first strand is the antisense strand and the second strand is the sense strand. In other embodiments, the first strand is the sense strand and the second strand is the antisense strand. The two strands can have the same or different spacers, phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and/or 3' end caps. In various embodiments, one or more nt can be modified and/or substituted. Various spacers are described below. Various phosphates or modified internucleoside linkers can be used in combination with strands of any sequence, with or without substitutions and/or

modifications of nt, with any spacers, and with any 3' end cap, in any combination without limitation.

[00224] In some embodiments, the modified internucleoside linker is interposed between the spacer and the 3' end cap (i.e., the 3' end of the strand terminates in a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap).

[00225] In various embodiments, one or more of the phosphates of one or both strands of the RNAi agent are replaced. Thus: In various embodiments, one or more nucleotide of one or both strands has a modified internucleoside linker. In some embodiments, the 3' terminal phosphate is replaced. In some embodiments, one or more nucleotide of one or both strands has a modified internucleoside linker, and/or a modified internucleoside linker is interposed between the spacer and the 3' end cap.

[00226] In one embodiment, the present disclosure encompasses a RNAi agent comprising a sense and an anti-sense strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap, wherein the 3' end cap is selected from the 3' end caps listed in any Table herein or otherwise disclosed herein, and wherein at least one nucleotide has a modified internucleoside linker a modified internucleoside linker (e.g., wherein at least one phosphate of a nucleotide is replaced by a modified internucleoside linker), where the modified internucleoside linker is:  phosphorothioate (PS),  phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate, boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, or a compound of formula (I):  (I), where R^3 is selected from O^-, S^-, NH_2, BH_3, CH_3, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{6-10} aryl, C_{1-6} alkoxy and C_{6-10} aryl-oxy, wherein C_{1-6} alkyl and C_{6-10} aryl are

unsubstituted or optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 groups independently selected from halo, hydroxyl and NH_2; and R^4 is selected from O, S, NH, or CH_2.

[00227] In one embodiment, the present disclosure encompasses a RNAi agent comprising a sense and an anti-sense strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap, wherein the 3' end cap is selected from the 3' end caps listed in any Table herein or otherwise disclosed herein, and wherein at least the 3' terminal nucleotide on one or both strands has a modified internucleoside linker (e.g., wherein the phosphate of the 3' nucleotide on one or both strands is replaced by a modified internucleoside linker), wherein the modified internucleoside linker is phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate, boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, or a compound of formula (I).

[00228] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is linked via a terminal phosphate group (i.e., a phosphate group at the 3' end of a RNAi agent strand). Such compounds are shown in, for example, Table 2. Alternatively, in 3' to 5' order, a 3' end cap can be bound to a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, which is bound to a spacer, which is bound to a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker bound to the 3' carbon at the 3' end of at least one RNAi agent strand.

[00229] In one embodiment, compounds of table 2 have a terminal phosphorothioate group bound to the 3' carbon at the 3' end of at least one RNAi agent strand. Thus, in various embodiments, in the 3' end caps listed in Table 2, the phosphate group is replaced by a phosphorothioate. In other words, the composition comprises a RNAi agent comprising a strand, wherein the 3' end of the strand terminates in a phosphorothioate and further comprises a compound of Table 2 (or any other 3' end cap described herein or known in the art). In additional embodiments, the phosphate group of various 3' end caps listed herein as C3, C6, C12, Triethylene glycol, Cyclohexyl, Phenyl, Biphenyl, Adamantane, Lithocholic acid can be replaced by phosphorothioate. In one particular embodiment, the phosphate group in the C3 3' end cap is replaced by phosphorothioate (and designated "PS-C3", as illustrated in Table 2 and described in Example 6 and FIGs. 20 A-E). In one particular embodiment, the phosphate group in the C6 3' end cap is replaced by phosphorothioate (and designated "PS-C6", as illustrated in Table 2). In one particular embodiment, the phosphate group in the C10 3' end cap is replaced by phosphorothioate (and designated "PS-C10", as illustrated in Table 2). In one particular

embodiment, the phosphate group in the biphenyl (BP) 3' end cap is replaced by phosphorothioate (and designated "PS-BP", as illustrated in Table 2).

[00230] In various embodiments, R_1 = OH; and R_2 = a compound of formula (I). This structure is also shown in FIG. 18C.

[00231] These modified internucleoside linkers can thus be used in the 18-mer format, which can be used to produce HBV RNAi agents. Additional aspects of the 18-mer format which can be used to produce HBV RNAi agents are described below.

[00232] 3' END CAPS

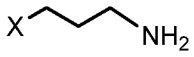
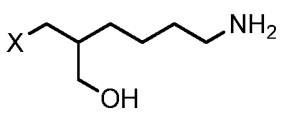
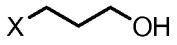
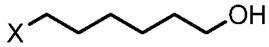
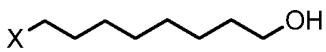
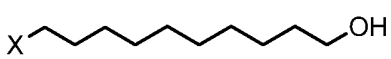
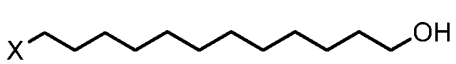
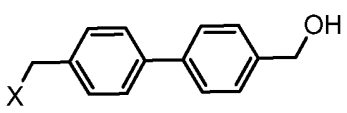
[00233] The disclosure relates to compositions comprising a RNAi agent having a novel format, which can be used to produce HBV RNAi agents. These RNAi agents comprise a sense and an anti-sense strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the strands together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the 3' end of both the sense and anti-sense strand further comprise, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer; a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; and a 3' end cap. The two strands can have the same or different spacers, phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and/or 3' end caps. In various embodiments, one or more nt can be modified and/or substituted. Various spacers are described below. Various 3' end caps can be used in combination with strands of any sequence, with or without substitutions and/or modifications of nt, with any spacers, and with any phosphates or modified internucleoside linkers, in any combination without limitation.

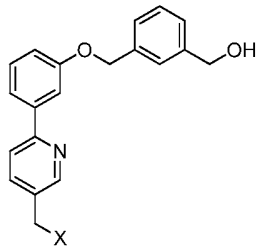
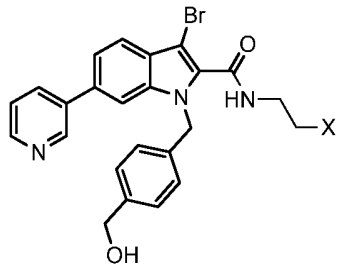
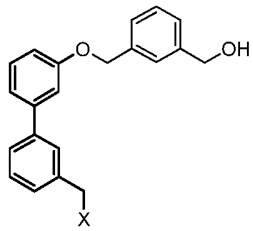
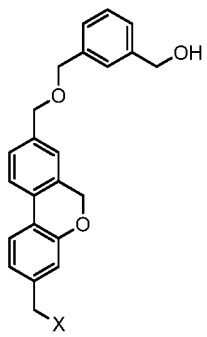
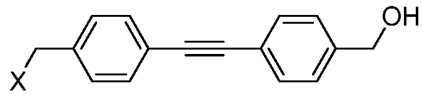
[00234] A 3' end cap is a non-nucleotidic chemical moiety bound to the 3' end of a molecule comprising a RNAi agent, e.g., the 3' terminus (or 3' end) of (a) a molecule comprising a strand, wherein the 3' end of the strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker; or (b) a molecule comprising, in 5' to 3' order: a strand (wherein the 3' end of the strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker), a spacer, and a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker. The 3' end cap performs at least one of the following functions: allowing RNA interference mediated by the molecule, protecting the molecule from degradation or reducing the amount or rate of degradation of the molecule (e.g., by nucleases), reducing the off-target effects of the sense strand, or increasing the activity, duration or efficacy of RNA interference mediated by the molecule. By describing a 3' end cap as "non-nucleotidic", it is meant that a nucleotide comprises three components: a phosphate, a pentose (e.g., a ribose or

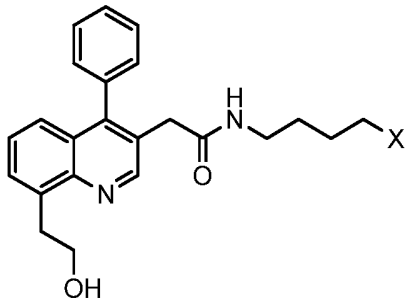
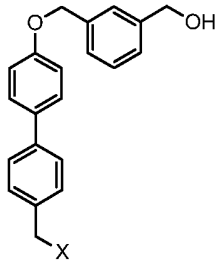
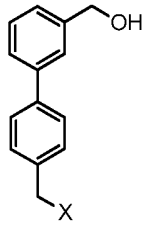
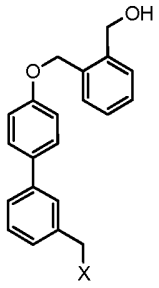
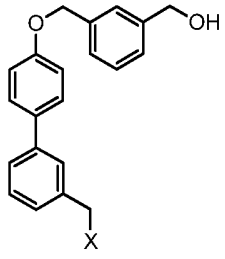
deoxyribose) and a nucleobase, and a 3' end cap does not comprise all three of the components.

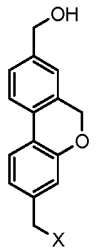
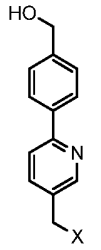
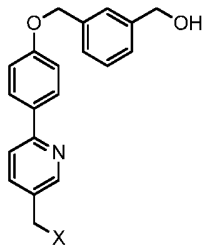
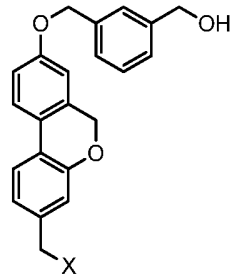
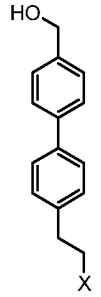
The structures of various 3' end caps (including those designated "PAZ ligands") are shown below in Table 1, below. It is noted that, although some 3' end caps are designated "PAZ ligands", this disclosure is not bound by any particular theory.

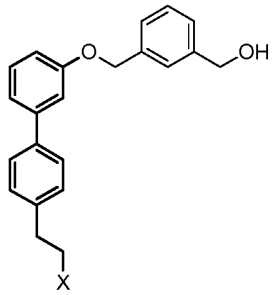
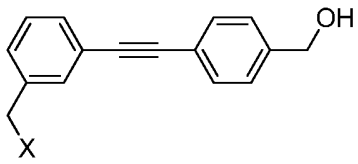
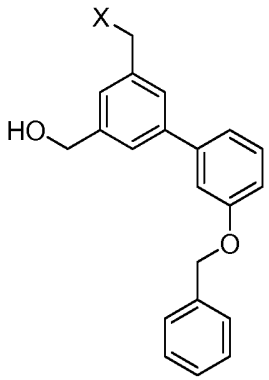
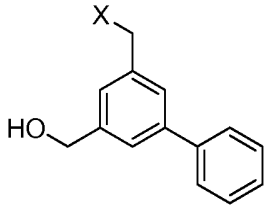
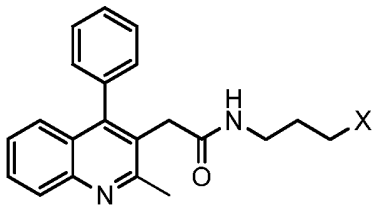
TABLE 1. STRUCTURES OF 3' END CAPS (INCLUDING "PAZ LIGANDS") FOR RNAi AGENTS FOR RNA INTERFERENCE

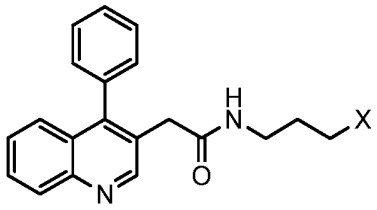
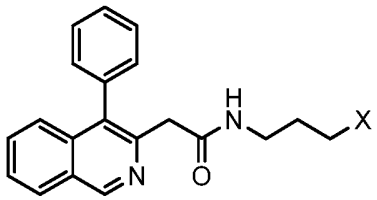
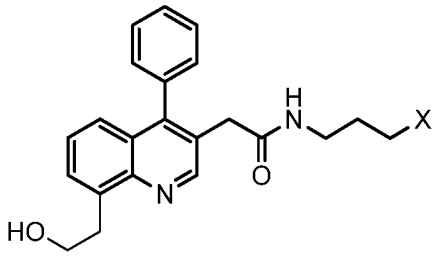
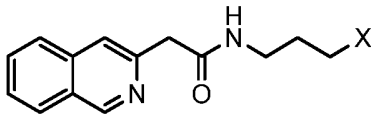
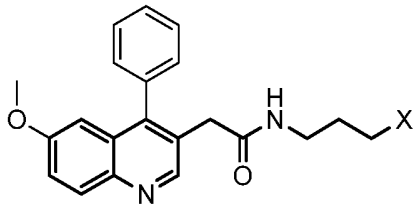
Nickname	PAZ ligand
C3 Amino	
C7 Amino	
C3	
C6 (sometimes designated X003 or C6-OH)	
C8	
C10	
C12	
BP	

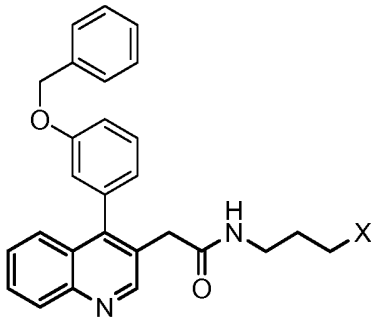
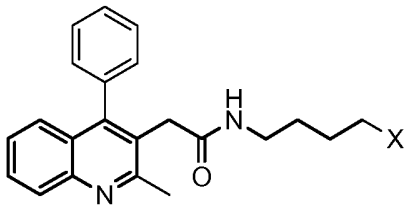
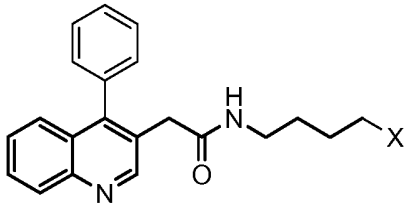
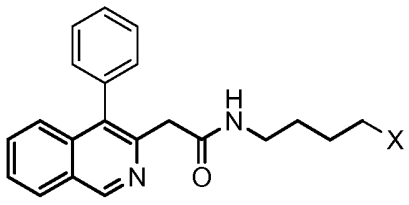
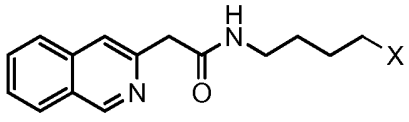
X027	
X038	
X050	
X051	
X052	

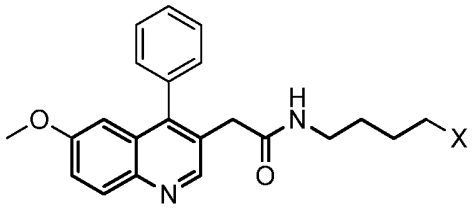
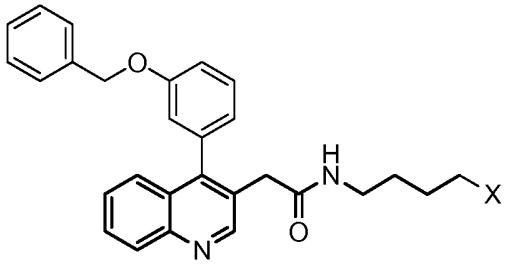
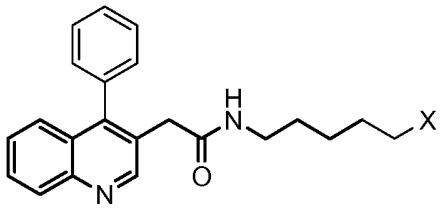
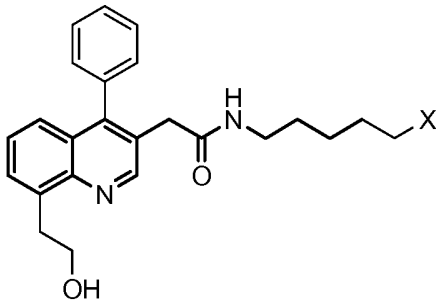
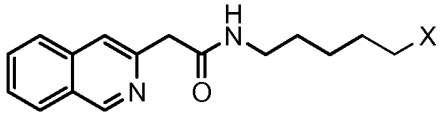
X058	
X059	
X060	
X061	
X062	

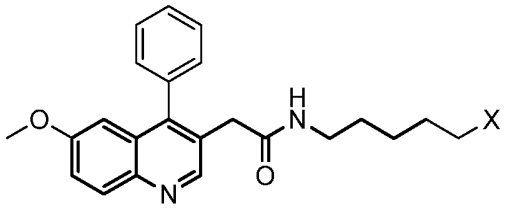
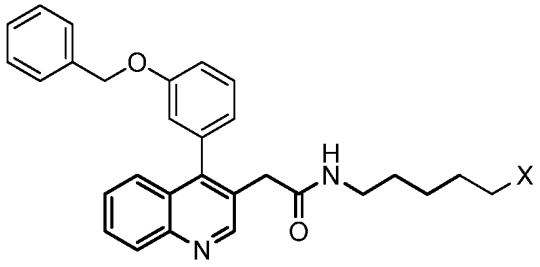
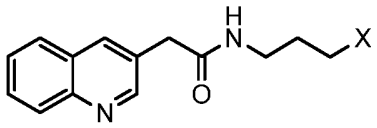
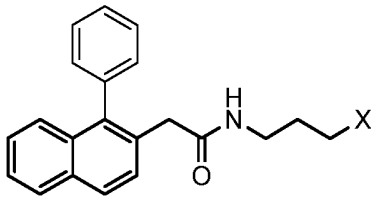
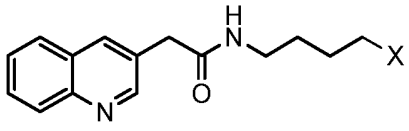
X063	
X064	
X065	
X066	
X067	

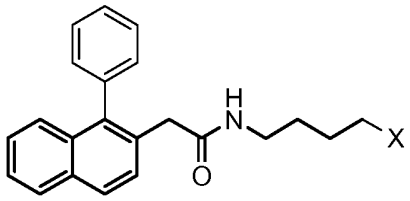
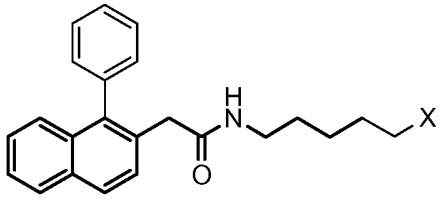
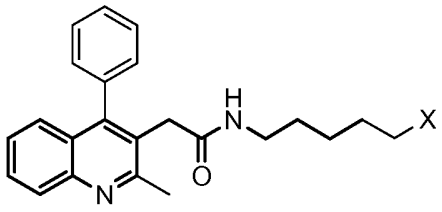
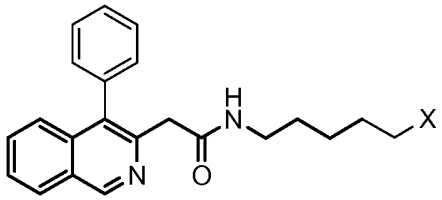
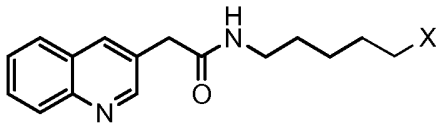
X068	
X069	
X097	
X098	
X109	

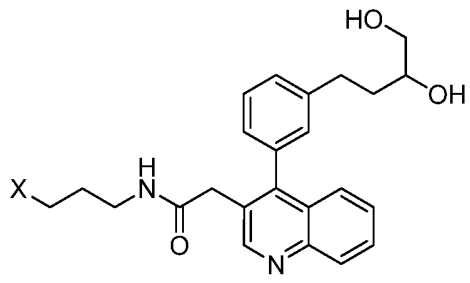
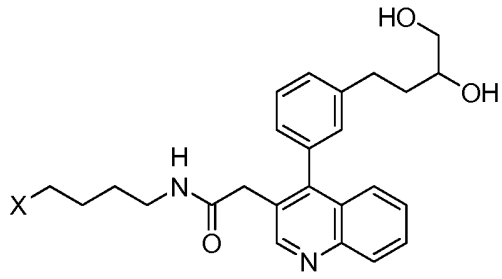
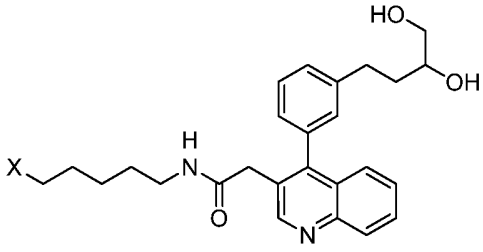
X110	
X111	
X112	
X113	
X1009	

X1010	
X1011	
X1012	
X1013	
X1015	
X1016	

	
X1017	
X1018	
X1019	
X1020	
X1021	

	
X1022	
X1024	
X1025	
X1026	
X1027	

	
X1028	
X1047	
X1048	
X1049	

X1062	
X1063	
X1064	

[00235] The structures of 3' end caps shown herein can represent, for example, 3' end caps that can be at the 3' end of a RNAi strand, or at the 3' end of a molecule comprising, in 5' to 3' order, an 18-mer strand of a RNAi agent, a spacer, and a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker (collectively represented by "X"). In some embodiments, the 3' end cap is on the 3' end of a molecule comprising the antisense strand.

[00236] In some embodiments, the 3' end cap is a ribitol. Thus, in some embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand terminating in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprising, in 5' to 3' order, a spacer (e.g., a ribitol, C3, C4, C5, C6, etc.), a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., a second ribitol). For example, a variety of RNAi agents to SSB, representing several sequences, were constructed wherein at least one strand was an 18-mer further comprising at the 3' terminus, in 5' to 3' order, a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap (a second ribitol).

[00237] In some embodiments, the 3' end cap is a diribitol. Thus: In some embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (e.g., a ribitol, C3, C4, C5, C6, etc.), a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., a diribitol). For example, a variety of RNAi agents to SSB, representing several sequences, were constructed wherein at least one strand was an 18-mer further comprising at the 3' terminus, in 5' to 3' order, a spacer (ribitol), a phosphate, and a 3' end cap (a diribitol). In other words, these SSB RNAi agents comprise an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a ribitol, a phosphate, a second ribitol, a second phosphate, and a third ribitol.

[00238] RNAi agents of any target or sequence (including, for example, HBV) can be constructed and tested which comprise an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.

[00239] Table 2 illustrates specific 3' end caps, bound to the 3' terminal phosphate or modified internucleoside linker.

[00240] In the structures of Tables 1 and 2:

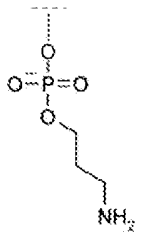
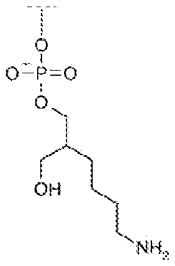
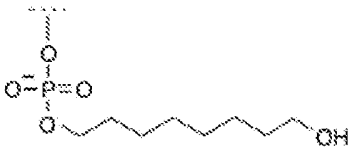
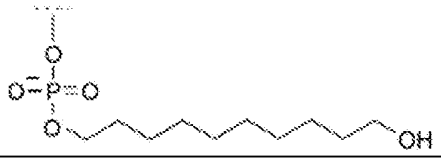
[00241] In some embodiments, hydroxyl groups are present and X represents the 3' end of a RNAi strand or the 3' end of a molecule comprising, in 5' to 3' order, an 18-mer strand of a RNAi agent, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a first phosphate or modified internucleosider linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, and a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, wherein the second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker is bound to the 3' end cap. For example, the 3' end of a strand of a RNAi can terminate at a phosphate group, to which is bound (or further comprises), in 5' to 3' order: the spacer, the phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and the 3' end cap is bound. Non-limiting examples of such a structure are shown in, for example, Fig. 15A (C3), Fig. 18C (C6, C8, and C10); and Fig. 19 (X027, C6 and X058). Table 2 shows the structures of various 3' end caps bound to the phosphate at the 3' end of a strand of an RNAi agent.

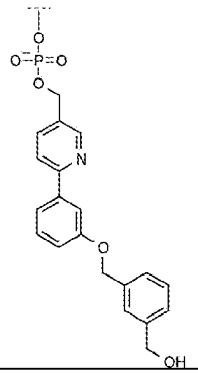
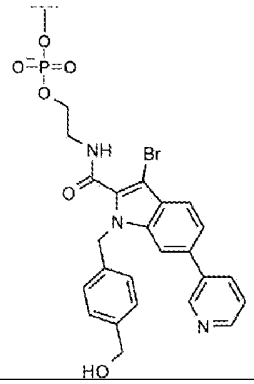
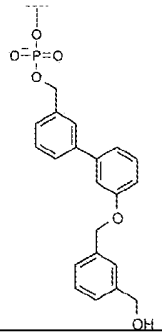
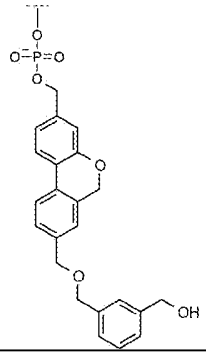
[00242] In some embodiments, where hydroxyl groups in the 3' end caps are present, the hydroxyl can exist in a protected form. Suitable protecting groups for OH are known in the art.

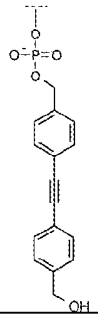
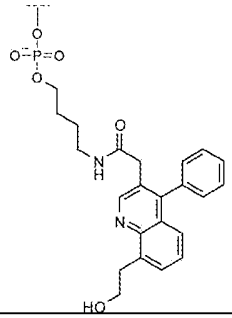
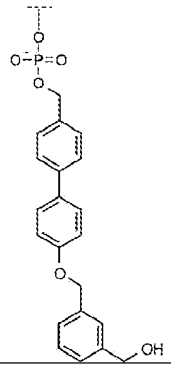
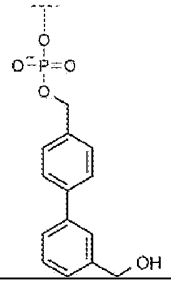
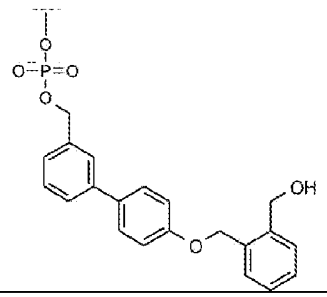
Protected forms of OH include, but are not limited to, ethers, phosphate esters, methyl tetraacetyl glucuronates, peracetyl glycosides and amino acid polypeptide esters.

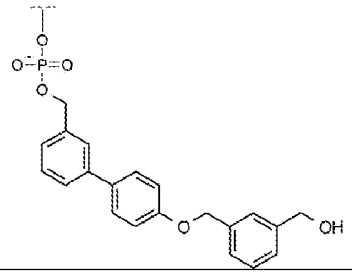
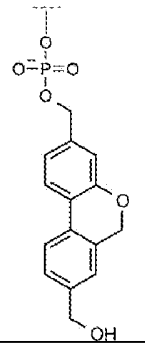
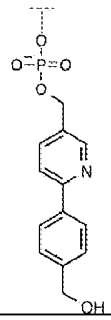
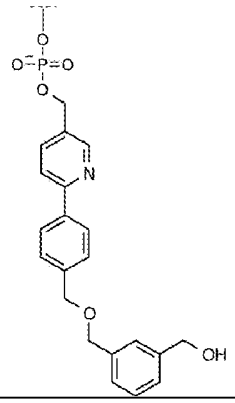
[00243] Table 2, below, presents some structures of various 3' end caps, including some of those shown in Table 1. In several of the structures, the terminal 3' phosphate of a RNAi agent strand is also shown for context, although this phosphate is not part of the 3' end cap.

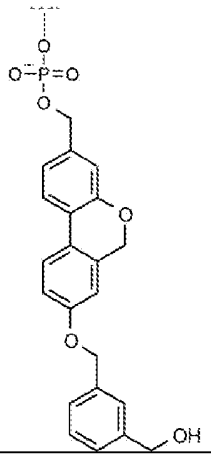
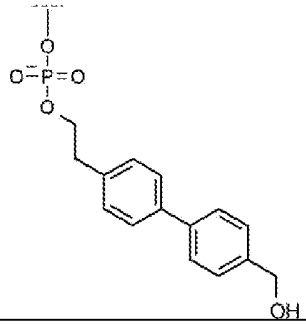
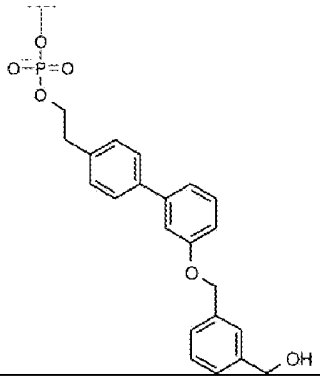
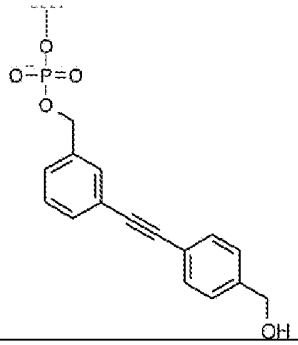
TABLE 2A. RNAi agents wherein the 3' end of a 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap. The second phosphate and 3' end cap are shown.

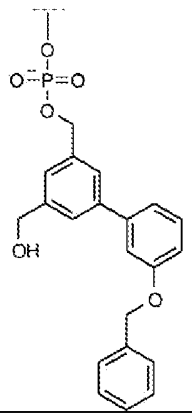
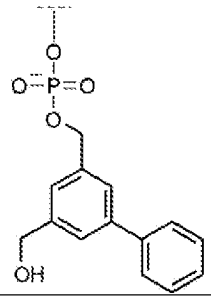
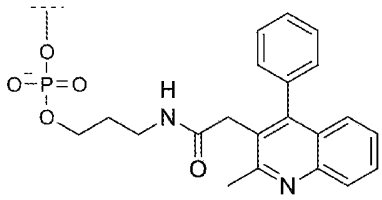
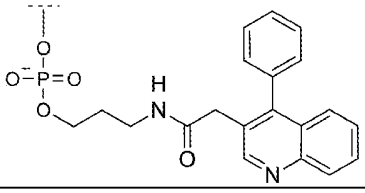
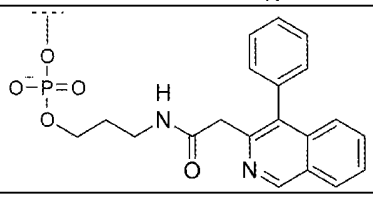
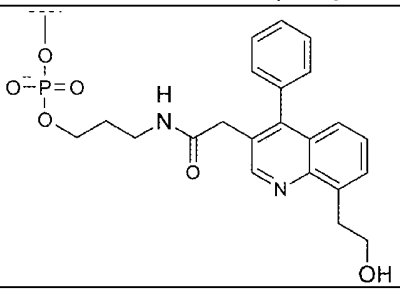
Structure	Nickname (Alternative nickname)
	C3 amino
	C7 amino
	C8
	C10

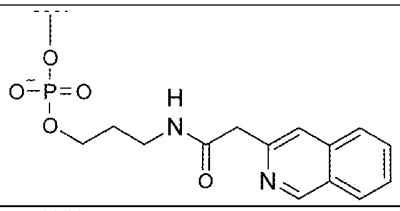
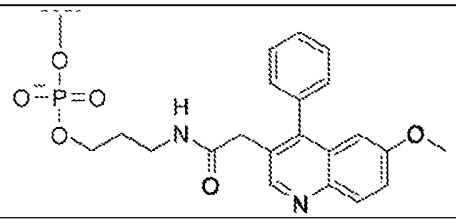
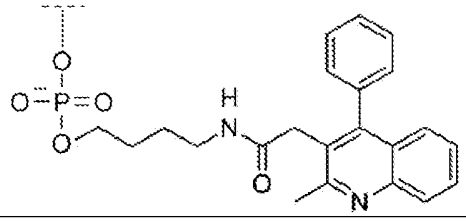
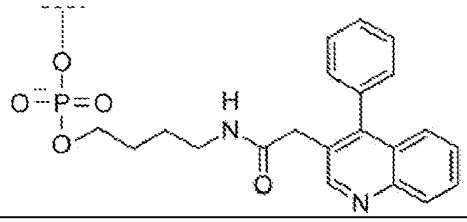
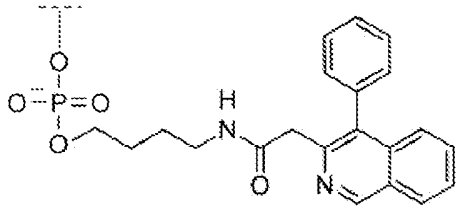
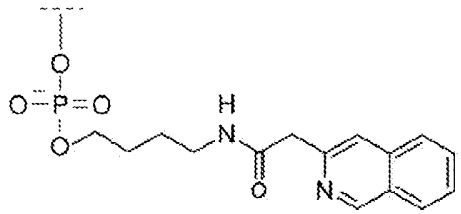
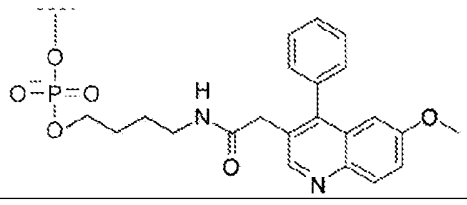
	X027
	X038
	X050
	X051

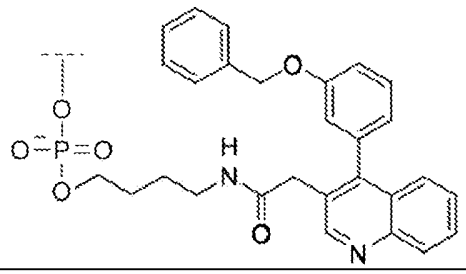
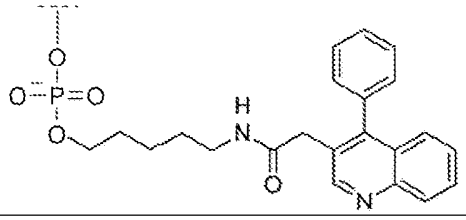
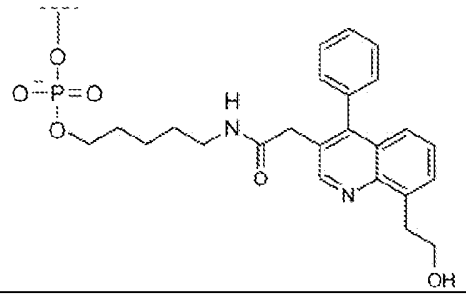
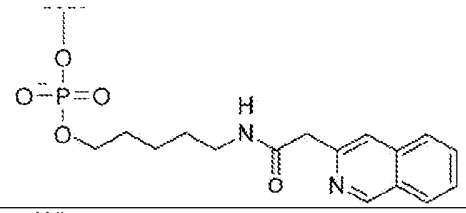
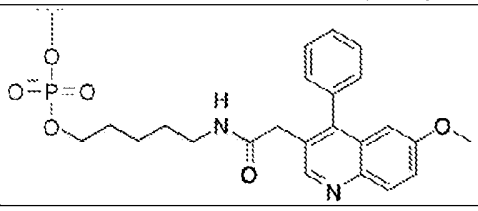
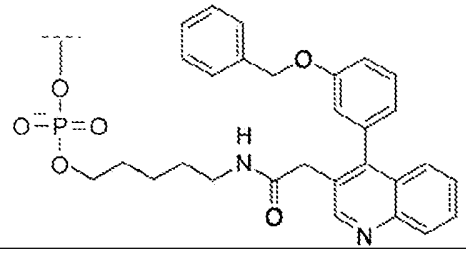
	X052
	X058
	X059
	X060
	X061

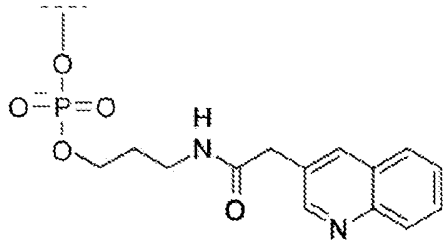
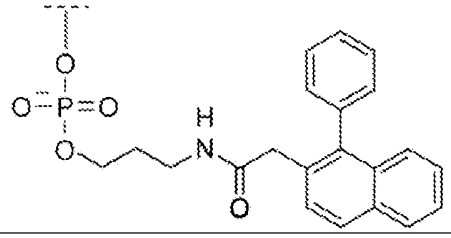
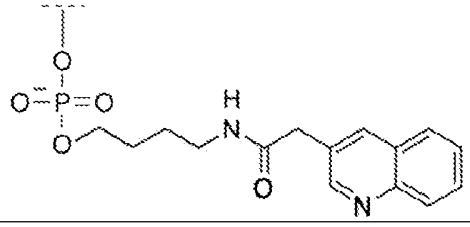
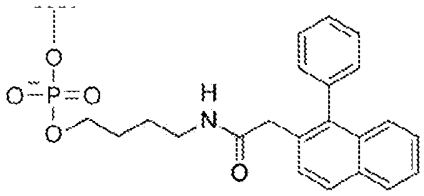
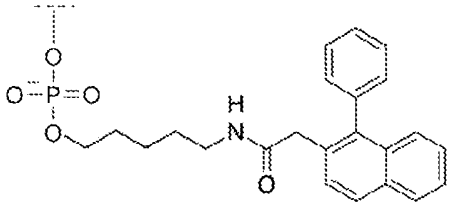
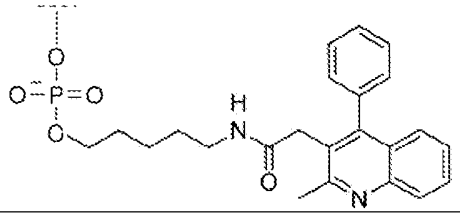
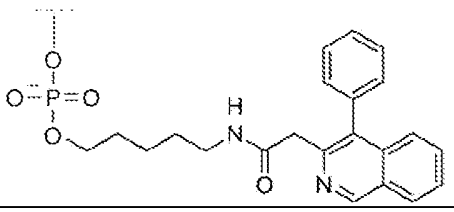
	X062
	X063
	X064
	X065

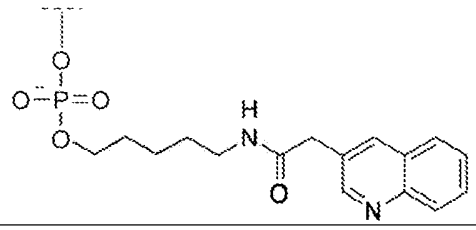
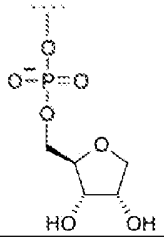
	X066
	X067
	X068
	X069

	X097
	X098
	X109
	X110
	X111
	X112

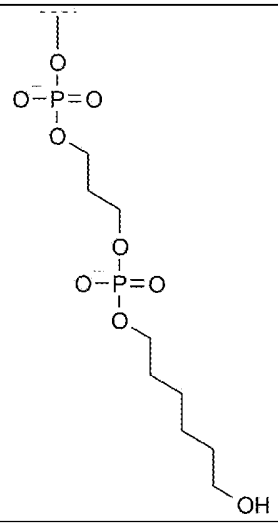
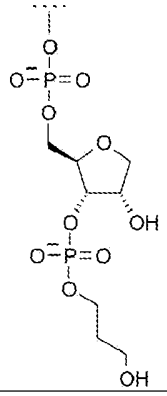
	X113
	X1009
	X1011
	X1012
	X1013
	X1015
	X1016

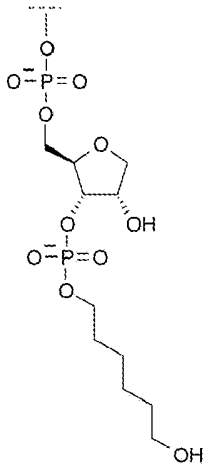
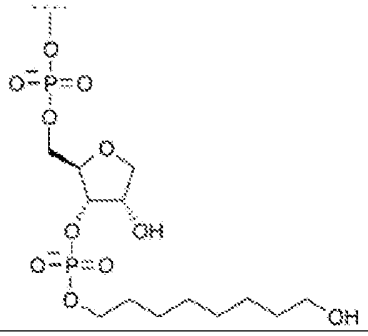
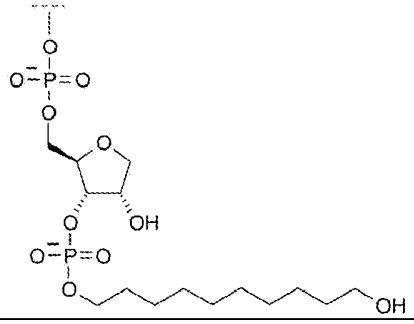
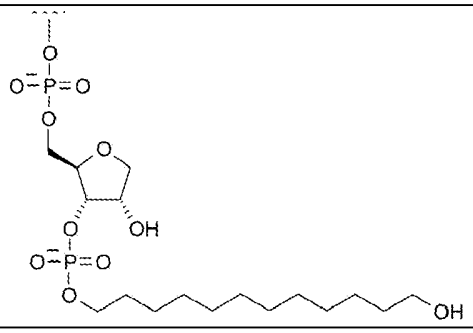
	X1017
	X1018
	X1019
	X1020
	X1021
	X1022

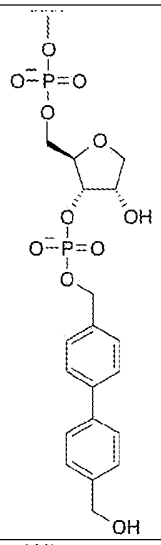
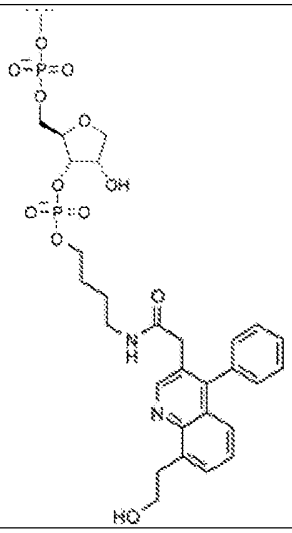
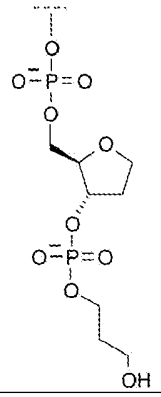
	X1024
	X1025
	X1026
	X1027
	X1028
	X1047
	X1048

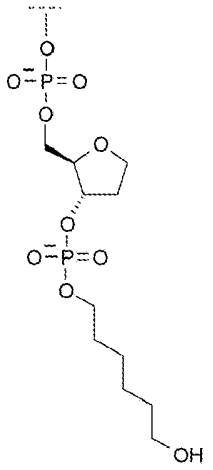
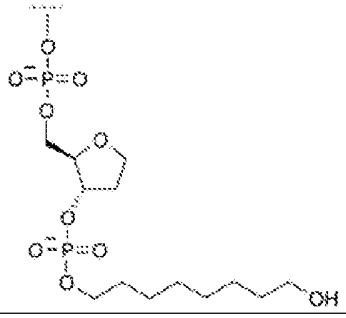
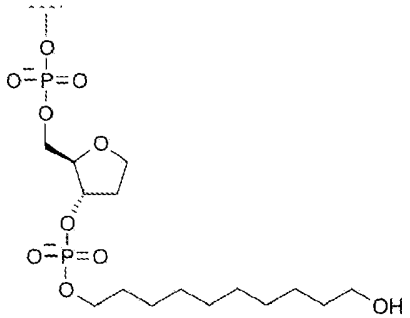
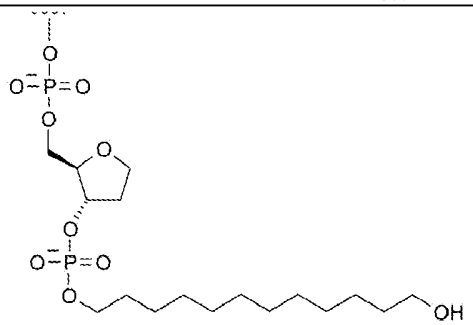
	X1049
	Ribitol (rib or ribp)

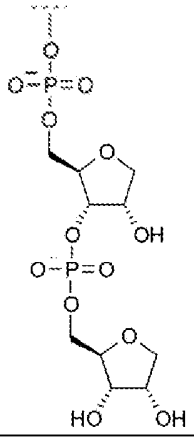
2.B. RNAi agents comprising 18-mer strand, wherein, as shown here, the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap. The 3' terminal phosphate of the 18-mer strand, spacer, second phosphate and 3' end cap are shown.

	C3pC6
	ribpC3 (ribC3)

	ribpC6 (ribC6)
	ribpC8 (ribC8)
	ribpC10 (ribC10)
	ribpC12 (ribC12)

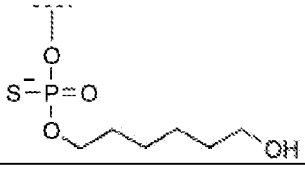
	ribpBP (ribBP)
	ribpX058 (ribX058)
	2'DeoxyribC3

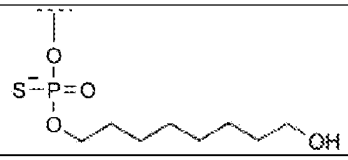
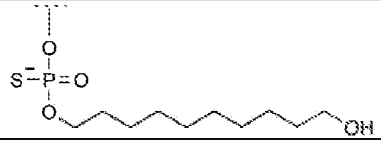
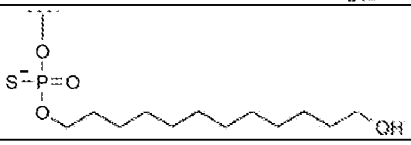
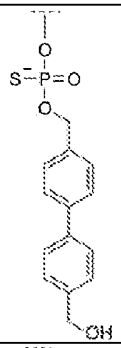
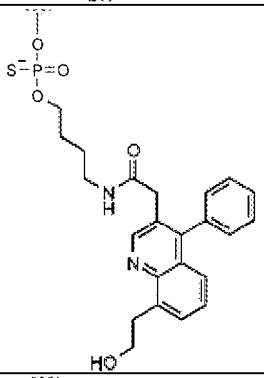
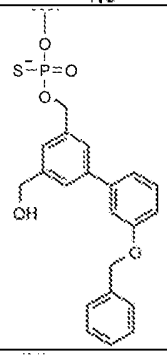
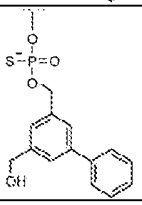
	2'DeoxyribC6
	2'DeoxyribC8
	2'DeoxyribC10
	2'DeoxyribC12

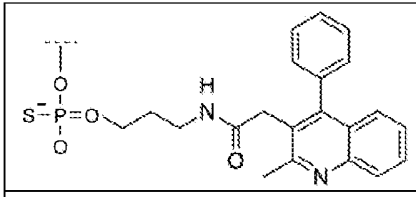
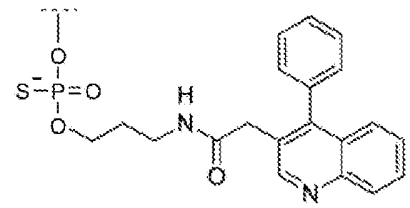
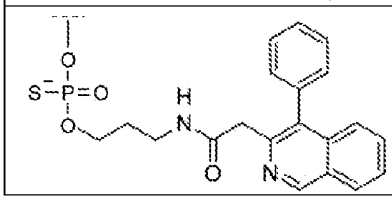
	2'-DeoxyribBP
	Diribitol (dirib or diribp)

Additional structures include, inter alia: ribpX027, ribpX038, ribpX050, ribpX051, ribpX052, ribpX059, ribpX060, ribpX061, ribpX062, ribpX063, ribpX064, ribpX065, ribpX066, ribpX067, ribpX068, ribpX069, ribpX097, ribpX098, ribpX109, ribpX110, ribpX111, ribpX112, ribpX113, ribpX1009, ribpX1011, ribpX1012, ribpX1013, ribpX1015, ribpX1016, ribpX1017, ribpX1018, ribpX1019, ribpX1020, ribpX1021, ribpX1022, ribpX1024, ribpX1025, ribpX1026, ribpX1027, ribpX1028, ribpX1047, ribpX1048, and ribpX1049. These represent a spacer which is ribitol, a phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X027, X038, X050, etc.

2.C. RNAi agents comprising a 18-mer strand, wherein, as shown here, the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.
Example modified internucleoside linkers and 3' end caps are shown.

	PS-C6

	PS-C8
	PS-C10
	PS-C12
	PS-BP
	PS-X058
	PS-X097
	PS-X098

	PS-X109
	PS-X110
	PS-X111

[00244] Regarding Table 2 (including 2.A, 2.B and 2.C):

[00245] Synthesis schemes for C7 amino and C3 amino (also designated amino C7 or amino C3, respectively) are not provided, as these molecules are commercially available from and synthesis schemes were previously published by Glen Research (Sterling, VA).

[00246] C7 amino: Catalog Number: 20-2957-xx; Description: 3'-Amino-Modifier C7 CPG 500; 2-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-6-fluorenylmethoxycarbonylamino-hexane-1-succinoyl-long chain alkylamino-CPG; Technical Bulletin: Pre-Synthesis Labeling of Aminomodifier C3 or C7 CPG, Glen Research (Sterling, VA).

[00247] C3 amino: Catalog Number: 20-2913-xx; Description: 3'-Spacer C3 CPG; (1-Dimethoxytrityloxy-propanediol-3-succinoyl)-long chain alkylamino-CPG, Glen Research (Sterling, VA). Glen Research also notes that Glen Research has no definitive data on the propyl CPG to support the assertion that it protects oligos from exonuclease digestion and does not permit polymerase extension. Glen Research's conclusion is based by analogy to the propylamino-modifier CPG [Zendegui et al. Nucleic Acids Research, 1992, 20, 307-314] (Cat. No. 20-2950-41). This modification protects oligos from exonuclease digestion but permits polymerase extension to a small extent since the modifier is eliminated to a level of about 10% from the 3' terminus, leaving the 3'-hydroxyl group available. HPLC experiments have shown that there is no detectable elimination of the propyl group from oligos made from the spacer C3-CPG.

[00248] Example 3' end caps C8 and C10 are also illustrated in FIG. 16C, and ribitol and diribitol in FIG. 17, in the context of a RNAi agent strand.

[00249] It is noted that Table 2 lists various 3' end caps that comprise both a spacer (e.g., C3p, ribitol, or 2'-deoxyribitol) and a 3' end cap. Thus, for example, "C3pC6" can be, depending on context, considered as a "3' endcap", or as "a spacer and phosphate and a 3' end cap" (C3 + p + C6). The efficacy of RNAi agents comprising a spacer and a 3' end cap is shown in, for example, 5A, 5B, 10 and 14.

[00250] The present disclosure encompasses any RNAi agent comprising a 3' end cap as shown in Tables 1 or 2 or otherwise disclosed herein.

[00251] Additional information can be found in U.S. patent applications 61/886,753; 61/930,681; 61/886,748; 61/886,739; and 61/886,760, which are all incorporated by reference in their entirety.

[00252] 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap (with no spacer or second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker)

[00253] This disclosure contemplates various formats of RNAi agents, which can be used to produce HBV RNAi agents.

[00254] These include:

[00255] In various embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strand are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap; and wherein the 3' end of the second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the disclosure pertains to a RNAi agent that comprises a first and a second strand, wherein the first and second strands are both 18-mers, and the first and second strand together form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of both the first and second strand terminate in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and both further comprise a 3' end cap. In some embodiments, the first strand is the antisense strand and the second strand is the sense strand. In other embodiments, the first strand is the sense strand and the second strand is the antisense strand. Such embodiments lack a spacer or second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker.

[00256] In various embodiments, the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12,

X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, or X1064, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.

[00257] An example is shown in Fig. 17 ("ribitol"), wherein the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a 3' end cap which is ribitol.

[00258] Another example is shown in Fig. 11, wherein an RNAi agent to Factor 7 (FVII) comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a 3' end cap which is C6 (designated "C6 overhang").

[00259] Thus:

[00260] In various embodiments, the disclosure encompasses:

[00261] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is C7 amino.

[00262] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is C3 amino.

[00263] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is C3.

[00264] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is C6.

[00265] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is C8.

[00266] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is C10.

[00267] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is C12.

[00268] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X027.

[00269] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X038.

[00270] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X050.

[00271] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X051.

[00272] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X052.

[00273] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X058.

[00274] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein

the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X059.

[00275] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X060.

[00276] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X061.

[00277] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X062.

[00278] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X063.

[00279] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X064.

[00280] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X065.

[00281] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X066.

[00282] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X067.

[00283] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X068.

[00284] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X069.

[00285] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X097.

[00286] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X098.

[00287] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X109.

[00288] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X110.

[00289] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X111.

[00290] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X112.

[00291] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein

the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X113.

[00292] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1009.

[00293] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1010.

[00294] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1011.

[00295] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1012.

[00296] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1013.

[00297] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1015.

[00298] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1016.

[00299] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1017.

[00300] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1018.

[00301] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1019.

[00302] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1020.

[00303] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1021.

[00304] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1022.

[00305] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1024.

[00306] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1025.

[00307] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1026.

[00308] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein

the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1027.

[00309] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1028.

[00310] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1047.

[00311] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1048.

[00312] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is X1049.

[00313] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of at least one strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, and wherein the 3' end cap is ribitol.

[00314] For each and every of the RNAi agents listed in this section, the HBV RNAi agent can be of any sequence (including but not limited to any HBV sequence disclosed herein or 18-mer portion thereof), and can be, as a non-limiting example, a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are modified, and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA, and/or UNA.

[00315] RNAi agents comprising a spacer, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap

[00316] In various embodiments, the disclosure pertains to an RNAi agent comprising a 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or

a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (e.g., any 3' end cap listed in Tables 1 or 2 or otherwise disclosed herein or known in the art).

[00317] In various embodiments, the disclosure encompasses:

[00318] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

[00319] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is a ribitol.

[00320] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is a 2'-deoxy-ribitol.

[00321] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is a diribitol.

[00322] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is a 2'-methoxyethoxy-ribitol.

[00323] An RNAi agent a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is a C3.

[00324] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer,

a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is a C4.

[00325] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is a C5.

[00326] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is a C6.

[00327] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand is an 18-mer strand, and the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol.

[00328] In each and every RNAi agent in this section, the 3' end cap is selected from: triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, X1064, or ribitol. In addition, for each and every of the HBV RNAi agents listed in this section, the HBV RNAi agent can be of any sequence (including but not limited to any HBV sequence described herein or 18-mer portion thereof), and can be, as a non-limiting example, a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are modified, and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA, and/or UNA.

[00329] ADDITIONAL EMBODIMENTS COMPRISING A SPACER, A PHOSPHATE OR MODIFIED INTERNUCLEOSIDE LINKER, AND A 3' END CAP

[00330] This disclosure encompasses, inter alia:

[00331] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is C3 and the 3' end cap is C6. This structure is designated C3pC6. Efficacious RNAi agents were constructed to several targets comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein both strands are 18-mers, and the 3' end of the first and second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a C3 spacer, a second phosphate, and a C6 3' end cap [collectively, C3pC6]. Such efficacious RNAi agents include several to SSB (human sequences 309, 880, 1586, 180, 1596 and 1591).

[00332] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is C3. This structure is designated ribC3 or ribpC3.

[00333] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is C6. This structure is designated ribpC6. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising a ribpC6 is shown in FIG. 5A. An efficacious RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 11.

[00334] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is C6. This structure is designated ribC6 or ribpC6.

[00335] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is C8. This structure is designated ribC8 or ribpC8.

[00336] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the

first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is C10. This structure is designated ribC10 or ribpC10.

[00337] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is C12. This structure is designated ribC12 or ribpC12.

[00338] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is BP. This structure is designated ribpBP. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4A.

[00339] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X027. This structure is designated ribX027. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4A.

[00340] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X038. This structure is designated ribX038. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4A.

[00341] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X050. This structure is designated ribX050. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4A.

[00342] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the

first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X051. This structure is designated ribX051. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4A.

[00343] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X052. This structure is designated ribX052. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4A.

[00344] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X058. This structure is designated ribX058. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4A. An efficacious RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 11.

[00345] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X059. This structure is designated ribX059. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4A.

[00346] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X060. This structure is designated ribX060. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4A.

[00347] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end

cap is X061. This structure is designated ribX061. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4B.

[00348] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X062. ribX062. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4B.

[00349] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X063. This structure is designated ribX063. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4B.

[00350] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X064. ribX064. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4B.

[00351] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X065. This structure is designated ribX065. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4B.

[00352] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X066. This structure is designated ribX066. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4B.

[00353] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the

first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X067. This structure is designated ribX067. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4B.

[00354] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X068. This structure is designated ribX068. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4B.

[00355] An RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, each strand being an 18-mer and the first and second strand together forming a blunt-ended duplex, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap, and wherein the spacer is ribitol and the 3' end cap is X069. This structure is designated ribX069. The efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is shown in FIG. 4B.

[00356] For each and every of structure listed in this section, the RNAi agent can be of any sequence or target, and can be, as a non-limiting example, a double-stranded RNA, wherein optionally one or more phosphates are replaced by a modified internucleoside linker, optionally one or more nucleotides are modified, and optionally one or more RNA nucleotides are replaced by DNA, PNA, LNA, morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA, and/or UNA.

[00357] These structures and formats can be used, for example, to produce HBV RNAi agents.

[00358] The disclosure also encompasses a RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand terminates in a PS (phosphorothioate), and further comprises a 3' end cap. The disclosure also a RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand terminates in a PS (phosphorothioate), and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer, phosphate or a modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

[00359] Thus, the disclosure encompasses:

[00360] A RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a PS and further comprises a 3' end cap,

wherein the 3' end cap is C3. This structure is designated PS-C3. This efficacy of a RNAi agent comprising this 3' end cap is described in Example 6 and FIGs. 20 A-E).

[00361] A RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a PS and further comprises a 3' end cap, wherein the 3' end cap is C6. This structure is designated PS-C6.

[00362] A RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a PS and further comprises a 3' end cap, wherein the 3' end cap is C8. This structure is designated PS-C8.

[00363] A RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a PS and further comprises a 3' end cap, wherein the 3' end cap is C10. This structure is designated PS-C10.

[00364] A RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a PS and further comprises a 3' end cap, wherein the 3' end cap is C12. This structure is designated PS-C12.

[00365] A RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein each strand is an 18-mer and together the first and second strand form a blunt-ended duplex, and wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a PS and further comprises a 3' end cap, wherein the 3' end cap is BP. This structure is designated PS-BP.

[00366] These structures and formats can be used, for example, to produce HBV RNAi agents.

[00367] Definitions

[00368] For convenience, the meaning of certain terms and phrases used in the specification, examples, and appended claims, are provided below. If there is an apparent discrepancy between the usage of a term in other parts of this specification and its definition provided in this section, the definition in this section shall prevail.

[00369] "Alkyl" is a monovalent saturated hydrocarbon chain having the specified number of carbon atoms. For example, C_{1-6} alkyl refers to an alkyl group having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms. Alkyl groups may be straight or branched. Representative branched alkyl groups have one, two, or three branches. Examples of alkyl groups include, but are not limited to, methyl,

ethyl, propyl (n-propyl and isopropyl), butyl (n-butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, and t-butyl), pentyl (n-pentyl, isopentyl, and neopentyl), and hexyl.

[00370] "Aryl" is a hydrocarbon ring system having an aromatic ring. Aryl groups are monocyclic ring systems or bicyclic ring systems. Monocyclic aryl ring refers to phenyl. Bicyclic aryl rings refer to naphthyl and to rings wherein phenyl is fused to a C_{5-7} cycloalkyl or C_{5-7} cycloalkenyl ring as defined herein.

[00371] RNA Interference

[00372] As used herein, "RNA interference" (RNAi) is a post-transcriptional, targeted gene-silencing technique that uses a RNAi agent to degrade messenger RNA (mRNA) containing a sequence which is the same as or very similar to the RNAi agent. See: Zamore and Haley, 2005, Science, 309, 1519-1524; Zamore et al., 2000, Cell, 101, 25-33; Elbashir et al., 2001, Nature, 411, 494-498; and Kreutzer et al., PCT Publication WO 00/44895; Fire, PCT Publication WO 99/32619; Mello and Fire, PCT Publication WO 01/29058; and the like. The process of RNAi occurs naturally when long dsRNA is introduced into a cell and cleaved by ribonuclease III (Dicer) into shorter fragments called siRNAs. Naturally produced siRNAs are typically about 21 nucleotides long and comprise about 19 base pair duplexes with two 2-nt overhangs (the "canonical" structure). One strand of the siRNA is incorporated into the RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC). This strand (known as the anti-sense or guide strand strand) guides RISC to a complementary mRNA. One or more nucleases in the RISC then mediates cleavage of the target mRNA to induce silencing. Cleavage of the target RNA takes place in the middle of the region complementary to the anti-sense strand. See: Nykanen, et al. 2001 Cell 107:309; Sharp et al. 2001 Genes Dev. 15:485; Bernstein, et al. 2001 Nature 409:363; Elbashir, et al. 2001 Genes Dev. 15:188.

[00373] As used herein, the term "RNAi agent" encompasses siRNAs (including but not limited to those of the "canonical" structure or 18-mer format), in addition to various natural and artificial structures capable of mediating RNA interference. As detailed below, RNAi agents can be longer or shorter than the canonical, and/or blunt-ended, and/or comprise one or more modification, mismatch, gap, and/or nucleotide replacement. The 3' end caps of the present disclosure can be used with any RNAi agent and can allow two functions: (1) allowing RNA interference; and (2) increasing duration of activity and/or biological half-life, which may be accomplished, for example, by increased binding to the PAZ domain of Dicer and/or reducing or preventing degradation of the RNAi agent (e.g., by nucleases such as those in the serum or intestinal fluid).

[00374] The RNAi agent(s) of the present disclosure target (e.g., bind to, anneal to, etc.) the target mRNA. The use of the RNAi agent to the target results in a decrease of target activity, level and/or expression, e.g., a "knock-down" or "knock-out" of the target gene or target sequence. Particularly, in one embodiment, in the case of a disease state characterized by over-expression or hyper-activity of target gene, administration of a RNAi agent to target gene knocks down the target gene target enough to restore a normal level of target gene activity.

[00375] A suitable RNAi agent can be selected by any process known in the art or conceivable by one of ordinary skill in the art. For example, the selection criteria can include one or more of the following steps: initial analysis of the target gene sequence and design of RNAi agents; this design can take into consideration sequence similarity across species (human, cynomolgus, mouse, etc.) and dissimilarity to other (non-target gene) genes; screening of RNAi agents *in vitro* (e.g., at 10 nM in cells); determination of EC50 in cells; determination of viability of cells treated with RNAi agents, including insensitive cells which do not require target gene for survival, or sensitive cells, which do require target gene for survival; testing with human PBMC (peripheral blood mononuclear cells), e.g., to test levels of TNF-alpha to estimate immunogenicity, wherein immunostimulatory sequences are less desired; testing in human whole blood assay, wherein fresh human blood is treated with an RNAi agent and cytokine/chemokine levels are determined [e.g., TNF-alpha (tumor necrosis factor-alpha) and/or MCP1 (monocyte chemotactic protein 1)], wherein Immunostimulatory sequences are less desired; determination of gene knockdown *in vivo* using subcutaneous tumors in test animals; target gene target gene modulation analysis, e.g., using a pharmacodynamic (PD) marker, for example, other factors whose expression is affected by target gene, wherein target gene knockdown leads to a dose-dependent reduction of abundance of those components; and optimization of specific modifications of the RNAi agents.

[00376] RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap described herein are thus useful in RNA interference of target gene.

[00377] It is known in the art that naked siRNA (lacking a suitable 3' end cap, such as those disclosed herein) has a short duration of activity *in vivo*; it is rapidly degraded by nucleases in serum, often with a half-life of minutes. Layzer et al. 2004 RNA 10: 766-771; Choung et al. 2006 Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm. 342: 919-927; and Sato et al. 2007 J. Control. Rel. 122: 209-216. Many 3' end caps previously described do not both allow RNA interference and either protect the molecules from nucleases or extend time of duration.

[00378] RNAi agents comprising 3' end caps disclosed herein mediate these activities.

[00379] Non-limiting examples of RNAi agent structures suitable for use with the disclosed 3'

end caps are described below.

[00380] Structure of a RNAi agent: Antisense strand and sense strand of various (optional) 5' end caps, (optional) modifications; (optional) patterns of modification.

[00381] RNAi agents mediate RNA interference and comprise a first strand and a second strand, e.g., a sense strand and an antisense strand (or an antisense and a sense strand), wherein the strands are optionally primarily RNA (optionally wherein one or more nucleotides are replaced and/or modified), (optionally) further comprising one or two overhangs, and (optionally) one or two 5' end caps, wherein the optional modifications can optionally be in various patterns of modification. RNAi agents of the present disclosure comprise a 3' end cap on either the sense and/or anti-sense strand.

[00382] Anti-sense and sense strands

[00383] The term "antisense strand" (AS), as used herein, refers to the strand of a RNAi agent which includes a region that is fully or substantially complementary to a target sequence. The "antisense strand" is sometimes termed the "guide" strand. As used herein, the term "region of complementarity" refers to the region on the antisense strand that is fully or substantially complementary to a target mRNA sequence. Where the region of complementarity is not fully complementary to the target sequence, the mismatches may be in the internal or terminal regions of the molecule. Generally, the most tolerated mismatches are in the terminal regions, e.g., within 5, 4, 3, or 2 nucleotides of the 5' and/or 3' terminus. The portion of antisense strand most sensitive to mismatches is termed the "seed region".

[00384] The term "sense strand" (S), as used herein, refers to the strand of a RNAi agent that includes a region that is substantially complementary to a region of the antisense strand as that term is defined herein. The "sense" strand is sometimes termed the "passenger" or "anti-guide" strand. By their sequences, the antisense strand targets the desired mRNA, while the sense strands targets a different target. Thus, if the antisense strand is incorporated into RISC, the correct target is targeted. Incorporation of the sense strand can lead to off-target effects. These off-target effects can be limited by use of modifications, or use of 5' end caps on the sense strand, as described below.

[00385] The sequence of a gene may vary from individual to individual, especially at wobble positions within the coding segment, or in the untranslated region; individuals may also differ from each other in coding sequence, resulting in additional differences in mRNA. The sequence of the sense and antisense strands of the RNAi agent can thus be tailored to correspond to that

of an individual patient, if and where needed. RNAi agents can also be modified in sequence to reduce immunogenicity, binding to undesired mRNAs (e.g., "off-target effects") or to increase stability in the blood. These sequence variants are independent of chemical modification of the bases or 5' or 3' or other end-caps of the RNAi agents.

[00386] (Optional) 5' end cap(s)

[00387] A "5' cap" can be optionally attached at the 5' end of the sense or antisense strand of a HBV RNAi agent. The functions of the antisense and strands differ, as do the structural requirements of the 5' ends of these strands. A 5' end cap on the antisense strand should not interfere with RNAi activity mediated by this strand; however, in some embodiments, the 5' end cap on the sense strand can interfere with RNAi activity mediated by the sense strand. Either strand can be loaded into RISC, but only the antisense strand targets the desired target. Loading of the sense strand can lead to off-target effects, e.g., RNA interference of an undesired target. Jackson et al. 2003 Nat. Biotech. 21: 635-637

[00388] In the case of the antisense strand: the 5' end cap should not interfere with RNAi activity of this strand, but can provide at least some protection (e.g., from nucleases such as those in serum or intestinal fluid). A 5'-phosphate on the guide strand is generally required for optimal RNAi activity. A 5' dT modification provides antisense strand stability and increases potency. Blocking of phosphorylation leads to decreased activity. In contrast, 1 to 3 ribonucleotides added to the 5' end improved inhibition. Morrissey et al. 2005 Nat. Biotech. 23: 1002-1007. Some of the molecular interactions of the antisense strand 5' end with the Argonaute-2 (Ago2) component of RISC have been elucidated. Parker et al. 2005. Nature 434: 663-666; and Frank et al. 2010 Nature 465: 818-822.

[00389] In contrast, in the case of the sense strand: a 5' end cap that inhibits RNA interference can be useful on this strand. As noted above, a 5'-phosphate is generally required for optimal RNAi activity. Removal of the 5'-OH group is the simplest approach to prevent phosphorylation of the sense strand. 2'-O-methyl modification of position 1 further dampens sense strand activity. 2'-MOE modification might be even more effective. FIG 17E shows various building blocks (I, II, III and IV) for construction of RNAi agents with a 5' end cap. Synthesis of these building blocks is provided in FIGs. 17G, 17H and 17I.

[00390] Capping of sense strands with 5'-deoxy-2'-O-methyl modification effectively prevents sense strand activity, as illustrated by HAMP RNAi agents shown in FIG. 17A and data shown in FIG. 17B. Sense strand activity is also lowered by current lead stem chemistry (A107 → A107*).

[00391] Example 5' end caps thus include: ddT, 5'-OME-dT and 5'-OTr-dT (diagrammed in FIG. 17C).

[00392] 2',5'-dideoxythymidine at the 5'-end of the guide strand reduces siRNA activity in a dose-dependent manner. 2',5'-dideoxythymidine is equivalent to 5'-O-methyl-deoxythymidine with respect to inactivation potency, but more readily synthesized. To more completely inactivate the sense strand, two simultaneous modifications maybe required, e.g. removal or blocking of the 5'-OH group combined with a 2'-modification which is not tolerated in position 1 of the guide strand (e.g. 2'-O-MOE or 2'-OMe).

[00393] Thus, the RNAi agent can comprise a 5' end cap on the sense strand, wherein the 5' end cap reduces RNAi activity of the sense strand. Such a 5' end cap is not present on the antisense strand. In various embodiments, the 5' end cap can comprise: a nucleotide which lacks a 5' phosphate or 5'-OH; a nucleotide which lacks a 5' phosphate or a 5'-OH and also comprises a 2'-OMe or 2'-MOE modification; 5'-deoxy-2'-O-methyl modification; 5'-OME-dT; ddT; and 5'-OTr-dT.

[00394] In addition to 5' end caps, other modifications or sets of modifications can be used to reduce activity of the sense strand. As a non-limiting example, 2'-MOE modifications can be used at multiple positions in the sense strand to create an active RNAi agent, but highly increasing the number of 2'-MOE modifications can inactivate the sense strand. A sense strand wherein half or more of the positions are 2'-MOE is generally inactive. A sense strand wherein all the positions are 2'-MOE is inactive.

[00395] In one embodiment, the sense strand can comprise one or more morpholinos to reduce its activity.

[00396] The 3' end caps of the present disclosure can be used with any HBV RNAi agent comprising a 5' end cap on the sense strand and/or any modification or set of modifications which reduces activity of the sense strand.

[00397] (Optional) Additional nucleotide replacements and/or modifications

[00398] The strands of a HBV RNAi agent can generally comprise RNA molecules as expressed or found in nature (i.e., are naturally occurring), but also non-naturally occurring analogs and derivatives of nucleotides comprising one or more ribonucleotide/ribonucleoside analogs or derivatives as described herein or as known in the art.

[00399] In some of the positions, the RNA nucleotides can be replaced by DNA, or a nucleotide of a different backbone, or PNA, LNA, Morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA, and/or UNA; and/or modified (including, but not limited to, 2'-MOE, 2'-OMe, 2'-F, and 2'-

H). In some embodiments, the replacement or substitution of RNA with DNA, or a nucleotide of a different backbone, or PNA, LNA, Morpholino, TNA, GNA, ANA, HNA, CeNA, FANA can be considered a "modification". In various embodiments, the RNAi agent can comprise one or more LNA which are at 5' end and/or at 3' end (e.g., positions 18 and 19 in a 19-mer or positions 17 and 18 in an 18-mer), and/or in the middle of a strand.

[00400] In some embodiments, the nucleotide replacements are in the last two base-pairing nt (counting from 5' to 3'), forming a clamp. A clamp includes without limitation a 2'-MOE clamp [wherein the last two base-pairing nt (counting from 5' to 3') each have a 2'-MOE modification]. Other variants of the clamp are possible, wherein, for example, wherein the last two base-pairing nt (counting from 5' to 3') each are DNA, 2'-OMe, 2'-F or LNA, as shown in FIG. 20 C-E. It is noted that the last two nt (counting from 5' to 3') can also be considered to be the first two base-pairing nucleotides at the 3' end of each strand (counting from 3' to 5'). As shown herein and in U.S. Pat. No. 8,084,600, the clamp can be on the antisense and/or sense strands.

[00401] Thus, while the nucleotides in each strand are generally RNA (meaning that most of the nucleotides are RNA), some may be replaced by DNA or nucleotides of an alternative backbone such as peptide nucleic acids (PNA), locked nucleic acid (LNA), Morpholino, threose nucleic acid (TNA), glycol nucleic acid (GNA), arabinose nucleic acid (ANA), 2´-fl uoroarabinose nucleic acid (FANA), cyclohexene nucleic acid (CeNA), and/or anhydrohexitol nucleic acid (HNA). In some embodiments, only 1 or 2 or 3 nt in one or both strands are replaced. In some embodiments, only about 1-3 nt in one or both strands are replaced by DNA. Non-limiting examples of this are shown in FIGs. 15B and 17A.

[00402] The RNA nucleotides in either strand can thus be replaced and/or modified.

[00403] The RNA can be modified in the nucleobase structure or in the ribose-phosphate backbone structure. However, in most embodiments, the molecules comprising ribonucleoside analogs or derivatives retains the ability to form a duplex. As non-limiting examples, an RNA molecule can also include at least one modified ribonucleoside, including but not limited to a 2'-O-methyl modified nucleotide, a nucleoside comprising a 5' phosphorothioate group, a terminal nucleoside linked to a cholesteryl derivative or dodecanoic acid bisdecylamide group, a locked nucleoside, an abasic nucleoside, a 2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro modified nucleoside, a 2'-amino-modified nucleoside, 2'-alkyl-modified nucleoside, morpholino nucleoside, an unlocked ribonucleotide (e.g., an acyclic nucleotide monomer, as described in WO 2008/147824), a phosphoramidate or a non-natural base comprising nucleoside, or any combination thereof. Alternatively, an RNA molecule can comprise at least two modified ribonucleosides, at least 3, at least 4, at least 5, at least 6, at least 7, at least 8, at least 9, at least 10, at least 15, up to the entire length of the

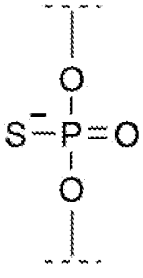
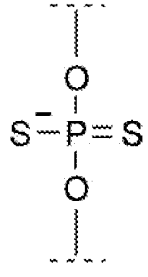
dsRNA molecule. The modifications need not be the same for each of such a plurality of modified ribonucleosides in an RNA molecule. In one embodiment, modified RNAs contemplated for use in methods and compositions described herein comprise a 3' end cap as disclosed herein and have the ability to form the required duplex structure and that permit or mediate the specific degradation of a target RNA via a RISC pathway.

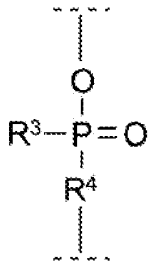
[00404] Examples of modified nucleotides which can be used to generate the RNAi agent include 5-fluorouracil, 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, 5-iodouracil, hypoxanthine, xantine, 4-acetylcytosine, 5-(carboxyhydroxylmethyl) uracil, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyl-2-thiouridine, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyluracil, dihydrouracil, beta-D-galactosylqueosine, inosine, N6-isopentenyladenine, 1-methylguanine, 1-methylinosine, 2,2-dimethylguanine, 2-methyladenine, 2-methylguanine, 3-methylcytosine, 5-methylcytosine, N6-adenine, 7-methylguanine, 5-methylaminomethyluracil, 5-methoxyaminomethyl-2-thiouracil, beta-D-mannosylqueosine, 5'-methoxycarboxymethyluracil, 5-methoxyuracil, 2-methylthio-N6-isopentenyladenine, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), wybutoxosine, pseudouracil, queosine, 2-thiocytosine, 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 2-thiouracil, 4-thiouracil, 5-methyluracil, uracil-5- oxyacetic acid methylester, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 3-(3-amino-3-N-2-carboxypropyl) uracil, (acp3)w, and 2,6-diaminopurine.

[00405] A "modified variant" of a sequence disclosed herein includes any variant comprising the same sequence, but with a modification in the base, sugar, phosphate or backbone (but not a base substitution, e.g., A for G, or C for U). Thus, a modified variant can comprise any modified nucleotide described above (e.g., 5-fluorouracil, 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, 5-iodouracil, hypoxanthine, xantine, 4-acetylcytosine, 5-(carboxyhydroxylmethyl) uracil, etc.). When a base is replaced by a corresponding modified base (e.g., A for modified A), these modified nucleotides do not constitute a mismatch or base difference. Thus a given sequence with a U at a particular position and a modified variant comprising a 5-fluorouracil, 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, or 5-iodouracil at the same sequence would differ by 0 nt (or have no mismatches); however, a given sequence with a C at a particular position and a different sequence with a 5-fluorouracil (wherein the two sequences are otherwise identical) would differ by 1 nt (1 mismatch).

[00406] In some embodiments, the RNAi agent according to the present invention confers a high *in vivo* stability by including a 3' end cap and at least one modified nucleotide in at least one of the strands. Thus the RNAi agent according to the present invention preferably contains at least one modified or non-natural ribonucleotide. A lengthy description of many known chemical modifications are set out in published PCT patent application WO 200370918 and will

not be repeated here. Suitable modifications for oral delivery are more specifically set out in the Examples and description herein. Suitable modifications include, but are not limited to modifications to the sugar moiety (i.e. the 2' position of the sugar moiety, such as for instance 2'-O-(2-methoxyethyl) or 2'-MOE) (Martin et al., Helv. Chim. Acta, 1995, 78, 486-504) i.e., an alkoxyalkoxy group) or the base moiety (i.e. a non-natural or modified base which maintains ability to pair with another specific base in an alternate nucleotide chain).

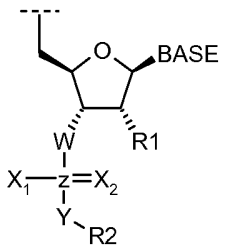
[00407] Other modifications include so-called 'backbone' modifications including, but not limited to, replacing the phosphoester group (connecting adjacent ribonucleotides with for instance phosphorothioates, chiral phosphorothioates or phosphorodithioates). In various embodiments, one or more phosphate group is replaced with:  or  . In various additional embodiments, one or more phosphate group is replaced by:



where R^3 is selected from O^-, S^-, NH_2, BH_3, CH_3, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{6-10} aryl, C_{1-6} alkoxy and C_{6-10} aryl-oxy, wherein C_{1-6} alkyl and C_{6-10} aryl are unsubstituted or optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 groups independently selected from halo, hydroxyl and NH_2; and R^4 is selected from O, S, NH, or CH_2. Some of these replacement phosphate groups are also shown in FIG. 18C.

[00408] In various embodiments, in the modified nucleoside linker, the phosphate of the phosphate group is replaced by arsenic (As), selenium (Se), or antimony (Sb). In one embodiment, the spacer is ribitol and no phosphate groups are replaced. In various embodiments, in the modified nucleoside linker, the phosphate group is replaced by a sulfonamide group or a cyano group or carboxamide. In various embodiments, in the modified nucleoside linker, the phosphate group is replaced by an arsenic, selenium, antimony or sulfonamide group or a cyano group or carboxamide. In various embodiments, in the modified

nucleoside linker, the phosphate group is replaced by an arsenic, selenium, antimony or sulfonamide group or a cyano group or carboxamide.



W = O, S, NH, CH_2, ...
X_1, X_2 = O^-, S^-, NH_2, BH_3^-, CH_3, alkyl, aryl, O-alkyl, O-aryl, ...
Y = O, S, NH, CH_2, ...
Z = C, Si, P, S, As, Se, Sb, Te, ...
R1 = H, OH, F, NH_2, O-alkyl, O-aryl, O-alkyl-aryl, O-aryl-alkyl, NH-alkyl, N-dialkyl, ...
R2 = alkyl, aryl, alkyl-aryl, aryl-alkyl, ... (PAZ ligand)
BASE = H, adenine, cytosine, guanine, uracil, thymine, ...

[00409] Thus, the nucleotides of either or both strands of a HBV RNAi agent can be replaced and/or modified.

[00410] (Optional) Patterns of Modifications

[00411] In some cases of modifying the nucleotides of a RNAi agent, the modifications are not random, but are arrayed in patterns. These patterns (or schemes) increase the efficacy (RNAi activity), decrease activity of the sense strand or otherwise decrease off-target effects, reduce degradation or immunogenicity, and/or increase the biological half-life (e.g., time of duration of activity) of the RNAi agent.

[00412] In one pattern of modification, multiple positions of the sense strand are 2'-MOE. As a non-limiting example, most or all of the pyrimidines are 2'MOE in the sense strand. Modifying more than half of the positions in a sense strand with 2'-MOE can decrease activity. When all the positions of the sense strand are 2'-MOE often abolishes activity.

[00413] Various patterns of modifications are known in the art or are shown in, for example, Fig. 12.

[00414] Many modification patterns include a MOE clamp (wherein the last two base-pairing nucleotides counting from 5' to 3' have 2'-MOE modifications). The last two nt counting from 5' to 3' can also be considered to be the first two base-pairing nucleotides at the 3' end of each strand (counting from 3' to 5').

[00415] FIG. 15B (top) shows a "wt" ("wild-type") siRNA and a corresponding non-limiting example modification scheme of this siRNA. The example modified siRNA has 2'-OMe and phosphorothioate (s).

[00416] FIG. 12 (bottom) shows non-limiting examples of modification schemes for the canonical 21-mer siRNA, and for the 18- or 19-mer formats. In these schemes, "L" indicates the 3' end cap (e.g., a PAZ Ligand). In other cases, "L" indicates, in 5' to 3' order, a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

[00417] In various other modification patterns, the RNAi agent comprises at least one 5'-uridine-adenine-3' (5'-ua-3') dinucleotide, wherein the uridine is a 2'-modified nucleotide; at least one 5'-uridine-guanine-3' (5'-ug-3') dinucleotide, wherein the 5'-uridine is a 2'-modified nucleotide; at least one 5'-cytidine-adenine-3' (5'-ca-3') dinucleotide, wherein the 5'-cytidine is a 2'-modified nucleotide; and/or at least one 5'-uridine-uridine-3' (5'-uu-3') dinucleotide, wherein the 5'-uridine is a 2'-modified nucleotide.

[00418] Other patterns of modifications can be used with any RNAi agent comprising a 3' end cap as disclosed herein.

[00419] Particularly preferred modification patterns include but are not limited to:

[00420] All 3' overhangs as 2'-OMe-U 2'-OMe-U

[00421] A85: All U as 2'-OMe-U, except pos. 1, 2 and 14
S26: All U as 2'-OMe-U and all C as 2'-OMe-C

[00422] A51: All U as 2'-OMe-U and all C as 2'-OMe-C, except pos. 1, 2 and 14
S26: All U as 2'-OMe-U and all C as 2'-OMe-C

[00423] A48: UA as 2'-OMe-U A and all CA as 2'-OMe-C A, first 5'-N is DNA
S26: All U as 2'-OMe-U and all C as 2'-OMe-C

[00424] The 3' end caps disclosed herein can thus be used with any RNAi agent, wherein at least one nucleotide of at least one strand of the RNAi agent has been replaced and/or modified, and wherein the modification(s) of the nucleotide(s) can be arrayed in a pattern(s) of modification.

[00425] In various patterns of modification, the pattern comprises a 2'-MOE clamp [wherein the last two base-pairing nt (counting from 5' to 3') each have a 2'-MOE modification]. Other

variants of the clamp are possible, wherein, for example, wherein the last two base-pairing nt (counting from 5' to 3') each are DNA, 2'-OMe, 2'-F or LNA, as shown in FIG. 20 C-E. It is noted that the last two nt (counting from 5' to 3') can also be considered to be the first two base-pairing nucleotides at the 3' end of each strand (counting from 3' to 5'). As shown herein and in U.S. Pat. No. 8,084,600, the clamp can be on the antisense and/or sense strands.

[00426] Any embodiments of any RNAi agent described herein can be combined with any other embodiment, provided that the embodiments are not mutually exclusive (e.g., a single RNAi agent cannot simultaneously have both exactly 0 and exactly 2 overhangs).

[00427] Thus, the 3' end caps disclosed herein can be used with any RNAi agent as described herein or as known in the art, wherein the strands of the RNAi agent can comprise 0, 1, or 2 overhangs or 0, 1 or 2 blunt ends, one or more nucleotides of one or both stands can be replaced or modified, and the modification(s) can be arrayed in a pattern(s) or scheme(s) of modification, and the antisense and/or sense strand can comprise a 5' end cap, wherein the 5' end cap of the sense strand (if present) reduces RNA interference activity mediated by the sense strand.

[00428] The HBV RNAi agents can have any modification or modification format disclosed herein or known in the art.

[00429] Additional RNAi agents

[00430] In additional to the structures listed above, additional types of molecules have been devised which are also capable of mediating RNA interference. In these structures, the strands are not necessarily RNA, and the strands can be can be longer or shorter than the canonical, and/or blunt-ended, and/or comprise one or more modification, mismatch, gap, and/or nucleotide replacement.

[00431] The term "RNAi agent" is intended to encompass any molecule described herein or known in the art capable of mediating RNA interference, including, without limitation, siRNA (whether of canonical, 18-mer format, or other structure), or any other molecule capable of mediating RNA interference. The 3' end caps described herein can be used with any RNAi agent.

[00432] Thus, the 3' end caps disclosed herein can be used on any RNAi agent (including siRNA) or on any other RNAi agent, including, inter alia, and without limitation:

[00433] shRNA (small hairpin RNA or short hairpin RNA), which comprises a sequence of RNA that makes a tight hairpin turn and, like siRNAs, silences targets via RISC. The antisense and sense strand are thus connected by a hairpin. shRNAs can be expressed, for example, via

delivery of plasmids or through viral or bacterial vectors. Various varieties of shRNAs are known in the art. See, for example: Xiang et al. 2006. Nature Biotech. 24: 697–702; Macrae et al. 2006 Science 311: 195–8. Lombardo et al. 2007. Nature Biotech. 25: 1298–1306; Wang et al. 2011. Pharm. Res. 28: 2983–2995; Senzer et al. 2011. Mol. Ther. 20: 679–686.

[00434] miRNA (microRNA), which is a small RNA molecule (ca. 22 nt) that, like siRNAs, also silences targets via RISC. Naturally-occurring miRNAs are encoded by eukaryotic nuclear DNA; miRNAs are generated by post-transcriptional RNA processing, and function via base-pairing with complementary sequences within mRNA molecules, usually resulting in translational repression or target degradation and gene silencing. The human genome can encode over 1000 miRNAs, which may target about 60% of mammalian genes and are abundant in many human cell types. Various varieties of naturally-occurring and artificial derivatives of miRNAs are known in the art. See, for example: Lewis et al. 2003. Cell 115: 787–798; Lim et al. 2003. Genes Dev. 17: 991–1008; He et al. 2004. Nat. Rev. Genet. 5: 522–31; Bentwich et al. 2005. Nat. Genet. 37: 766–70; Lewis et al. 2005. Cell 120: 15–20 ; Kusenda et al. 2006. Biomed Pap Med Fac Univ Palacky Olomouc Czech Repub 150: 205–15; Zhang et al. 2006. J. Gen. Gen. 36: 1–6; Brodersen et al. 2008. Science 320: 1185–90; Friedman et al. 2009. Genome Res. 19 (1): 92–105; Bartel 2009. Cell 136 (2): 215–33.

[00435] sisiRNA (small internally segmented interfering RNA), wherein the sense strand comprises at least one single-stranded nick. This nick decreases the incorporation of the sense strand into the RISC complex and thus reduces off-target effects. See: WO 2007/107162.

[00436] DNA-RNA chimera, wherein the seed portion of each strand is DNA, while the remainder of each strand is RNA. See: Yamato et al. 2011. Cancer Gene Ther. **18:** 587-597.

[00437] siRNA comprising two mismatches, wherein that the molecule comprises three short double-stranded regions. In one embodiment of this RNAi agent, the guide (antisense) strand is a 22-mer, while the sense strand is a 20-mer (producing only a single 2-nt overhang on the 3' end of the anti-sense strand; and two mismatches produce double-stranded regions of 6, 8 and 4 bp. See: U.S. Pat. App. 2009/0209626

[00438] aiRNA (assymetrical interfering RNA), wherein the sense strand is shorter than 19-nt long, so that the anti-sense strand is preferentially loaded into RISC, and thus off-target effects are reduced. In various embodiments of this RNAi agent, the anti-sense strand is 21-nt long, but the sense strand is only 15 or 16 nt long. See: Sun et al. 2008 Nature Biotech. 26: 1379-1382; and Chu and Rana. 2008 RNA 14: 1714-1719.

[00439] Thus, any HBV RNAi agent sequence (or 18-mer portion thereof, e.g., nt 1-18 or 2-19) disclosed herein can be used with any of the various formats of RNAi agents described

above or otherwise known in the art, including siRNAs (including but not limited to those of the canonical structure), shRNAs, miRNAs, sisiRNAs, DNA-RNA chimeras, siRNAs comprising two mismatches (or more mismatches), or aiRNAs.

[00440] 3' end caps

[00441] The 18-mer format RNAi agent of the present disclosure comprises a 3' end cap. The terms "3' end cap", "3' end cap modification", "end cap", "Cap", "3' end modification" and the like include a chemical moiety attached to the end of a double-stranded nucleotide duplex, but is used herein to exclude a chemical moiety that is a nucleotide or nucleoside. Any of these can be used with any HBV sequence disclosed herein to produce a HBV RNAi agent. A "3' end cap" is attached at the 3' end of a nucleotide or oligonucleotide (e.g., is a modification at the 3' carbon at the terminus of at least one strand) and protects the molecule from degradation, e.g., from nucleases, such as those in blood serum or intestinal fluid. "3' end caps" include but are not limited to "PAZ ligands," which term includes 3' end caps which interact with the PAZ domain of the enzyme Dicer. 3' end caps are sometimes referred to as "non-nucleotide overhang mimics" or "LMW [Low molecular weight] mimics of dinucleotide overhangs" or the like.

[00442] This disclosure notes that some documents refer to a 3' end cap as described herein (e.g., X109 or X110 or X111, etc.) as an "overhang" or a "3' overhang"; however, this document differentiates a 3' end cap from an "overhang" and uses the term "overhang" only to refer to a nucleotidic overhang (e.g., one comprising only nucleotides such as A, C, G, U or T, such as UU or TT). Thus, as defined herein, a "3' end cap" is not an overhang.

[00443] As defined herein, a 3' end cap can be used in place of or in addition to an overhang (i.e., a nucleotidic overhang). Earlier work with canonical siRNA structures suggested that the 2-nt overhang was useful for RNA interference activity, while blunt-ended dsRNAs (lacking the overhangs) were generally not effective. See, for example, Elbashir et al. 2001 EMBO J. 23: 6877-6888, especially Figure 1F. However, dsRNA, even with the overhangs, were subject to enzymatic degradation. As noted elsewhere by the Applicants, "unmodified siRNAs are subject to enzymatic digestion, mainly by nucleases." (WO 2007/128477, page 1). 3' end caps were thus designed to perform several functions, including (1) allowing the molecule to mediate RNA interference activity, and (2) protecting the molecule from degradation.

[00444] It is noted, though, that the 3' end caps disclosed herein can be used in addition to as well as in place of 3' overhangs.

[00445] Because a 3' end cap can be used instead of an overhang such as UU or TT, the 3' end caps described herein are sometimes referred to as "3'-Dinucleotide surrogates".

[00446] A few 3' end caps have been disclosed for use with siRNAs. It is noted that of the 3' end caps which have been described chemically, many of these have been shown not to be functional. A functional 3' end cap can be able to perform these functions: (1) allow the double-stranded RNA to function in RNA interference; and (2) increase the stability of the molecule, e.g., by protecting it from nucleases, such as those found in blood serum or intestinal fluid.

[00447] **Non-functional 3' end caps**

[00448] Many 3' end caps described in the literature are unable to perform both of these functions. In some cases, the placement of the end caps is important; some end caps may be functional when placed on only one strand, but not functional if placed on both strands and/or on both 5' and 3' ends of both strands.

[00449] It is impossible to predict which 3' end caps will perform both functions without experimentation. In fact, while many endcaps were predicted to be suitable for RNA interference (e.g., in US 2003/0143732), many later were discovered not to perform both functions.

[00450] Other scientists have empirically found that, despite predictions, some endcaps or overhangs (1) stabilized the siRNA but (2) did NOT allow RNAi activity. For example, the TT (dithymidine) in combination with 2'-OMe modifications at all positions, Czauderna et al. 2003 Nucl. Acids Res. 31:2705-2716, Figure 4B. Hadwiger et al. also note that complete 2'-O-methylation rendered the siRNA serum nuclease-resistant, although gene silencing activity was almost completely abolished. Hadwiger et al. 2005, pages 194-206, in *RNA Interference Technology*, ed. K. Appasani, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

[00451] Other endcaps or overhangs (1) did NOT stabilize the siRNA, though (2) they did allow RNAi activity. For example, the TT at both 3' ends or both 5' ends of a siRNA. Czauderna et al. 2003, Figure 4B.

[00452] Still other endcaps (1) did NOT stabilize the siRNA AND (2) did NOT allow RNAi activitysuch examples include: the amino-C6 linker or inverted abasic nucleotide. Czauderna et al. 2003, Figure 4B.

[00453] Additional examples of 3' end caps which are non-functional under at least some conditions include:

[00454] Inverted (deoxy) abasics, which were neither stabilize siRNA nor allow siRNA activity when present on both 5' and both 3' ends. See: Czauderna et al. 2003 Nucl. Acids Res. 31:2705-2716, Figure 4B.

[00455] Modified base nucleotides such as 5-propynyl-U, which do not both stabilize the siRNA and allow RNAi activity. Deleavey et al. 2009 Curr. Prot. Nucl. Acid Chem. 16.3.1 – 16.3.22; Terrazas et al. 2009 Nucleic Acids Res. 37: 346-353.

[00456] At least some amino-substituted lower alkyls, including aminohexyl phosphate, which was not able to stabilize the siRNA. When present on both 5' ends and both 3' ends, it prevented RNAi activity. See: Czauderna et al. 2003, Figure 4B.

[00457] Fluoroscein (e.g., a fluorescent chromophore), which was found to inhibit RNA interference activity when conjugated to the 3' end of the antisense strand. The sense strand can tolerate, for example, a conjugation of fluorescein at the 3'-end, but the antisense strand cannot. Harboth et al. 2003 Antisense Nucl. Acid Drug Dev. 13: 83-105. See: Harboth et al. 2003 Antisense Nucl. Acid Drug Dev 13: 83-105.

[00458] Cyanine (e.g., Cy5), which is non-functional. See: Song et al. 2003 Nature Med. 9: 347-351. See page 347, second col.

[00459] 3' phosphate as a 3' end cap, suggested by U.S. Patent No. 5,998,203 (paragraph [017]), but later shown not to both stabilize the 3' end of a siRNA and allow RNAi activity, Schwarz et al. 2002 Mol. Cell 10: 537-548; and Lipardi et al. 2001 Cell 107: 299-307.

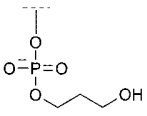
[00460] 3'-aminopropylphosphoester, which reduced RNA interference activity. See: Schwarz et al. 2002 Mol. Cell 10: 537-548, Fig. 2.

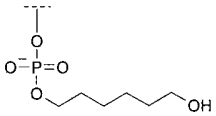
[00461] Thus, not all moieties tested as 3' end caps are capable of both allowing RNA interference and protecting the molecule from degradation.

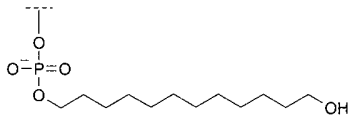
[00462] **Functional 3' end caps**

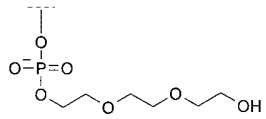
[00463] In contrast to the non-functional 3' end caps and overhangs described above, functional 3' end caps are described in, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,097,716; 8,084,600; 8,344,128; 8,404,831; and 8,404,832. These disclose functional 3' end caps comprising a phosphate and nicknamed as C3, C6, C12, Triethylene glycol, Cyclohexyl (or Cyclohex), Phenyl, Biphenyl, Adamantane and Lithocholic acid (or Lithochol).

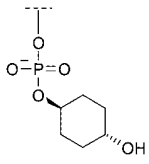
These functional 3' end caps are diagrammed below, wherein they are shown bonded to a phosphate:

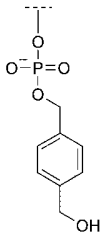

C3

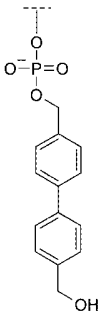

C6

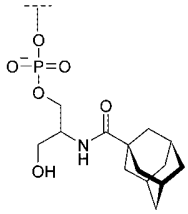

C12

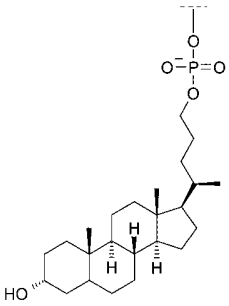

Triethylene glycol


Cyclohexyl


Phenyl


Biphenyl


Adamantane


Lithocholic acid

[00464] It is noted that the terminology used in the present disclosure differs slightly from that used in U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,097,716; 8,084,600; 8,344,128; 8,404,831; and 8,404,832. In various embodiments, the present disclosure pertains to RNAi agents comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein, in some embodiments, the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate (or modified internucleoside linker) and further comprises a 3' end cap. In the diagrams directly above, the phosphate and the 3' end cap are shown.

[00465] The 3' end caps disclosed in U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,097,716; 8,084,600; 8,344,128; 8,404,831; and 8,404,832 were superior to those which were devised before them. For example, unlike other possible endcaps, these were able to both protect the siRNAs from

degradation (e.g., from nucleases, such as in blood or intestinal fluid), and also allow RNA interference.

[00466] However, in at least some cases, many of the novel 3' end caps of the present disclosure (e.g., those listed in Tables 1 and 2) are even further improved. For example, siRNAs with X058 (as disclosed herein) show a higher duration of activity than a siRNA with C6 (Fig. 22). HuR siRNAs with X058 showed greater efficacy at Day 7 and at Day 10 in Huh-7 cells.

[00467] Various novel 3' end caps disclosed herein include those designated as PAZ ligands, as they interact with the PAZ domain of Dicer. Any functional 3' end cap can be used to produce a HBV RNAi agent.

[00468] PAZ ligands

[00469] As noted above, when a long dsRNA molecule is introduced into a cell, Dicer chops the dsRNA is shorter segments called siRNAs. A homologue of Dicer is common to all organisms in which dsRNA-mediated gene silencing has been observed. Myers et al. 2005. In RNA Interference Technology, ed. Appasani, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge UK, p. 29-54; Bernstein et al. 2001 Nature 409: 363-366; and Schauer et al. 2002 Trends Plant Sci. 7: 487-491. Dicer is an RNase III enzyme and is composed of six recognizable domains. At or near the N-terminus is an approx. 550 aa DExH-box RNA helicase domain, which is immediately followed by a conserved approx. 100 aa domain called DUF283. Just C-terminal to DUF283 domain is the PAZ (for Piwi/Argonaute/Zwille) domain. The domain recognizes single stranded dinucleotide overhangs. Lingel et al. 2003 Nature 426: 465-469; Song et al. 2003 Nature Struct. Biol. 10: 1026-1032; Yan et al. 2003 Nature 426: 468-474; Lingel et al. 2004 Nature Struct. Mol. Biol. 11: 576-577; Ma et al. 2004 Nature 429: 318-322. Presumably, the PAZ domain in Dicer could also bind RNA to position the catalytic domains for cleavage. Zhang et al. 2004 Cell 118: 57-68. The C-terminus of the Dicer protein is composed of two RNAse III catalytic domains and a putative dsRNA-binding domain.

[00470] Table 2 lists various 3' end caps, including many PAZ ligands.

[00471] Arrangement and non-identical nature of 3' end caps

[00472] The anti-sense and sense strands are biochemically distinct. As noted above, the antisense strand is preferably loaded into RISC, as this strand targets the desired target. Incorporation of the sense strand can lead to off-target effects.

[00473] It is known that some 3' end caps can be more useful on one strand than on the other. For example, as noted above, The sense strand can tolerate, for example, a conjugation of fluorescein at the 3'-end, but the antisense strand cannot. Harboth et al. 2003 Antisense Nucl. Acid Drug Dev. 13: 83-105.

[00474] RNAi agent comprising an 18-mer and a 3' end cap (but no spacer or second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker)

[00475] As described herein, this disclosure has established that a viable format for RNAi agents comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a spacer, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap.

[00476] In addition, this disclosure also indicates that effective 18-mer RNAi agent formats can omit up to two of these elements (e.g., omitting the 3' end cap; or omitting the second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and the 3' end cap; or omitting the spacer and the second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker.

[00477] For example:

[00478] In some embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises a 18-mer strand terminating in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprising a 3' end cap (but no spacer, or phosphate or modified internucleoside linker). Thus: In some embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap (e.g., BP or C6 or any 3' end cap disclosed herein). For example, a variety of RNAI agents to SSB were constructed comprising: an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a 3' end cap (e.g., BP or C6).

[00479] In addition:

[00480] A RNAi agent to Factor VII comprising an 18-mer strand comprising a 3' end cap (C6) was shown to be effective in mediating RNA interference in vitro.

[00481] In some embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a spacer (but no phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, or 3' end cap).

[00482] Thus: In some embodiments, the RNAi agent comprises an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a ribitol. It is noted in this case, the designation of the ribitol as a spacer (rather than a 3' end cap) is purely arbitrary. Thus, the present disclosure also contemplates: a RNAi agent comprising an 18-mer

strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a 3' end cap (e.g., a ribitol). Such a structure is shown in Fig. 19 (wherein it is designated "ribitol").

[00483] For example, a variety of RNAI agents to SSB were constructed comprising: an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a ribitol.

[00484] An RNAi agent targeting SSB was also constructing comprising an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a 3' end cap (C6). For several SSB RNAi agents, the 18-mer format (comprising a C6 as the 3' end cap) was more effective at mediating RNA interference than the 21-mer (canonical structure).

[00485] An RNAi agent targeting PLK1 was also constructing comprising an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises a 3' end cap (C6).

[00486] Any 3' end cap described herein can be used with a RNAi agent comprising an 18-mer strand.

[00487] Thus, the present disclosure also contemplates:

[00488] A HBV RNAi agent comprising an 18-mer strand, wherein the 3' end of the 18-mer strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, wherein the 3' end cap is any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.

[00489] Thus, the present disclosure also contemplates:

[00490] A HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand of any length (e.g., up to about 30 nt each), wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises a 3' end cap, wherein the 3' end cap is any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.

[00491] PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS

[00492] Compositions comprising a HBV RNAi agent intended for oral use can be prepared according to any method known to the art for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions and such compositions can contain one or more such sweetening agents, flavoring agents, coloring agents or preservative agents in order to provide pharmaceutically elegant and palatable preparations. Tablets contain the active ingredient in admixture with non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable excipients that are suitable for the manufacture of tablets. These excipients can be, for example, inert diluents; such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate,

lactose, calcium phosphate or sodium phosphate; granulating and disintegrating agents, for example, corn starch, or alginic acid; binding agents, for example starch, gelatin or acacia; and lubricating agents, for example magnesium stearate, stearic acid or talc. The tablets can be uncoated or they can be coated by known techniques. Formulations for oral use can also be presented as hard gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with an inert solid diluent, for example, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water or an oil medium, for example peanut oil, liquid paraffin or olive oil. Aqueous suspensions contain the active materials in a mixture with excipients suitable for the manufacture of aqueous suspensions.

[00493] Oral administration of the compositions of the invention include all standard techniques for administering substances directly to the stomach or gut, most importantly by patient controlled swallowing of the dosage form, but also by other mechanical and assisted means of such delivery.

[00494] Dosage levels of the order of from about 0.1 mg to about 140 mg per kilogram of body weight per day are useful in the treatment of the above- indicated conditions (about 0.5 mg to about 7 g per subject per day). The amount of active ingredient that can be combined with the carrier materials to produce a single dosage form varies depending upon the host treated and the particular mode of administration. Dosage unit forms generally contain between from about 1 mg to about 500 mg of an active ingredient. It is understood that the specific dose level for any particular subject depends upon a variety of factors including the activity of the specific compound employed, the age, body weight, general health, sex, diet, time of administration, route of administration, and rate of excretion, drug combination and the severity of the particular disease undergoing therapy.

[00495] Therapeutic effect of the therapeutic agents of the invention may be enhanced by combination with other agents. Typically such other agents will include agents known for use in treating similar diseases, such as angiogenic disorders.

[00496] The RNAi agents of the invention and formulations thereof can be administered orally, topically, parenterally, by inhalation or spray, or rectally in dosage unit formulations containing conventional non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, adjuvants and/or vehicles. The term parenteral as used herein includes percutaneous, subcutaneous, intravascular (e.g., intravenous), intramuscular, intraperitoneal, or intrathecal injection, or infusion techniques and the like.

[00497] In various embodiments, the disclosure encompasses a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising a HBV RNAi agent, wherein one or both strands comprises (a) a spacer,

phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and 3' end cap, or (b) a 3' end cap, the composition further comprising a helper lipid, a neutral lipid, and/or a stealth lipid. Additional compositions that can be used for delivery of the various RNAi agents are known in the art, e.g., are provided in U.S. Applications No. 61/774759; 61/918,175, filed 12/19/13; 61/918,927; 61/918,182; 61/918941; 62/025224; 62/046487; and International Applications No. PCT/US04/042911; PCT/EP2010/070412; PCT/IB2014/059503.

[00498] In one particular specific embodiment, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a target gene-related disease in an individual, comprising the step of administering to the individual a therapeutically effective amount of a composition comprising a RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand comprise a 3' end cap selected from the 3' end caps listed in Table 2. In one particular specific embodiment, the present disclosure relates to a method of inhibiting the expression of target gene in an individual, comprising the step of administering to the individual a therapeutically effective amount of a composition comprising a RNAi agent of the present disclosure.

[00499] In one embodiment of the method, the composition further comprises a pharmaceutically effective formulation.

[00500] Various particular specific embodiments of these embodiments are described below.

[00501] In one embodiment, the method further comprises the administration of an additional treatment. In one embodiment, the additional treatment is a therapeutically effective amount of a composition.

[00502] In one embodiment, the additional treatment is a method (or procedure).

[00503] In one embodiment, the additional treatment and the RNAi agent can be administered in any order, or can be administered simultaneously.

[00504] In one embodiment, the method further comprises the step of administering an additional treatment for the disease.

[00505] In one embodiment, the method further comprises the step of administering an additional treatment or therapy selected from the list of an additional antagonist to a target gene-related disease.

[00506] In one embodiment, the composition comprises a second RNAi agent to target gene. In various embodiments, the second RNAi agent is physically separate from the first, or the two are physically connected (e.g., covalently linked or otherwise conjugated).

[00507] Other embodiments

[00508] Various particular specific embodiments of this disclosure are described below.

[00509] In one embodiment, the disclosure pertains to a composition according to any of the embodiments described herein, for use in a method of treating a target gene-related disease in an individual, the method comprising the step of administering to the individual a therapeutically effective amount of a composition according to any of the claims.

[00510] One embodiment of the disclosure is the use of a composition according to any of these embodiments, in the manufacture of a medicament for treatment of an target gene-related disease.

[00511] In one embodiment, the disclosure pertains to the composition of any of the above embodiments, for use in the treatment of an target gene-related disease, e.g., HBV.

[00512] Additional Definitions

[00513] Unless defined otherwise, the technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as that usually understood by a specialist familiar with the field to which the present disclosure belongs.

[00514] Unless indicated otherwise, all methods, steps, techniques and manipulations that are not specifically described in detail can be performed and have been performed in a manner known per se, as will be clear to the skilled person. Reference is for example again made to the standard handbooks and the general background art mentioned herein and to the further references cited therein.

[00515] Claims to the present disclosure are non-limiting and are provided below.

[00516] Although particular embodiments and claims have been disclosed herein in detail, this has been done by way of example for purposes of illustration only, and is not intended to be limiting with respect to the scope of the appended claims, or the scope of subject matter of claims of any corresponding future application. In particular, it is contemplated by the inventors that various substitutions, alterations, and modifications may be made to the present disclosure without departing from the spirit and scope of the present disclosure as defined by the claims. The choice of nucleic acid starting material, clone of interest, or library type is believed to be a matter of routine for a person of ordinary skill in the art with knowledge of the embodiments described herein or known in the art. Other aspects, advantages, and modifications considered to be within the scope of the following claims. Redrafting of claim scope in later-filed corresponding applications may be due to limitations by the patent laws of various countries and should not be interpreted as giving up subject matter of the claims.

[00517] Various additional formulations and obvious variants of the described 3' end caps can be devised by those of ordinary skill in the art. Non-limiting example RNAi agents wherein one or both strands comprises a 3' end cap are described in the Examples below, which do not limit the scope of the present disclosure as described in the claims.

[00518] Other modifications known to one skilled in the art are contemplated as being encompassed within the invention. Exemplary modifications include, but are not limited to, the presence of gaps or mismatches between the base pairs in the sense and antisense strands, the presence of nicks or breaks in the internucleoside linkages in the sense strand, and the like.

[00519] PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS

[00520] Compositions intended for oral use can be prepared according to any method known to the art for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions and such compositions can contain one or more such sweetening agents, flavoring agents, coloring agents or preservative agents in order to provide pharmaceutically elegant and palatable preparations. Tablets contain the active ingredient in admixture with non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable excipients that are suitable for the manufacture of tablets. These excipients can be, for example, inert diluents; such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate, lactose, calcium phosphate or sodium phosphate; granulating and disintegrating agents, for example, corn starch, or alginic acid; binding agents, for example starch, gelatin or acacia; and lubricating agents, for example magnesium stearate, stearic acid or talc. The tablets can be uncoated or they can be coated by known techniques. Formulations for oral use can also be presented as hard gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with an inert solid diluent, for example, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water or an oil medium, for example peanut oil, liquid paraffin or olive oil. Aqueous suspensions contain the active materials in a mixture with excipients suitable for the manufacture of aqueous suspensions.

[00521] Oral administration of the compositions of the invention include all standard techniques for administering substances directly to the stomach or gut, most importantly by patient controlled swallowing of the dosage form, but also by other mechanical and assisted means of such delivery.

[00522] Dosage levels of the order of from about 0.1 mg to about 140 mg per kilogram of body weight per day are useful in the treatment of the above- indicated conditions (about 0.5 mg to about 7 g per subject per day). The amount of active ingredient that can be combined with the carrier materials to produce a single dosage form varies depending upon the host treated and

the particular mode of administration. Dosage unit forms generally contain between from about 1 mg to about 500 mg of an active ingredient. It is understood that the specific dose level for any particular subject depends upon a variety of factors including the activity of the specific compound employed, the age, body weight, general health, sex, diet, time of administration, route of administration, and rate of excretion, drug combination and the severity of the particular disease undergoing therapy.

[00523] Therapeutic effect of the therapeutic agents of the invention may be enhanced by combination with other agents. Typically such other agents will include agents known for use in treating similar diseases, such as angiogenic disorders.

[00524] The RNAi agents of the invention and formulations thereof can be administered orally, topically, parenterally, by inhalation or spray, or rectally in dosage unit formulations containing conventional non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, adjuvants and/or vehicles. The term parenteral as used herein includes percutaneous, subcutaneous, intravascular (e.g., intravenous), intramuscular, intraperitoneal, or intrathecal injection, or infusion techniques and the like. Where two or more different RNAi agents are administered, each may be administered separately or co-administered. Where each is adminitered separately, the method and/or site of adminstration may be the same or different, e.g., both RNAi agents may be administered intraveneously or subcutaneously, or a first RNAi agent may be administered intraveneously with a second Rai agent administered subcutaneously, etc.

[00525] In various embodiments, the disclosure encompasses a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising a RNAi agent, wherein one or both strands comprises a 3' end cap, the composition further comprising a helper lipid, a neutral lipid, and/or a stealth lipid.

[00526] In one particular specific embodiment, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a target gene-related disease in an individual, comprising the step of administering to the individual a therapeutically effective amount of a composition comprising a RNAi agent comprising a first strand and a second strand, wherein the first and/or second strand comprise a 3' end cap selected from the 3' end caps listed in Table 2. In one particular specific embodiment, the present disclosure relates to a method of inhibiting the expression of target gene in an individual, comprising the step of administering to the individual a therapeutically effective amount of a composition comprising a RNAi agent of the present disclosure.

[00527] In one embodiment of the method, the composition further comprises a pharmaceutically effective formulation.

[00528] Various particular specific embodiments of these embodiments are described below.

[00529] In one embodiment, the method further comprises the administration of an additional treatment. In one embodiment, the additional treatment is a therapeutically effective amount of a composition.

[00530] In one embodiment, the additional treatment is a method (or procedure).

[00531] In one embodiment, the additional treatment and the RNAi agent can be administered in any order, or can be administered simultaneously.

[00532] In one embodiment, the method further comprises the step of administering an additional treatment for the disease.

[00533] In one embodiment, the method further comprises the step of administering an additional treatment or therapy selected from the list of an additional antagonist to a target gene-related disease.

[00534] In one embodiment, the composition comprises a second RNAi agent to target gene. In various embodiments, the second RNAi agent is physically separate from the first, or the two are physically connected (e.g., covalently linked or otherwise conjugated).

[00535] Other embodiments

[00536] Various particular specific embodiments of this disclosure are described below.

[00537] In one embodiment, the disclosure pertains to a composition according to any of the embodiments described herein, for use in a method of treating a target gene-related disease in an individual, the method comprising the step of administering to the individual a therapeutically effective amount of a composition according to any of the claims.

[00538] One embodiment of the disclosure is the use of a composition according to any of these embodiments, in the manufacture of a medicament for treatment of an target gene-related disease.

[00539] In one embodiment, the disclosure pertains to the composition of any of the above embodiments, for use in the treatment of an target gene-related disease.

[00540] Additional Definitions

[00541] Unless defined otherwise, the technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as that usually understood by a specialist familiar with the field to which the present disclosure belongs.

[00542] Unless indicated otherwise, all methods, steps, techniques and manipulations that are not specifically described in detail can be performed and have been performed in a manner

known per se, as will be clear to the skilled person. Reference is for example again made to the standard handbooks and the general background art mentioned herein and to the further references cited therein.

[00543] Claims to the present disclosure are non-limiting and are provided below.

[00544] Although particular embodiments and claims have been disclosed herein in detail, this has been done by way of example for purposes of illustration only, and is not intended to be limiting with respect to the scope of the appended claims, or the scope of subject matter of claims of any corresponding future application. In particular, it is contemplated by the inventors that various substitutions, alterations, and modifications may be made to the present disclosure without departing from the spirit and scope of the present disclosure as defined by the claims. The choice of nucleic acid starting material, clone of interest, or library type is believed to be a matter of routine for a person of ordinary skill in the art with knowledge of the embodiments described herein or known in the art. Other aspects, advantages, and modifications considered to be within the scope of the following claims. Redrafting of claim scope in later-filed corresponding applications may be due to limitations by the patent laws of various countries and should not be interpreted as giving up subject matter of the claims.

[00545] Various additional formulations and obvious variants of the described 3' end caps can be devised by those of ordinary skill in the art. Non-limiting example RNAi agents wherein one or both strands comprises a 3' end cap are described in the Examples below, which do not limit the scope of the present disclosure as described in the claims.

EXAMPLES

EXAMPLE 1. Serum stability of siRNAs with 3' end caps

The efficacy of a variety of different 3' end caps (3'-terminal overhangs) was tested.

10 siRNAs were prepared with an identical sequence (mF7-III target gene, 19-mer blunt-ended, A12S17 modification scheme)
10 different non-nucleotidic 3'-terminal caps were used.
These were tested in mouse and human sera at 4 time points
Parent mF7-III in A6S11 format and wt (wild-type) luc (luciferase) siRNAs were used as controls

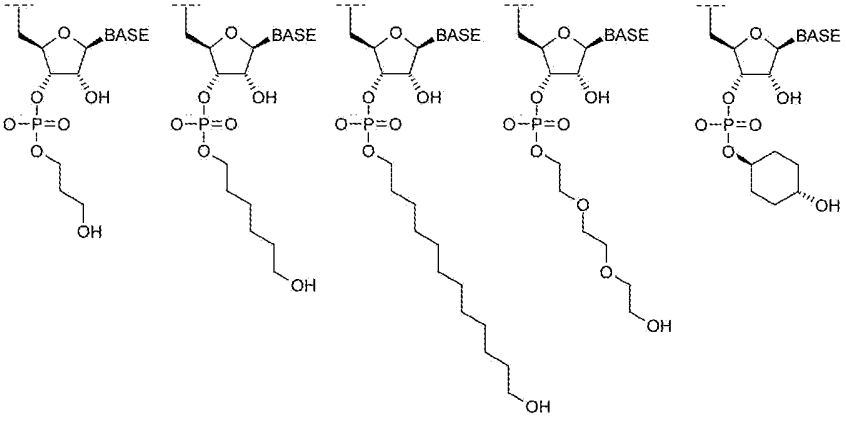
The molecules used are diagrammed in Fig. 1.

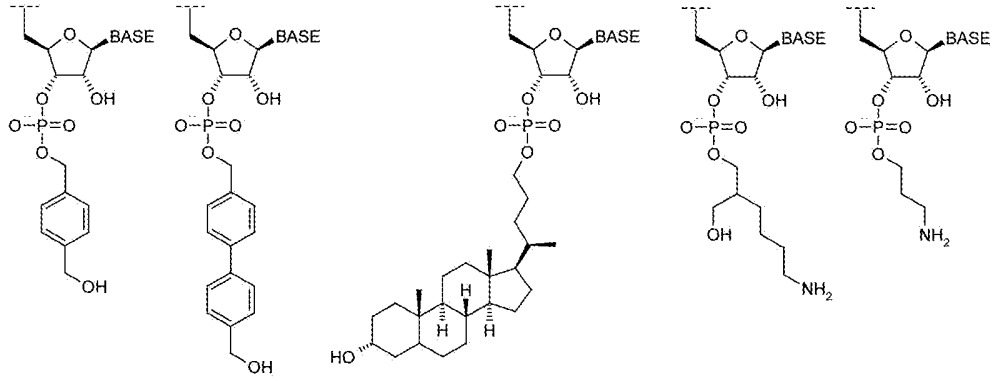
Table 5 below provides the sequences for these molecules.

TABLE 5.

siRNA ID	Project	Serum	Format sense	siRNA passenger sequence	Format anti	siRNA guide sequence
144033	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 C3	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 C3
149853	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 C6	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 C6
149855	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 C12	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 C12
149857	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 glycol	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 glycol
149859	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 cyclohex	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 cyclohex
149861	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 phenyl	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 phenyl
149863	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 biphenyl	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 biphenyl
149865	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 lithochol	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 lithochol
149867	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 amino C7	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 amino C7
149869	mFVII 3'-caps	Mouse	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 amino C3	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 amino C3
8548	Luc stability ctrl.	Mouse	S0	TCGAAGTACTCAGCGTAAGTT	A0	CTTACGCTGAGTACTTCGATT
144049	mFVII w/o cap	Mouse	S1	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uAA AdTsdT	A1	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GAc AdTsdT
144033	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 C3	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 C3
149853	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 C6	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 C6
149855	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 C12	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 C12
149857	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 glycol	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 glycol
149859	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 cyclohex	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 cyclohex
149861	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 phenyl	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 phenyl
149863	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 biphenyl	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 biphenyl
149865	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 lithochol	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 lithochol
149867	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 amino C7	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 amino C7
149869	mFVII 3'-caps	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uA5 5 amino C3	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GA6 5 amino C3
144049	mFVII w/o cap anti	Human	NA	NA	A12	UUu AAU UGA AAC cAA GAc AdTsdT
144053	mFVII w/o cap sense	Human	S17	uGu cuu GGu uuc AAu uAA AdTsdT	NA	NA

The siRNA passenger strand sequences are provided as SEQ ID NOs: 60-72, in order. The siRNA guide strand sequences are provided in SEQ ID NOs: 73-95, in order. The 3' end caps used in this example are diagrammed below, in the context of the RNAi agent strand:





Materials and Methods:
RNA samples were incubated in 100% mouse serum and human serum at 37°C, withdrawn at 0, 5', 6h and 24 h time points and snap-frozen. Oligos were separated by precast hydrogels (Elchrom Scientific) and visualized with SYBR gold (Biorad, Chemidoc XRS).

[00546] FIG. 2 shows the efficacy of various 3' end caps described in Example 1 in allowing the RNAi agent to mediate RNA interference. All of the 3' end caps – C3, C6, C12, Triethylene glycol, Cyclohexyl, Phenyl, Biphenyl, Adamantane and Lithocholic acid – allow the RNAi agent to perform RNA interference.

[00547] FIG. 3 shows the efficacy of various 3' end caps described in Example 1 in reducing and/or preventing nuclease degradation in serum.

[00548] In mouse serum all 3'-capped A12S17 siRNAs display high resistance up to 24h.

[00549] In human serum C3, C12 and lithochol appear to be less stable as compared to the other derivatives. However, in both experiments, C3, biphenyl and litochol display significantly

weaker bands as compared to the other derivatives. However, there is a need to clarify whether this is due to lower synthesis/dsRNA quality (as indicated by gel-based QC) or due to a technical gel-based artifact (lithocholic acid may stick to human serum and thus gets protected from SYBR GOLD intercalation).

[00550] Single-strand antisense A12 is degraded rapidly in human serum whereas the parent sense S17 strand (with more chemical modifications) resists a bit longer but not as long as the dsRNA. Enzymatic stability correlates with *thermal* dsRNA stability.

[00551] Thus, this Example shows that siRNAs with these various 3' end caps were able to mediate RNA interference against FVII (Factor VII). The 3' end cap modifications designated as C3, C6, C12, glycol, cyclohex, phenyl, biphenyl, lithochol, C7 amino and C3 amino showed increased stability in mouse serum at 1', 30', 6h and 24 hrs compared to luciferase and dTsdT controls. Those 3'-end modifications designated C3, C6, glycol, cyclohex, phenyl and biphenyl , C7 amino and C3 amino also showed increased stability in human serum compared to controls.

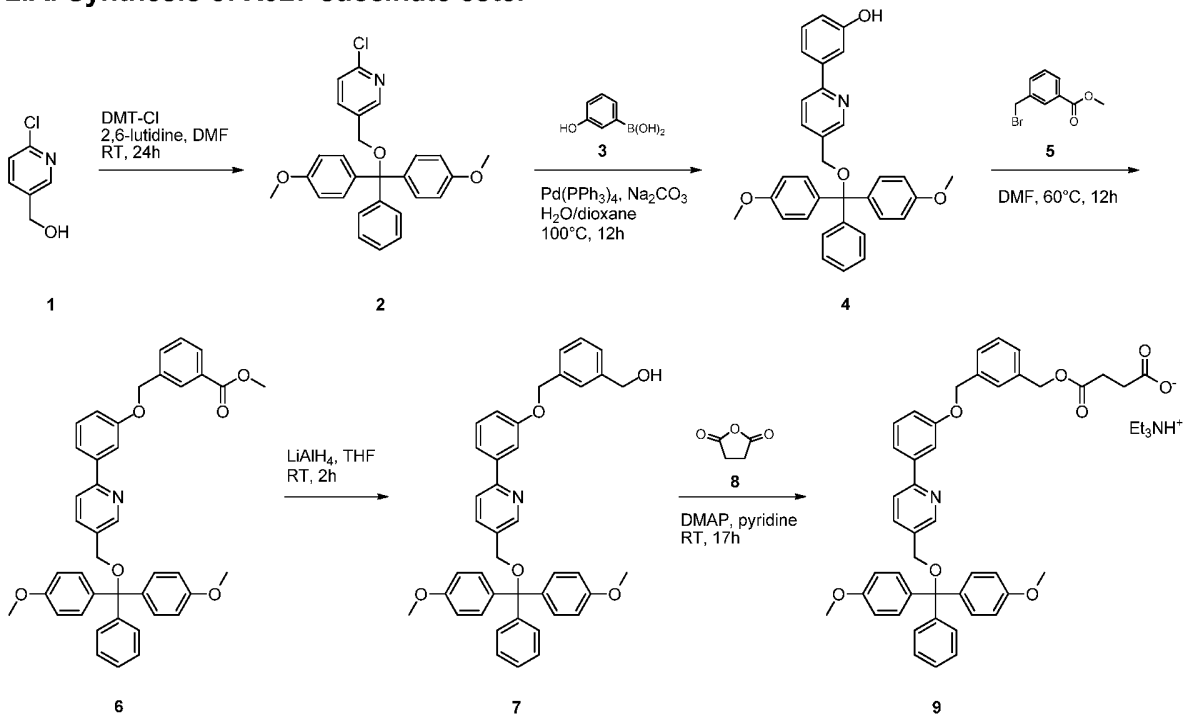
EXAMPLE 2. The synthesis of various 3' end cap succinate esters and alcohols are presented below.

Example 2.A	X027 succinate ester
Example 2.B	X038 succinate ester
Example 2.C	X052 succinate ester
Example 2.D	X058 succinate ester
Example 2.E	X067 succinate ester
Example 2.F	X069 succinate ester
Example 2. G	General procedure for the high density loading of controlled pore glass supports with PAZ ligand succinates
Example 2.H	Synthesis of X050, X059, X061, X062, X065, X068 alcohols and succinate esters
Example 2.I	X060 and X064 alcohols and succinate esters
Example 2.J.	X063 succinate ester
Example 2.K	X066 succinate ester
Example 2.L	X051 succinate ester
Example 2.M	Synthesis of X097 succinate ester
Example 2.N	Synthesis of X098 succinate ester
Example 2.O	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X109
Example 2.P	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X110
Example 2.Q	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X111
Example 2.R	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X112
Example 2.S	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X113
Example 2.T	General procedure for the high density loading of controlled pore glass supports with PAZ ligand succinates

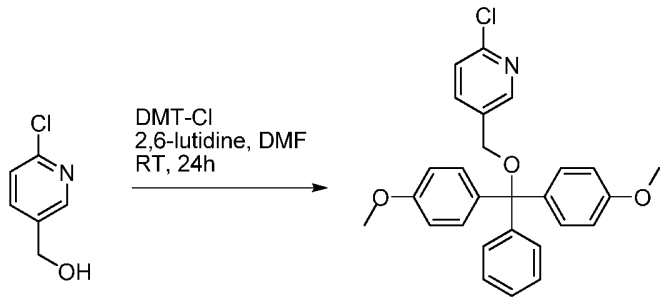
EXAMPLE 2. The synthesis of various 3' end cap succinate esters and alcohols are presented below.

Example 2.A	X027 succinate ester
Example 2.B	X038 succinate ester
Example 2.C	X052 succinate ester
Example 2.D	X058 succinate ester
Example 2.E	X067 succinate ester
Example 2.F	X069 succinate ester
Example 2. G	General procedure for the high density loading of controlled pore glass supports with PAZ ligand succinates
Example 2.H	Synthesis of X050, X059, X061, X062, X065, X068 alcohols and succinate esters
Example 2.I	X060 and X064 alcohols and succinate esters
Example 2.J.	X063 succinate ester
Example 2.K	X066 succinate ester
Example 2.L	X051 succinate ester
Example 2.M	Synthesis of X097 succinate ester
Example 2.N	Synthesis of X098 succinate ester
Example 2.O	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X109
Example 2.P	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X110
Example 2.Q	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X111
Example 2.R	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X112
Example 2.S	Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X113
Example 2.T	General procedure for the high density loading of controlled pore glass supports with PAZ ligand succinates

2.A. Synthesis of X027 succinate ester

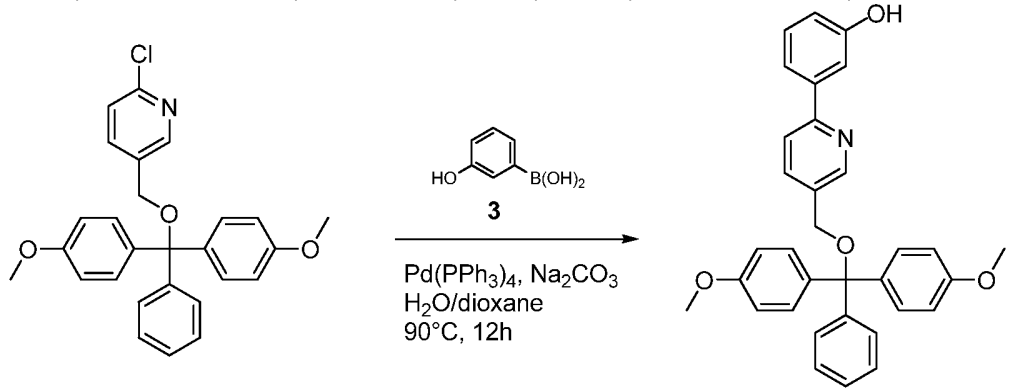


Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of succinate **9**.



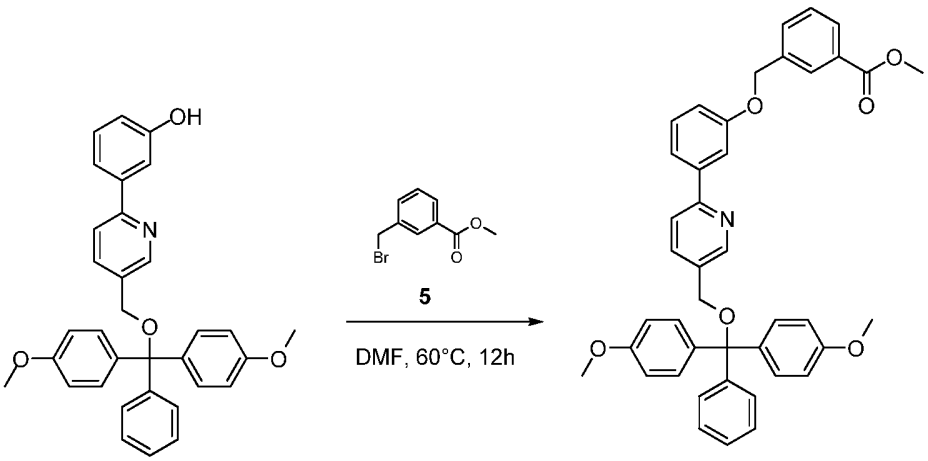
1 2

To a solution of compound **1** (10.0 g, 70.0mmol) in DMF (200 mL) were added DMT-Cl **2** (28.4 g, 84.0 mmol) and 2,6-lutidine (15.0 g, 140 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was poured into ice water and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 500 mL). The organic extracts was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated in vacuum to give the crude product, which was purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate / NEt_3) to give the desired product as white solid (16 g, 36%). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d_6, 400 MHz): 3.73 (s, 6H), 4.17 (s, 2H), 6.91 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 4H), 7.35-7.22 (m, 7H), 7.42 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 2H), 7.48 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.83-7.80 (m, 1H), 8.33 (d, J = 1.6 Hz, 1H).



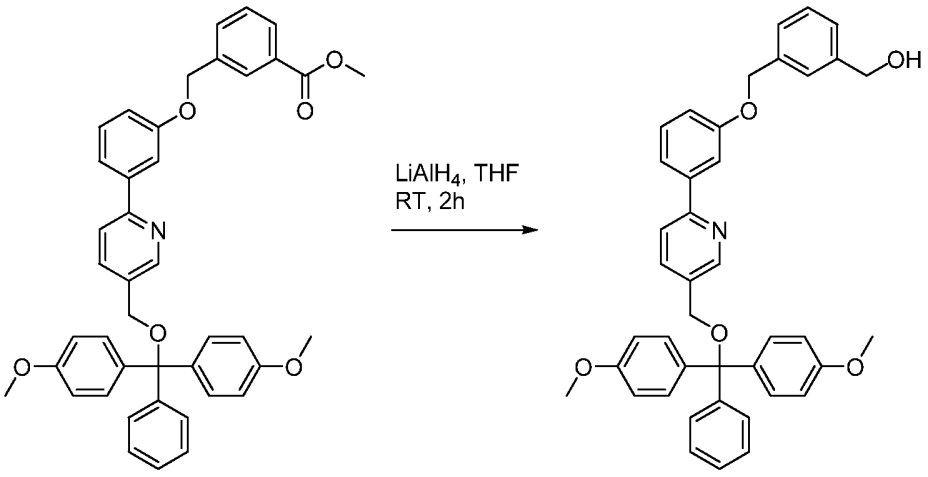
2 4

To a solution of compound **2** (8.0 g, 18 mmol) in dioxane (160 mL) / H_2O (40 mL) were added 3-hydroxyphenylboronic acid **4** (3.5 g, 25 mmol), $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ (1.1 g, 1.0 mmol), and Na_2CO_3 (4.0 g, 38 mmol). The reaction mixture was bubbled with nitrogen gas and stirred at 90°C overnight. Then reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 800 mL). The organic extracts was dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated in vacuum, and purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate / NEt_3) to give **4** as an impure light yellow oil (6 g).



4 6

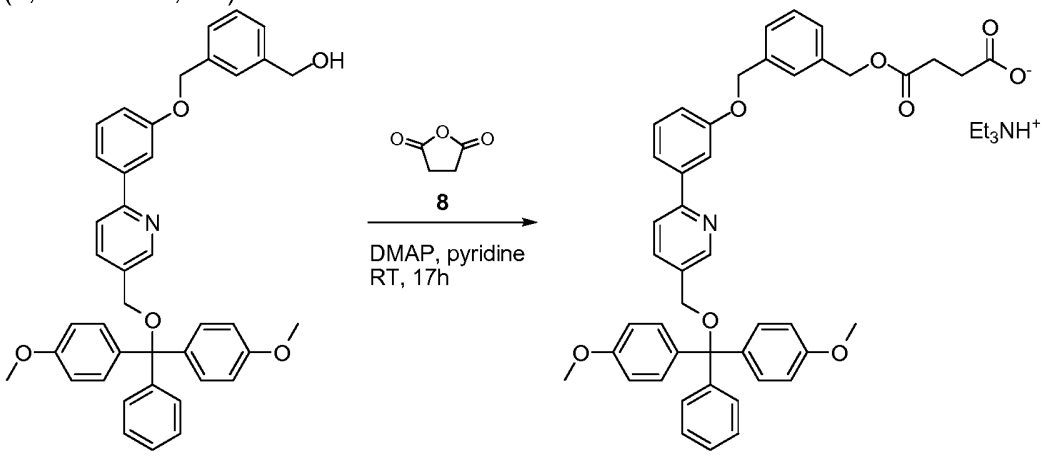
To a solution of compound **4** (10 g crude, 20 mmol) in acetone (600 mL) were added compound **5** (4.0 g, 17.6 mmol), K_2CO_3 (4.0 g, 28 mmol), and KI (316 mg, 1.9 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux overnight. After the reaction mixture was cooled, the solvent was concentrated in vacuum. The reside was diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 800 mL). The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated in vacuum to give the crude product, which was purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate / NEt_3) to give **6** as light yellow oil (9 g, 69%). ^{1}H NMR (DMSO-d_6, 400 MHz): 3.74 (s, 6H), 3.84 (s, 3H), 4.19 (s, 2H), 6.93 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 4H), 7.11-7.08 (m, 1H), 7.27-7.23 (t, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.46-7.31 (m, 9H), 7.59-7.55 (t, *J* = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.68 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.79-7.75 (m, 2H), 7.84-7.80 (m, 1H), 7.97-7.92 (m, 2H), 8.10 (s, 1H), 8.61 (d, *J* = 1.6 Hz, 1H).



6 7

Lithium aluminum hydride (30.7 mL of 1.0 M suspension in THF, 30.7 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **6** (8.0 g, 12 mmol) in THF (150 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was quenched with water (200 mL), and then the reaction mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 200 mL), The combined organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuum to give the desired product **7** as white solid (6.1 g, 80%). ^{1}H NMR (DMSO-d_6, 400 MHz): 3.74 (s, 6H), 4.19 (s, 2H), 5.54 (d, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 2H), 5.18 (s, 2H), 5.27-5.24 (t, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 1H), 6.93 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 4H), 7.10-7.07 (m, 1H), 7.47-7.23

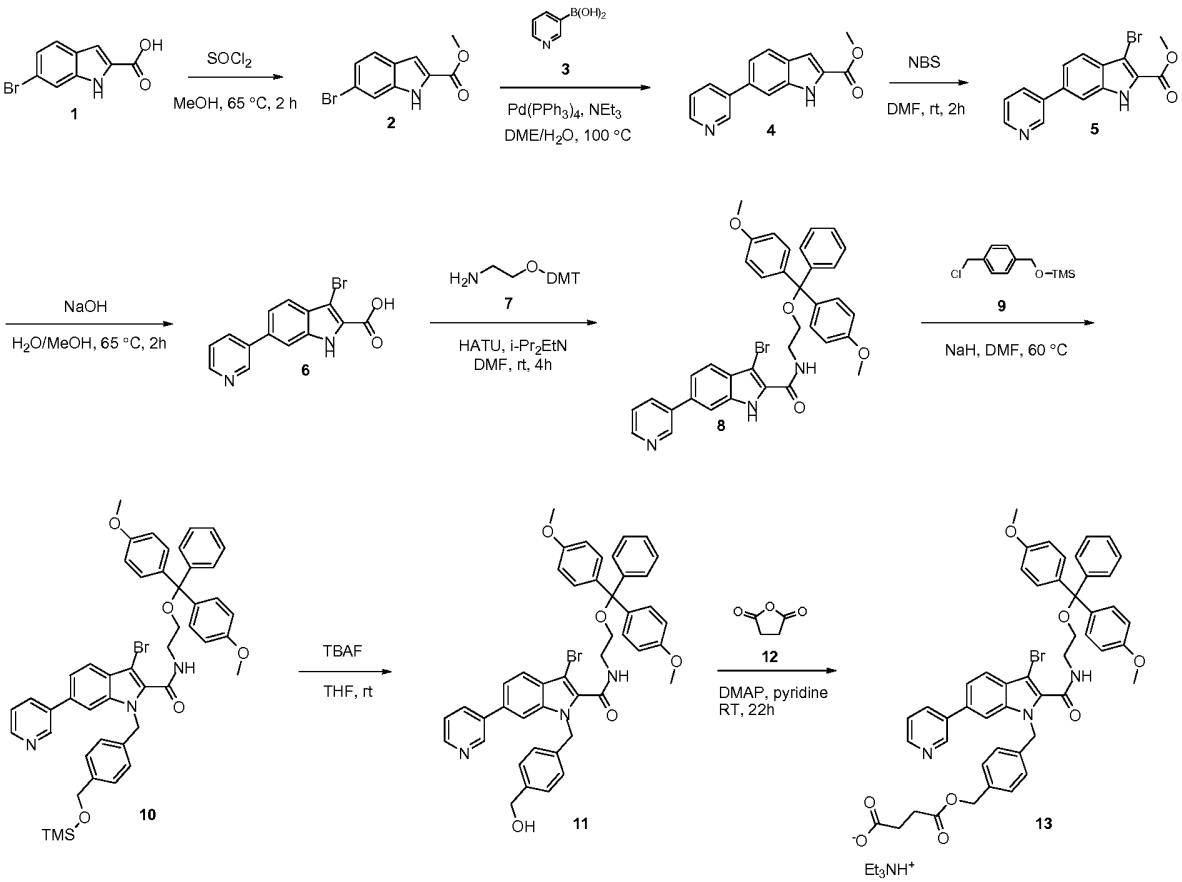
(m, 14H), 7.67 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.75 (s, 1H), 7.83-7.81 (m, 1H), 7.95 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 8.61 (d, *J* = 1.2 Hz, 1H).



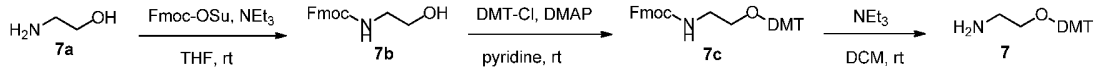
7 **9**

To a solution of 2.00 g (3.21 mmol) **7** and 390 mg (3.21 mmol) N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) in 10 mL dry pyridine under argon was added 640 mg (6.41 mmol) succinic anhydride (**8**). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 17 h and then 0.5 mL water was added. Stirring was continued for 30 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with 100 mL dichloromethane and washed with 50 mL ice-cold 10% aqueous citric acid and water (2 x 50 mL). The aqueous layers were reextracted with 50 mL dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The remaining oil was coevaporated twice with toluene and the crude product purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane / methanol / triethylamine 97:2:1) to give 1.35 g (1.64 mmol, 51%) **9** as an off-white foam. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.12 (t, J=7.3 Hz, 9 H), 2.51 – 2.55 (m, 2 H), 2.59 – 2.62 (m, 2 H), 2.89 (q, J=7.3 Hz, 6 H), 3.72 (s, 6 H), 4.17 (s, 2 H), 5.08 (s, 4 H), 5.68 (s br., 1 H), 6.76 - 6.80 (m, 4 H), 6.93 (dd, *J* = 8.1, 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.14 - 7.18 (m, 1 H), 7.21 - 7.34 (m, 10 H), 7.41 - 7.46 (m, 4 H), 7.62 (dd, *J* = 5.1, 2.5 Hz, 2 H), 7.71 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 1.9 Hz, 1 H), 8.59 (d, *J* = 1.5 Hz, 1H).

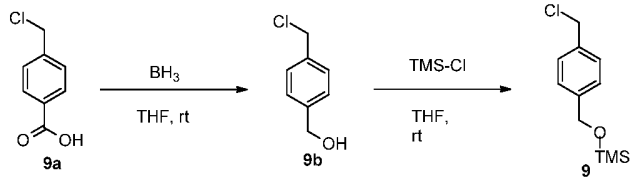
2. B Synthesis of X038 succinate ester



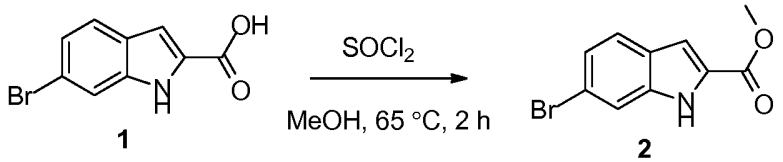
Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of succinate **13**.



Scheme 2: Overview of the synthesis of **7**.

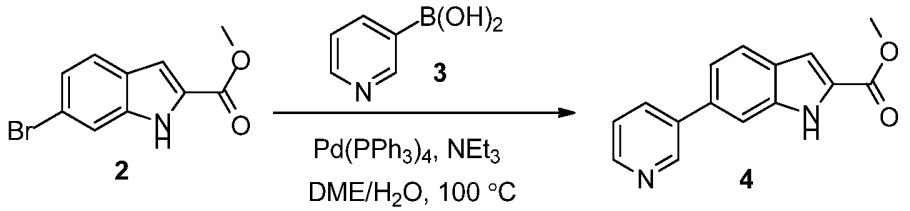


Scheme 3: Overview of the synthesis of **9**.

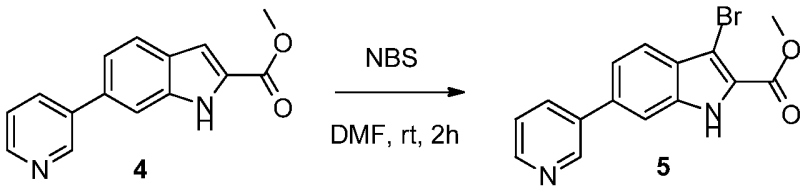


Into a 2000-mL 3-necked round-bottom flask was placed a solution of 6-bromo-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid **1** (100 g, 417 mmol) in methanol (1000 mL). This was followed by the addition of thionyl chloride (100 g, 840 mmol) dropwise with stirring. The resulting solution was heated to

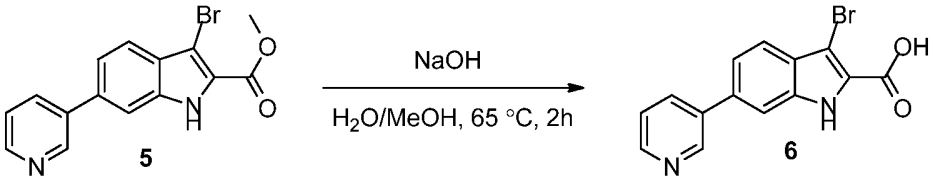
reflux for 2 h. The reaction mixture was cooled to rt and a precipitate was formed. The solids were collected by filtration, washing with methanol, and dried in an oven under reduced pressure, giving **2** (95 g, 90%) as a white solid.



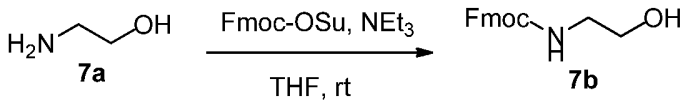
Into a 2000-mL 3-necked round-bottom flask, purged and maintained with an inert atmosphere of nitrogen, was placed a solution of **2** (90 g, 354 mmol) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (500 mL), water (500 mL), (pyridin-3-yl)boronic acid **3** (43.6 g, 355 mmol), NEt_3 (107 g, 1.06 mol), and $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ (9 g, 7.79 mmol). The resulting solution was heated to reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and was quenched by the addition of 800 mL of water, forming a precipitate. The solids were collected by filtration, washing with water, and dried in an oven under reduced pressure, giving **4** (78 g, 87%) as a brown solid.



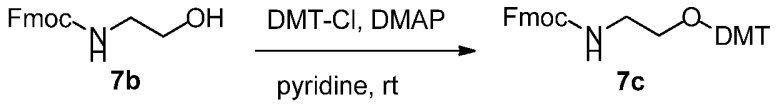
Into a 2000-mL round-bottom flask was placed a solution of **4** (75 g, 297 mmol) in DMF (500 mL). This was followed by the addition of NBS (53.5 g, 301 mmol), portionwise. The resulting solution was stirred for 2 h at rt. The reaction was then quenched by the addition of 1000 mL of water, forming a precipitate. The solids were collected by filtration, washing with wate,r and dried in an oven under reduced pressure, giving **5** (70 g, 71%) as a brown solid. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 3.94 (s, 3 H), 7.51-7.58 (m, 2 H), 7.67-7.76 (m, 2 H), 8.11 (d, *J*=7.6 Hz, 1 H), 8.60 (d, *J*=4.4 Hz, 1 H), 8.91 (s, 1 H), 12.48 (s, 1 H).



Into a 2000-mL round-bottom flask was placed a solution of **5** (68 g, 205) in methanol (500 mL), water (100 mL), and sodium hydroxide (25 g, 625 mmol). The resulting solution was heated to reflux for 2 hr. The resulting solution was cooled to room temperature and diluted with 500 mL of water. The pH value of the solution was adjusted to 5-6 with 2N HCl (aq), forming a precipitate. The solids were collected by filtration, washing with water, and dried in an oven under reduced pressure, giving **6** (50 g, 77%) as a light yellow solid. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 7.50-7.53 (m, 2H), 7.65-7.71 (m, 2H), 8.09 (d, *J*=7.6Hz, 1H), 8.59 (d, *J*= 4Hz, 1H), 8.91 (s, 1H), 12.30 (s, 1H), 13.55 (s, 1H).

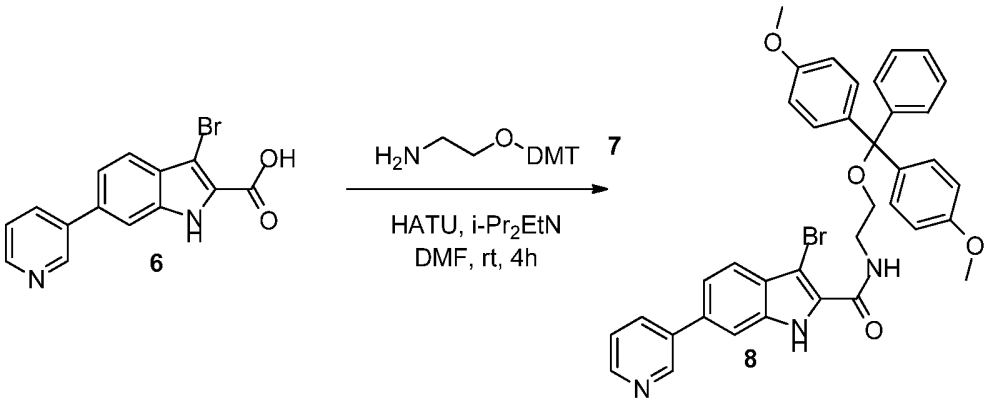


Into a 2000-mL round-bottom flask was placed a solution of 2-aminoethan-1-ol **7a** (30 g, 491 mmol) in THF (600 mL), Fmoc-OSu (166 g, 491 mmol), and NEt_3 (199 g, 1.97 mol). The resulting solution was stirred overnight at rt. The mixture was concentrated under vacuum and purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether), giving **7b** (130 g, 93%) as a white solid.



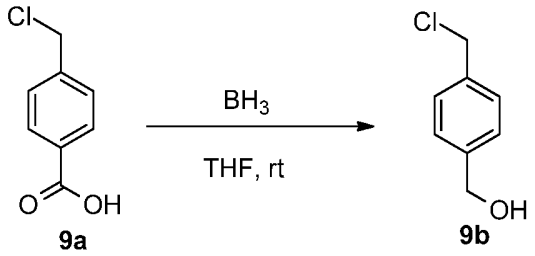
Into a 2000-mL round-bottom flask was placed a solution of **7b** (130 g, 459 mmol) in pyridine (500 mL), 1-[chloro(4-methoxyphenyl)benzyl]-4-methoxybenzene (DMT-Cl) (233 g, 688 mmol), and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (2.8 g, 22.9 mmol). The resulting solution was stirred overnight at rt. The reaction was then quenched by the addition of water, and the resulting solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (3x 500 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated in vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether), giving **7c** (210 g, 78%) as a brown solid.

Into a 2000-mL round-bottom flask was placed a solution of **7c** (210 g, 359 mmol) in dichloromethane (500 mL) and NEt_3 (500 mL). The resulting solution was stirred overnight at rt. The resulting mixture was concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether), giving **7** (95 g, 73%) a brown solid. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 2.42 (br. s, 2 H), 3.70 - 3.82 (m, 2 H), 3.80 (s, 6 H), 6.79 - 6.87 (m, 4 H), 7.19 - 7.25 (m, 2 H), 7.29 (d, *J* = 9.2 Hz, 2 H), 7.33 - 7.40 (m, 3 H), 7.49 (d, *J* = 7.6 Hz, 2 H).

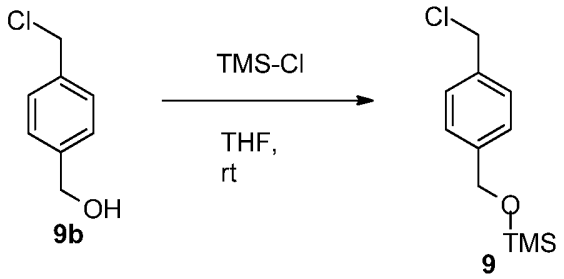


Into a 2000-mL round-bottom flask was placed a solution of **6** (40 g, 126 mmol) in DMF (800 mL), **7** (69 g, 190 mmol), HATU (96 g, 252 mmol), and *i*-Pr_2EtN (65 g, 503 mmol). The resulting solution was stirred for 4 h at rt and then quenched by the addition of 1000 mL of water. The resulting solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (3x 800 mL). The combined organic layers

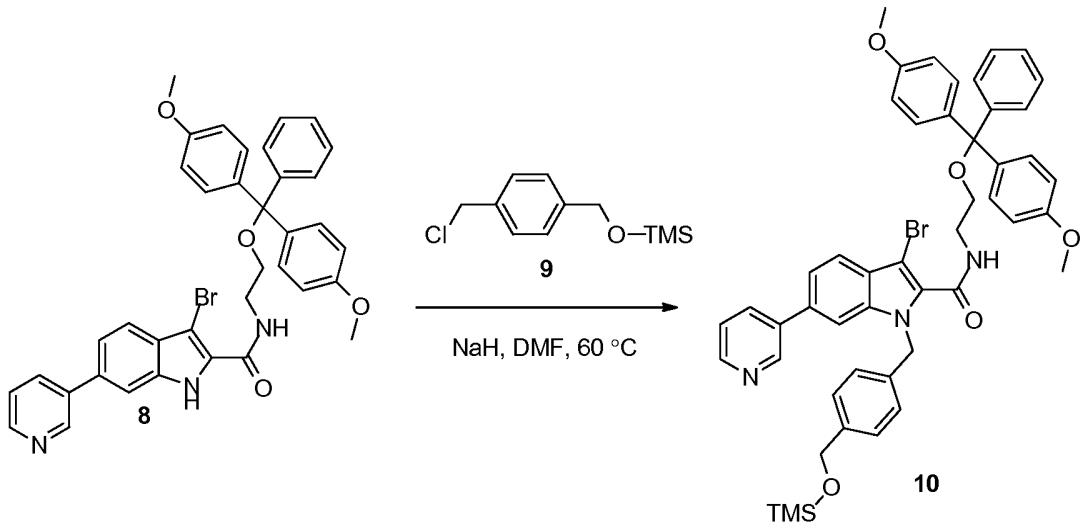
were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether), giving **8** (30 g, 36%) of as a light yellow solid.



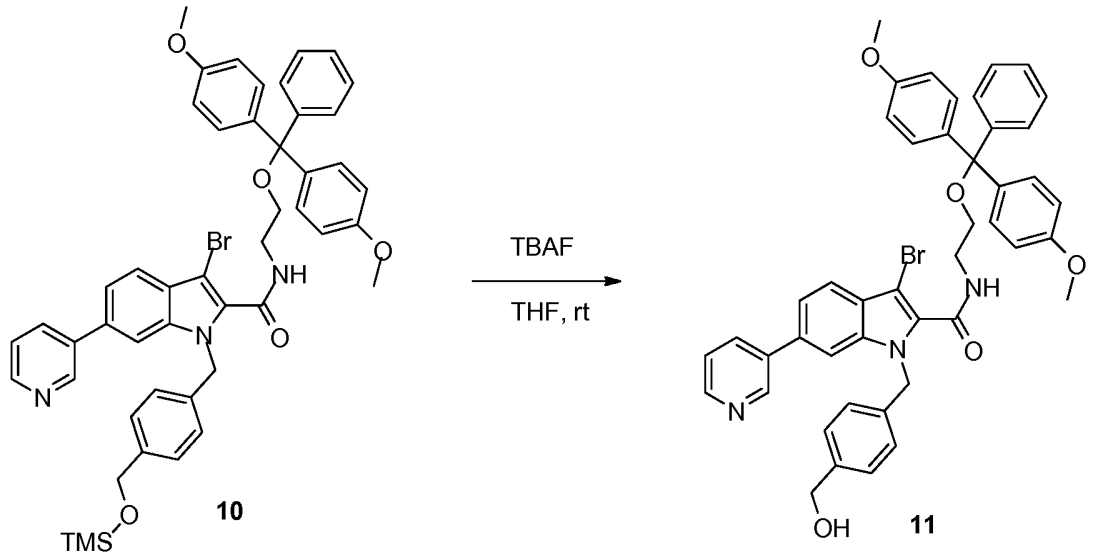
Into a 2000-mL round-bottom flask was placed a solution of 4-(chloromethyl)benzoic acid **9a** (50 g, 293 mmol) in THF (200 mL). This was followed by the addition of 1 M BH_3/THF (586 mL, 586 mmol) dropwise with stirring at 0 ^oC over 1 hr. The resulting solution was stirred for 4 h at rt. The reaction was then quenched by the addition of 600 mL of 1 N HCl. The solution was extracted with 500 ml of ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 300 ml of sodium carbonate (aq.), and 300 ml of brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated under vacuum giving **9b** (35 g, 76%) as a white solid. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 4.50 (d, *J*=4.8 Hz, 2 H), 4.75 (s, 2 H), 5.21 (t, *J*=4.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.32 (d, *J*=7.6 Hz, 2 H), 7.39 (d, *J*=7.6 Hz, 2 H).



Into a 1000-mL 3-necked round-bottom flask was placed a solution **9b** (35 g, 223 mmol) in THF (300 mL) and TEA (68 g, 672 mmol). This was followed by the addition of TMS-Cl (36.4 g, 335 mmol) dropwise with stirring. The resulting solution was stirred overnight at rt. The reaction was then quenched by the addition of 500 mL of water and extracted with 500 ml of ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 500 ml of $NaHCO_3$ (aq.), 500 ml of brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The residue was concentrated under vacuum giving **9** (35 g, 68%) as colorless oil.

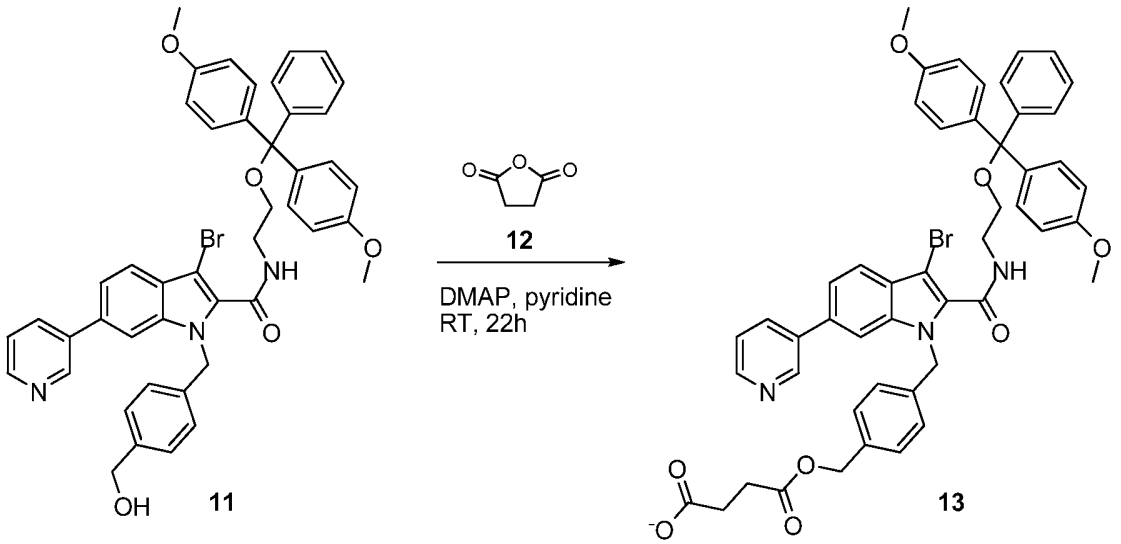


Into a 1000-mL 3-necked round-bottom flask was placed a solution of **8** (30 g, 45.3 mmol) in DMF (300 mL), and sodium hydride (1.1 g, 45.8 mmol). The mixture was stirred at rt for 0.5 h. A solution of **9** (15.5 g, 67.8 mmol) in THF (100 ml) was then added, and the resulting solution was stirred overnight at 60 °C. The reaction mixture was cooled to rt and quenched by the addition of 500 mL of water. The resulting solution was extracted with dichloromethane (3x 500 mL), and the combined organic layers were concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether), giving **10** (15 g, 39%) as a white solid.



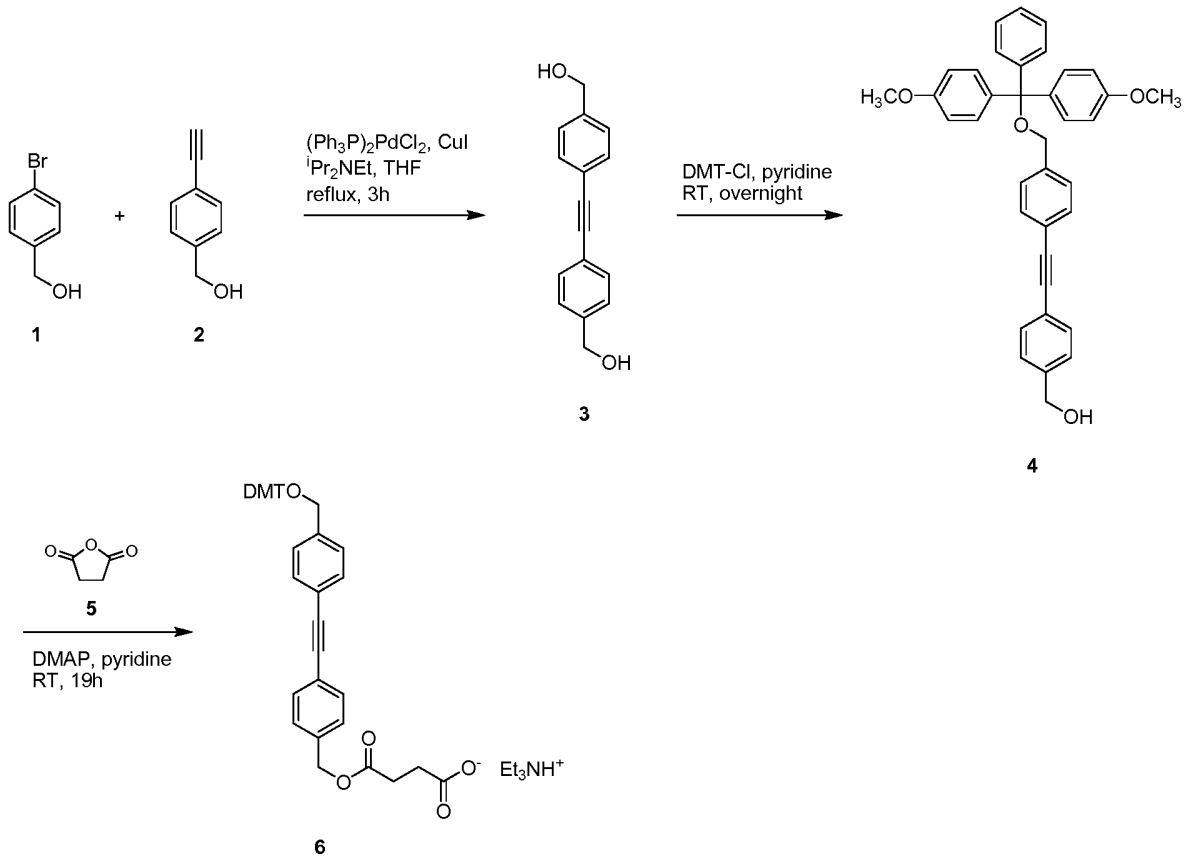
Into a 500-mL round-bottom flask was placed a solution of **10** (15 g, 17.6 mmol) in THF (150 mL) and TBAF (7 g, 26.8 mmol). The resulting solution was stirred for 30 min at rt. The resulting solution was diluted with 300 mL of water and extracted with 500 mL of ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water (2x 300 mL) and 300 mL of brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The resulting mixture was concentrated under vacuum and the crude product was re-crystallized from hexane, giving **11** (5.5 g, 40%) as a yellow solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 3.30 (m, 2 H), 3.66 - 3.65 (m, 2 H), 3.78 (s, 6 H), 4.51 (s, 2 H), 5.68 (s, 2 H), 6.84 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz,

4 H), 7.09 (d, *J* = 8 Hz, 2 H), 7.19 - 7.35 (m, 9 H), 7.47 - 7.54 (m, 4 H), 7.70 (d, *J* = 9.2 Hz, 2 H), 8.10 (d, *J* = 8 Hz, 1 H), 8.51 (d, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 1 H), 8.79 (s, 1 H).

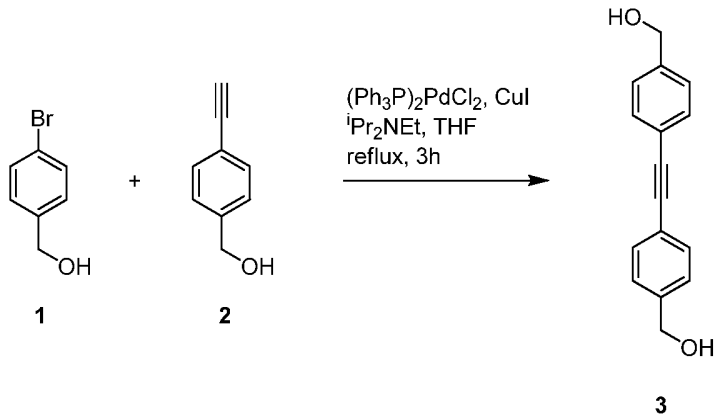


To a solution of 1.57 g (2.00 mmol) **11** and 244 mg (2.00 mmol) N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) in 8 mL dry pyridine under argon was added 400 mg (4.00 mmol) succinic anhydride (**12**). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 22 h and then 0.5 mL water was added. Stirring was continued for 30 min. The reaction mixture was taken up in 100 mL dichloromethane and washed with 50 mL ice-cold 10% aqueous citric acid and water (2 x 50 mL). The aqueous layers were reextracted with 50 mL dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The remaining oil was coevaporated twice with toluene and the crude product purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane / methanol / triethylamine 94:5:1) to give 2.05 g (2.00 mmol, quant.) **13** as an off-white foam. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.05 (t, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 9 H), 2.45 (t, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 2 H), 2.54 (t, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 2 H), 2.66 (q, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 6 H), 3.29 (t, *J* = 4.9 Hz, 2 H), 3.60 (q, *J* = 5.1 Hz, 2 H), 3.70 (s, 6 H), 4.97 (s, 2 H), 5.75 (s, 2 H), 6.72 - 6.76 (m, 4 H), 7.01 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 2 H), 7.12 - 7.23 (m, 6 H), 7.26 - 7.31 (m, 5 H), 7.35 – 7.41 (m, 4 H), 7.63 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.79 (dt, *J* = 8.1, 1.9 Hz, 1 H), 8.49 (dd, *J* = 4.8, 1.5 Hz, 1 H), 8.73 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H).

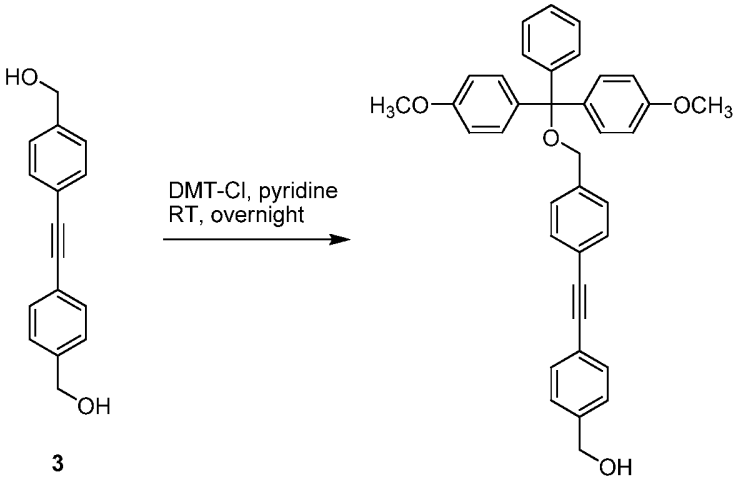
2.C. Synthesis of X052 succinate ester



Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of succinate **6**.

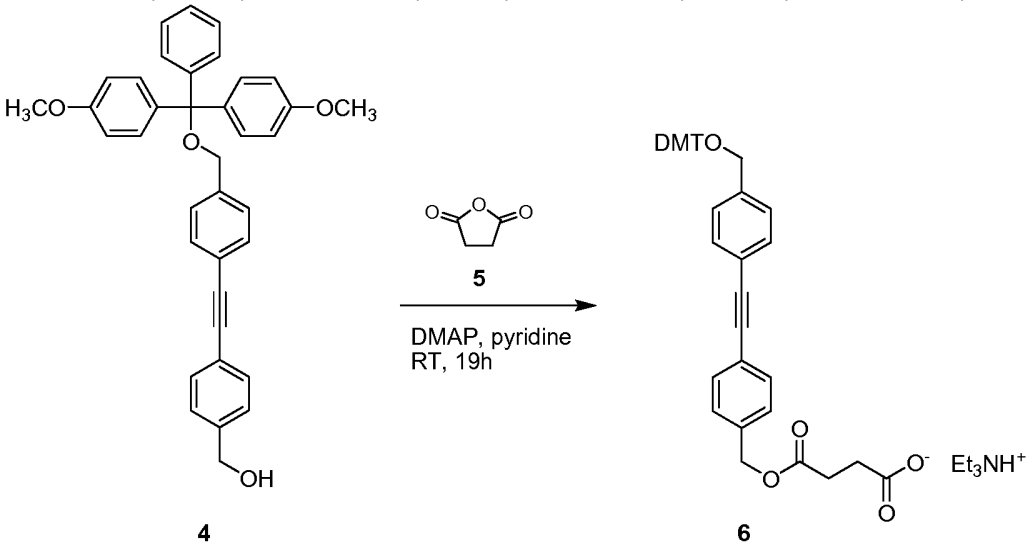


In a dried, two-neck roundbottom flask 3.33 g (17.8 mmol) 4-bromobenzyl alcohol, 2.35 g (17.8 mmol) 4-ethynylbenzyl alcohol, 750 mg (1.07 mmol) bis-(triphenylphosphine)-palladiumdichloride, and 340 mg (1.78 mmol) copper(I)iodide were dissolved in 45 mL dry THF under argon. Then 12.4 mL (9.21 g, 71.3 mmol) Hünig's base were added and the mixture heated to reflux for 4 h. The reaction mixture was cooled to rt, passed through a pad of Hyflo, the filtercake washed with THF, and the filtrate evaporated to dryness. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane / methanol 99:1 to 49:1) to give **3** (1.03 g, 24%) as a yellowish solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): 4.54 (d, J=5.6 Hz, 4 H), 5.29 (t, J=5.8 Hz, 2 H), 7.37 (d, *J*=8.3 Hz, 4 H), 7.51 (d, *J*=8.1 Hz, 4 H).



3 4

Diol **3** (960 mg, 4.03 mmol) was dissolved in 17 mL pyridine under argon and cooled to 0°C. Then 4,4'-dimethoxytriphenylchloromethane (DMT-Cl, 1.37 mg, 4.03 mmol) was added portionwise over 15 min. The solution was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was dissolved in 100 mL dichloromethane and extracted twice with 50 mL sat. aqueous $NaHCO_3$ each. The aqueous layers where reextracted with 100 mL dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over Na_2SO_4 and evaporated to dryness. The crude product was coevaporated twice with toluene and purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate 3:1 to 2:1 with 0.1% Et_3N) to give **4** as a foam in 61% yield (1.32 g, 2.44 mmol). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.67 (t br., 1 H), 3.72 (s, 6 H), 4.11 (s, 2 H), 4.64 (s br., 2 H) 6.76 - 6.79 (m, 4 H), 7.13 - 7.17 (m, 1 H), 7.21 - 7.34 (m, 10 H), 7.41 - 7.47 (m, 6 H).

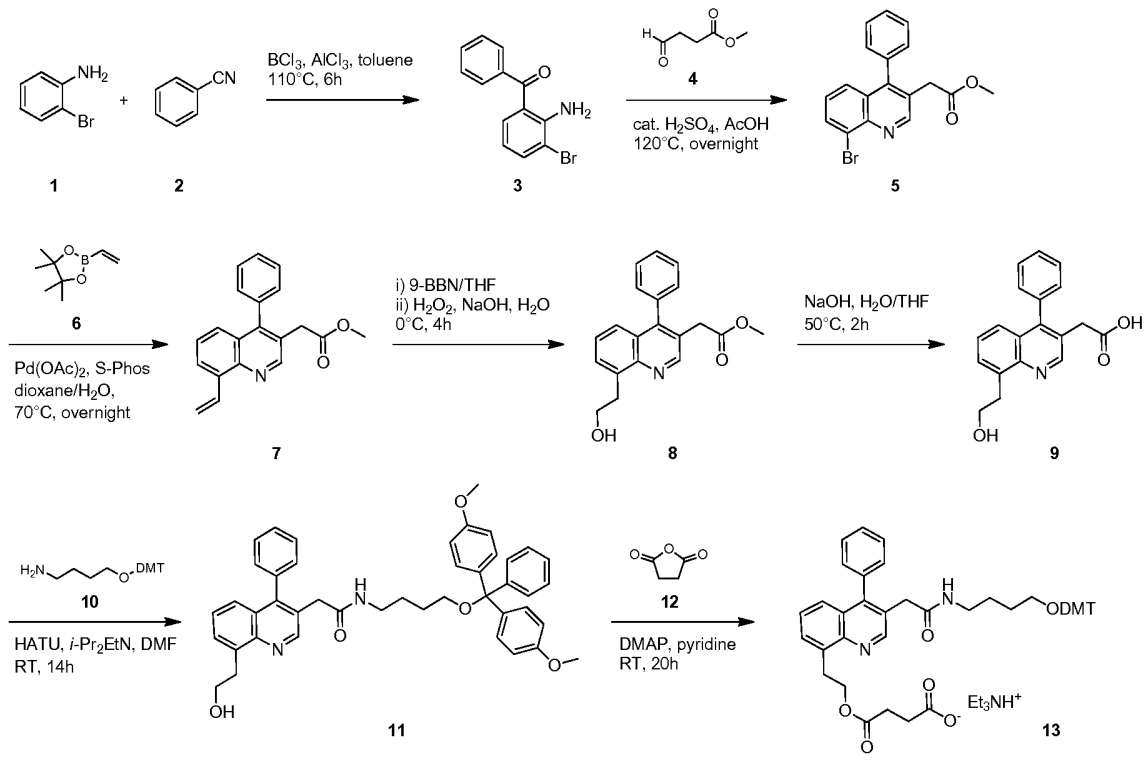


4 6

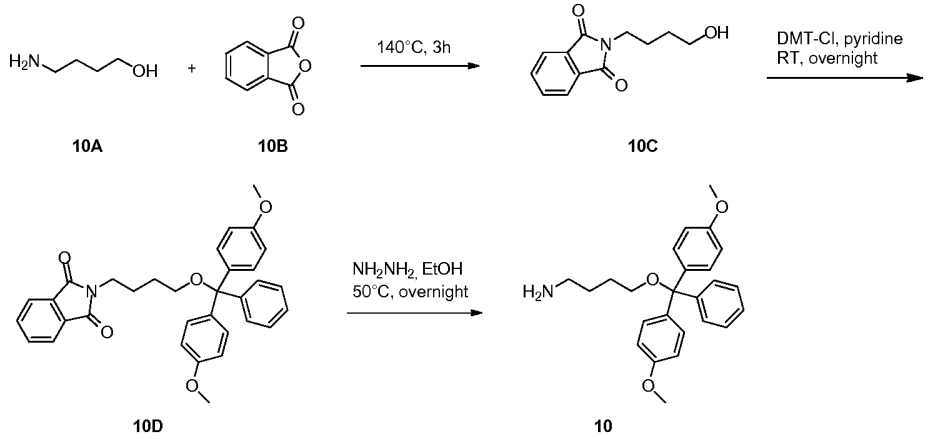
To a solution of 1.30 g (2.40 mmol) **4** and 290 mg (2.40 mmol) N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) in 12 mL dry pyridine under argon was added 480 mg (4.81 mmol) succinic anhydride (**5**). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 19 h and then quenched by addition of 1.5 mL water. Stirring was continued for 60 min before the reaction mixture was diluted with 150 mL dichloromethane and washed with 75 mL ice-cold 10% aqueous citric acid and water (2 x 75 mL). The aqueous layers were reextracted with 150 mL dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The remaining oil was coevaporated twice with toluene and the crude product purified by silica gel chromatography

(dichloromethane / methanol / triethylamine 97:2:1) to give 1.36 g (1.83 mmol, 76%) **6** as an off-white, sticky foam. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.16 (t, J=7.3 Hz, 9 H), 2.50 (t, J=6.5 Hz, 2 H), 2.60 (t, J= 6.7 Hz, 2 H), 2.87 (q, J=7.3 Hz, 6 H), 3.72 (s, 6 H), 4.11 (s, 2 H), 5.05 (s, 2 H), 5.65 (s br., 1 H), 6.75 - 6.79 (m, 4 H), 7.13 - 7.16 (m, 1 H), 7.21 - 7.34 (m, 10 H), 7.41 - 7.44 (m, 6 H).

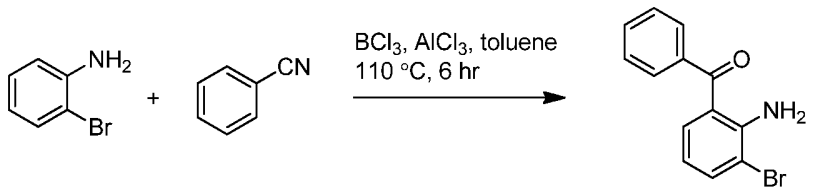
2.D. Synthesis of X058 succinate ester



Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of succinate **13**

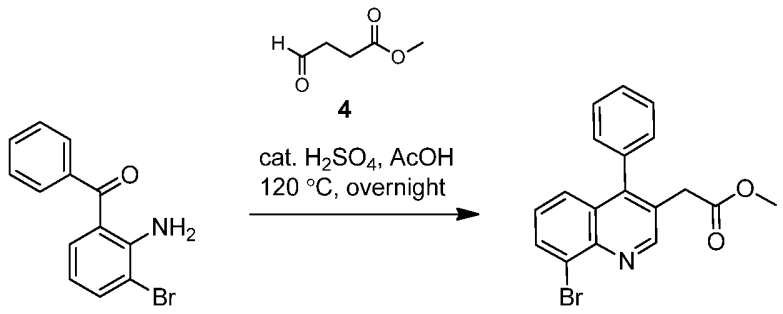


Scheme 2: Synthesis of amine **10**



1 2 3

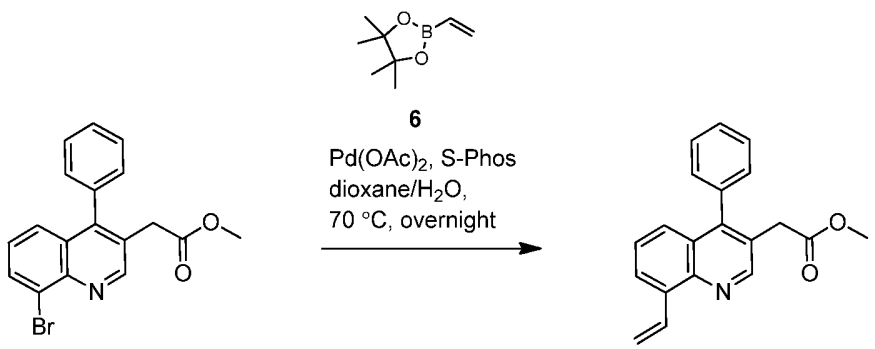
A 1M solution of boron trichloride in toluene (4.94L, 4.94mol) under argon was diluted with 5L of toluene before a solution of 850g (4.94mol) 2-bromoaniline (**1**) in 400mL toluene was added over a period of 40min, resulting in a clear pale brown solution in a slightly exothermic reaction. The temperature was kept below 24°C with cooling. Then a solution of 1529g (14.8mol) benzonitrile (**2**) in 1.53L toluene was added, followed by 725g (5.44mol) $AlCl_3$resulting in a fine suspension which turned pale green. This mixture was stirred for 1h at 20°C to 24°C, then heated to reflux for 6h. After 1h at reflux a clear pale brown solution resulted, which changed to pale yellow after 4h and eventually became turbid. After a total of 7h, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 20°C overnight, resulting in an emulsion, and was then quenched by addition of 15 L ice cold 1M HCl (caution: exothermic reaction with strong gas evolution at the beginning of the addition). The temperature was kept at 22°C to 35°C by cooling. This biphasic mixture was warmed to 80°C for 60 minutes. The aqueous phase was separated and reextracted with 5L of toluene. Both organic phases were washed with 5L 1M HCl, 10L of a 2M NaOH solution and 5L brine. The combined toluene layers were dried over $MgSO_4$ and evaporated (55°C, 5mbar) to a brown oil which was further dried at 80°C and 0.5 mbar. The crude product solidified after 1h at room temperature and was then purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate) yielding 812g (2.94mol, 58%) **3**. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, acetonitrile-d_3): 6.52 - 6.68 (m, 3 H), 7.42 (dd, *J* = 7.8, 1.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.47 - 7.54 (m, 2 H), 7.57 - 7.64 (m, 3 H), 7.66 (dd, *J* = 7.8, 1.3 Hz, 1 H).



3 5

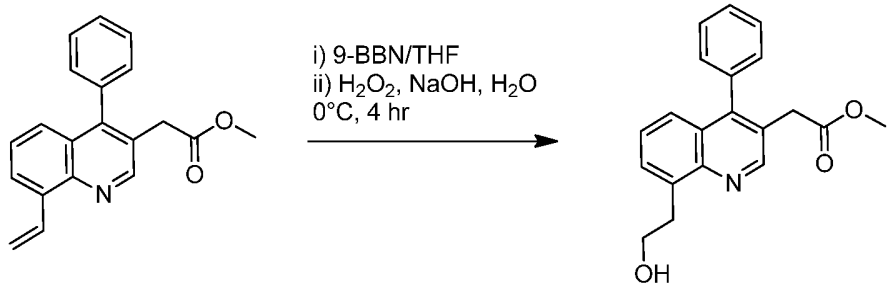
Under argon and with vigorous stirring 120g (1033mmol) methyl-4-oxobutanoate (**4**)was added at once to a solution of benzophenone **3** (233g, 808mmol) in 3.5L glacial acid, resulting in a clear yellow solution. After addition of 2.5mL (4.60g, 46.9mmol) concentrated sulfuric acid the color changed to pale red. The solution was heated to reflux overnight. The yellow solution was then cooled to room temperature and slowly poured in to an ice cold solution of 3 kg ammonium chloride in 10L of water. The mixture was extracted twice with 5L of dichloromethane each. The combined organic layers were extracted twice with 6L saturated, aqueous $NaHCO_3$ solution (caution: gas evolution). The organic layer was dried over $MgSO_4$ and evaporated to dryness to give 338 g of crude product as pale yellow solid. This material was crystallized from 6L heptane

/ ethyl acetate 4:1 yielding 136g (382mmol, 47%) **5** as colorless crystals. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, acetonitrile-d_3): 3.58 (s, 3 H), 3.65 (s, 2 H), 7.25 - 7.31 (m, 2 H), 7.32 - 7.38 (m, 1 H), 7.40 - 7.45 (m, 1 H), 7.53 - 7.61 (m, 3 H), 8.07 (dd, *J* = 7.6, 1.5 Hz, 1 H), 8.97 (s, 1 H).



5 **7**

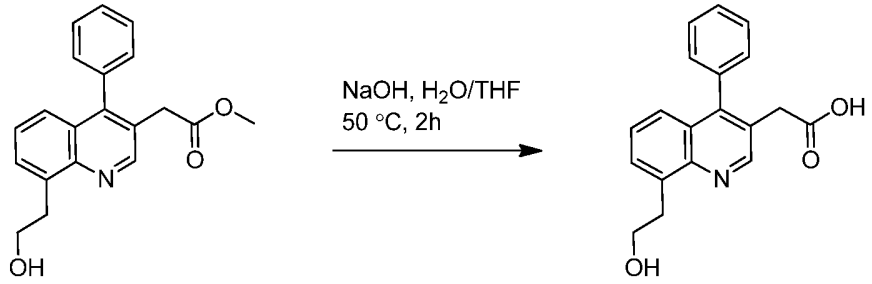
Phenylquinoline **5** (338g, 949mmol), vinyl boronate **6** (175g, 1139mmol), and potassium carbonate (266g, 1926mmol) were dissolved in 4.6L 1,4-dioxane/water 1:1 under argon. The mixture was stirred for 5min before adding 31.9g (78mmol) S-PHOS and 10.0g (44.6mmol) palladium(II)acetate. The mixture was warmed to 70°C and stirred under argon for 5h. The yellow mixture was then cooled to room temperature, diluted with 3L tert.-butylmethylether and extracted twice with 2.5L water, followed by 2L brine. The aqueous phases were reextracted with 2L tert.-butylmethylether. The combined organic layers were dried with $MgSO_4$ and evaporated to dryness resulting in 348 g of a yellow oil. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate 4:1) giving 196g (645mmol, 68%) **7**. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, acetonitrile-d_3): 3.58 (s, 3 H), 3.63 (s, 2 H), 5.50 (dd, *J* = 11.1, 1.5 Hz, 1 H), 6.04 (dd, *J* = 17.9, 1.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.24 - 7.30 (m, 2 H), 7.35 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 1.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.43 - 7.50 (m, 1 H), 7.51 - 7.59 (m, 3 H), 7.97 (dd, *J* = 7.1, 1.0 Hz, 1 H), 8.06 (dd, *J* = 17.9, 11.4 Hz, 1 H), 8.91 (s, 1 H)



7 **8**

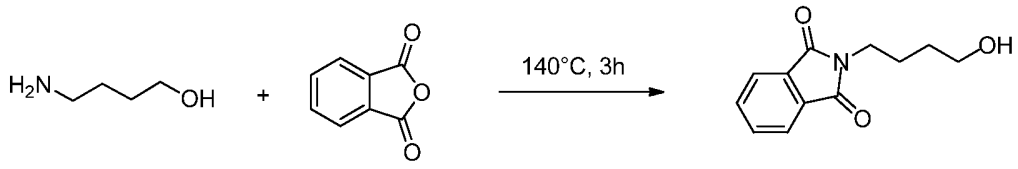
Vinyl-quinoline **7** (194g, 640mmol) was dissolved in 3L THF under argon. The yellow solution was cooled to 15°C and stirred for 10min. Then 1.8L of a 0.5M solution of 9-borabicylo[3.3.1]nonane in THF (900mmol) was added dropwise during a period of 30min at 15 to 18°C. Stirring was continued at room temperature overnight. After cooling to -50°C (dry ice / acetone), 300mL of a 30% hydrogen peroxide solution in water (2937mmol) was added dropwise over 5min (exothermic reaction), followed by the addition of 520mL of a 3M aqueous NaOH solution (1560mmol) which resulted in a yellow suspension. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 0 to 2°C and then stirred for 3h at this temperature. The yellow suspension

was diluted with 3L water and then extracted twice with 3L ethyl acetate. Both organic layers were washed with 2L water followed by 2L brine. The combined organic phases were dried over $MgSO_4$ and evaporated to give a pale brown oil which was purified by silica gel chromatography (2 – 3% methanol in dichloromethane) yielding 163g (507mmol, 79%) **8**. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): 3.42 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2 H), 3.53 (s, 3 H), 3.65 (s, 2 H), 3.76 - 3.84 (m, 2 H), 4.54 (t, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.19 (dd, *J* = 8.6, 1.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.21 - 7.25 (m, 2 H), 7.40 (dd, *J* = 8.1, 7.1 Hz, 1 H), 7.49 - 7.59 (m, 3 H), 7.62 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1 H), 8.91 (s, 1 H).



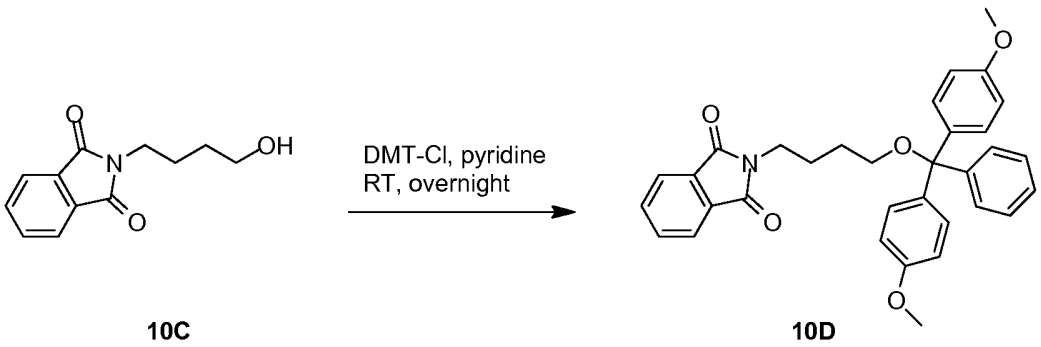
8 **9**

Methyl ester **8** (64.5g, 201mmol) was dissolved in 600ml methanol. To this solution was added 450mL of 0.5M aqueous NaOH (225mmol). The turbid solution was stirred for 1h at 50°C. Then the reaction mixture was evaporated to about 600 mL and the residue extracted twice with 800mL tert.-butylmethylether each. The ether layers were washed with 300mL water. The combined water phases were evaporated to dryness and the residue coevaporated twice with toluene to give 67g of a beige solid. This material was dissolved in 1L water and then 250mL 1M aqueous citric acid was added carefully. The resulting suspension was stirred for 15min and then extracted twice with 1L ethyl acetate each. The organic layers were dried over MgSO4 and evaporated to dryness, yielding 54.1g (176mmol, 88%) acid **9** as beige solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, D_2O): 3.80 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2 H), 3.82 (s, 2 H), 4.32 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2 H), 7.58 - 7.64 (m, 2 H), 7.67 - 7.73 (m, 1 H), 7.73 - 7.79 (m, 1 H), 7.87 - 7.95 (m, 3 H), 7.97 (dd, *J* = 7.1, 1.5 Hz, 1 H), 9.14 (s, 1 H).



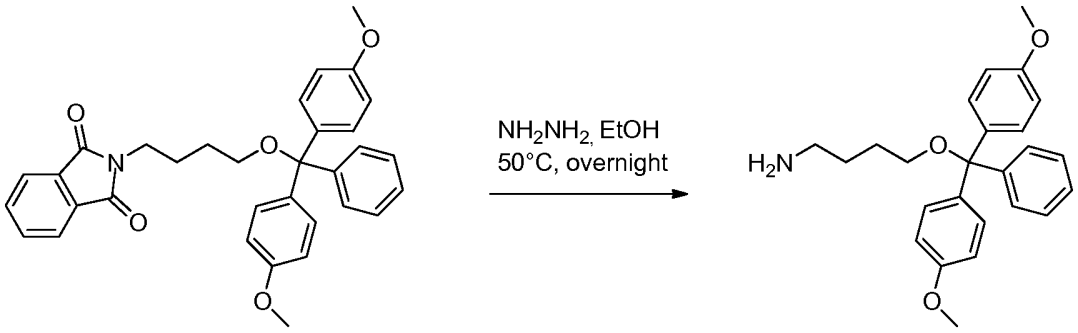
10A **10B** **10C**

Phthalic anhydride (**10B**, 140g, 945mmol) was mixed with 4-amino-1-butanol (**10A**) and heated to 140°C for 3 hours. Over the course of the reaction, the colorless suspension turned into clear, light yellow liquid. The mixture was allowed to cool to 80°C and poured onto 3kg of crushed ice. The ice mixture was extracted three times with 2L of dichloromethane each. The combined organic phases were washed with 2L saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$, twice with 2L water, and then with 2L brine. The organic layer was dried over $MgSO_4$ and concentrated to give 195g **10C** (889mmol, 95%) as beige solid This material was used in the next step without further purification. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, acetonitrile-d_3): 1.48 - 1.58 (m, 2 H), 1.67 - 1.78 (m, 2 H), 2.37 (t, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1 H), 3.50 - 3.57 (m, 2 H), 3.66 (t, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 2 H), 7.75 - 7.85 (m, 4 H).



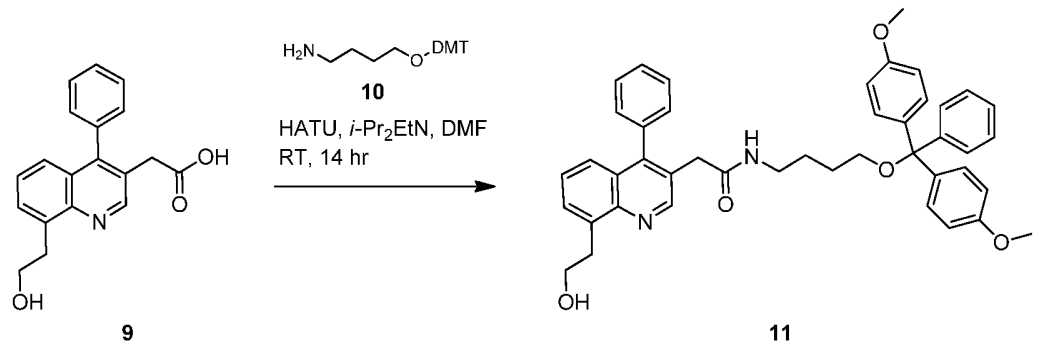
10C **10D**

Phthalimide **10C** (193g, 880mmol) was dissolved in 2.5L pyridine under argon. Then 4,4'-dimethoxytriphenylchloromethane (DMT-Cl, 328g, 968mmol) was added in four portions over 10min. The temperature of the reaction mixture rose from 23°C to 26°C and the yellow solution turned red, then back to yellow again. The solution was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. To quench the reaction 200mL methanol was added 200 ml and the reaction mixture subsequently evaporated. The residue was dissolved in 5L ethyl acetate and extracted twice with 5L 5% aqueous citric acid, once with 5% aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and finally with 5L brine. The aqueous layers where reextracted with 2L ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were dried over $MgSO_4$ and evaporated to dryness. The crude product, 495 g of a brown oil, was purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate 4:1 to 3:1). DMT-protected linker **10D** was obtained in 81% yield (381g, 730mmol). ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): 1.48 - 1.60 (m, 2 H), 1.62 - 1.74 (m, 2 H), 3.01 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 2 H), 3.56 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2 H), 3.73 (s, 6 H), 6.82 - 6.88 (m, 4 H), 7.16 - 7.25 (m, 5 H), 7.25 - 7.31 (m, 2 H), 7.32 - 7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.78 - 7.87 (m, 4 H).

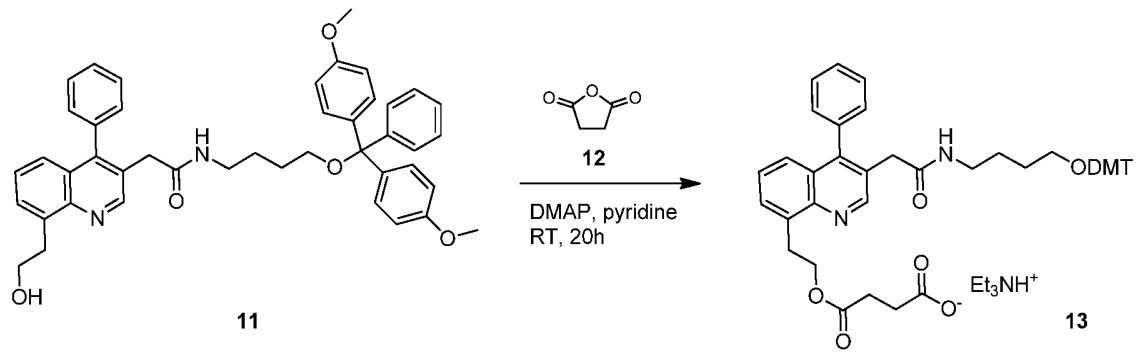


10D **10**

Phthalimide **10D** (302g, 579mmol) was dissolved in 7L ethanol at 50°C and 320mL (327g, 3.57mol) hydrazine hydrate was added. The reaction mixture was heated for 5h to 50°C. The colorless suspension was cooled to room temperature and diluted with 15L of water. The resulting emulsion was extracted twice with 6L tert.-butylmethylether each. The organic phases were washed twice with 4L 5% aqueous $NaHCO_3$, then with 4L brine. The combined ether layers were dried over $MgSO_4$ and evaporated to give 226g (578mmol) **10** as a pale yellow oil which was used in the next step without additional purification. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, acetonitrile-d_3): 1.42 - 1.54 (m, 2 H), 1.56 - 1.66 (m, 2 H), 2.61 (t, J=7.1 Hz, 2 H), 3.06 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2 H), 3.78 (s, 6 H), 6.84 - 6.90 (m, 4 H), 7.19 - 7.26 (m, 1 H), 7.28 - 7.35 (m, 6 H), 7.41 - 7.47 (m, 2 H).



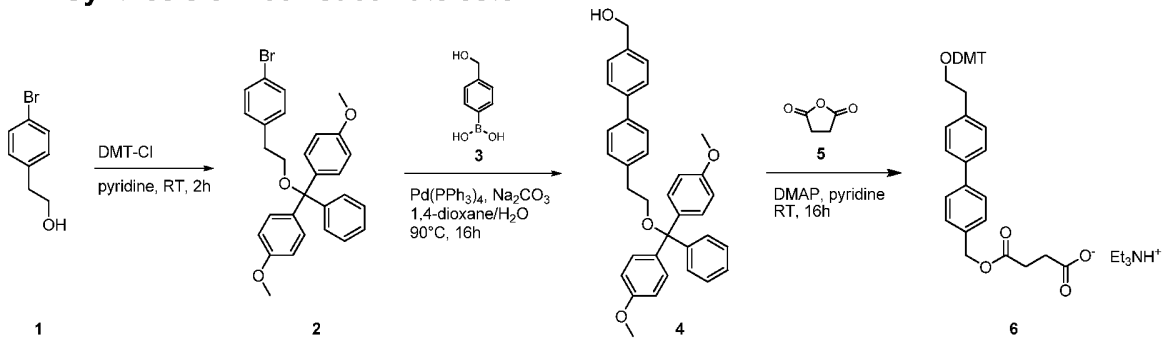
Quinoline acetic acid **9** (92g, 279mmol) was dissolved in 1.5L DMF under argon and a solution of 128g (327mmol) DMT-protected aminobutanol **10** in 1L DMF followed by 146mL (108g, 838mmol) ethyldiisopropylamine were added. Finally, 138g (363mmol) HATU was added to the pale yellow, turbid solution, resulting in an exothermic reaction. The temperature was kept below 25°C with ice-bath cooling. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 6h and then diluted with 3L aqueous $NaHCO_3$. This mixture was extracted twice with 3L tert.-butylmethylether each. The organic layers were washed with brine, combined, dried, and evaporated. The crude product (180 g pale brown oil) was purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane / methanol / triethylamine 98:2:0.25) to give 134g (197mmol, 70%) **11** as colorless foam. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): 1.35 - 1.57 (m, 4 H), 2.97 (t, *J* = 6.3 Hz, 4 H), 3.34 - 3.48 (m, 4 H), 3.73 (s, 6 H), 3.76 - 3.83 (m, 2 H), 4.54 (t, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1 H), 6.84 - 6.90 (m, 4 H), 7.15 - 7.32 (m, 10 H), 7.34 - 7.41 (m, 3 H), 7.42 - 7.53 (m, 3 H), 7.58 (dd, *J* = 6.8, 1.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.62 (t, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 1 H), 8.83 (s, 1 H).



Alcohol **11** (43.8g, 64.4mmol) and N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP, 7.87g, 64.4mmol) were dissolved in 600mL pyridine under argon. Then 12.9g (128mmol) succinic anhydride (**12**) was added and the reaction mixture stirred at room temperature for 20h. The reaction was quenched by addition of 10mL water and stirring continued for 30min. The reaction mixture was diluted with 1200mL dichloromethane and washed with 600mL ice-cold 10% aqueous citric acid and twice with 600mL water. The aqueous layers were reextracted with 600mL dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The crude product was coevaporated twice with 100mL toluene and then purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane / methanol / triethylamine 97:2:1 to 94:5:1) to give 57.5g (quantitative) **13** as an off-white foam. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.17 (t, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 9 H), 1.46 - 1.60 (m, 4 H), 2.52 (t, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 2 H), 2.61 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2 H), 2.82 (q, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 6 H), 3.06 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 2 H), 3.16 (q, *J* = 6.3 Hz, 2 H), 3.49 (s, 2 H), 3.64 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2 H), 3.80 (s, 6 H), 4.53 (t, *J* = 7.5

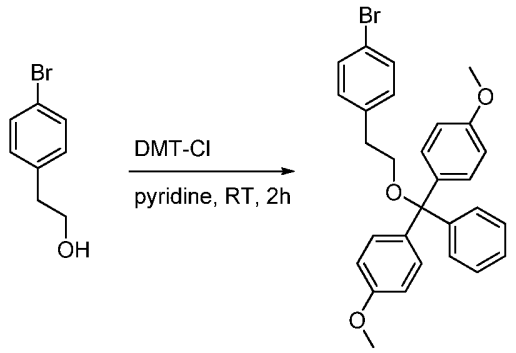
Hz, 2 H), 5.38 (t br., 1 H), 6.08 (s br., 1 H), 6.80 - 6.84 (m, 4 H), 7.20 (t, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.26 - 7.38 (m, 10 H), 7.41 - 7.52 (m, 5 H), 7.59 (d, *J* = 6.3 Hz, 1 H), 8.92 (s, 1 H).

2.E. Synthesis of X067 succinate ester



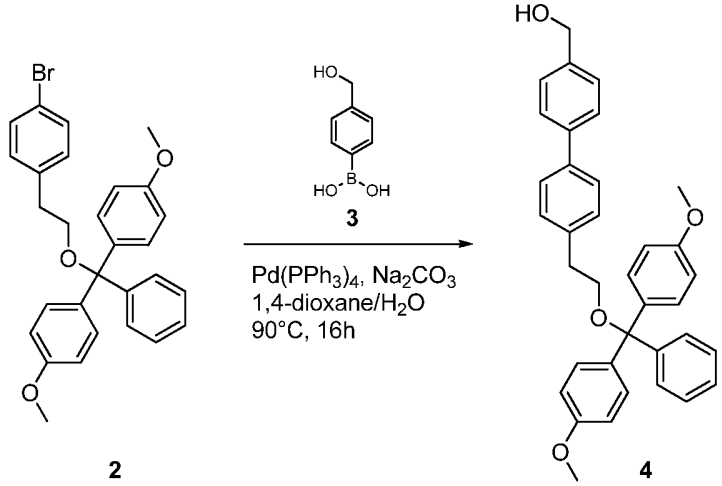
1 2 4 6

Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of **6**



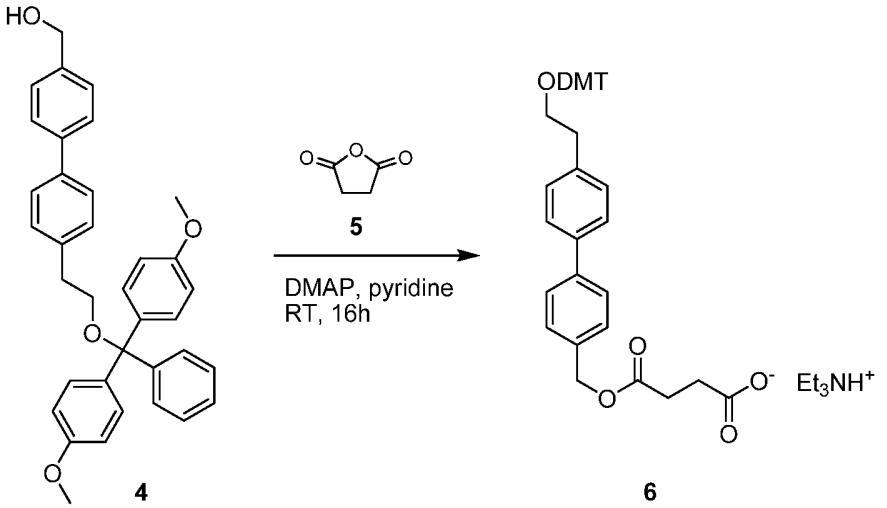
1 **2**

To a 250 mL roundbottom flask was added 2-(4-bromophenyl)ethanol **1** (1.00 g, 4.97 mmol), pyridine (25 mL) and 4,4'-(chloro(phenyl)methylene)bis(methoxybenzene) (DMT-Cl) (1.69 g, 4.97 mmol). The solution was stirred at rt for 2h. 1 mL of MeOH was added, and the solution was stirred at rt for 10 min. The solution was then concentrated under vacuum, dissolved in 250 mL of EtOAc, and washed with 100 mL sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$, 100 mL of water, and 100 mL of brine. The organic layer was dried with sodium sulfate, concentrated under vacuum, and purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate / NEt_3) to give **2** (2.35 g, 94%) as a foamy solid. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): 2.80 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2 H), 3.12 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2 H), 3.72 (s, 6 H), 6.81 - 6.87 (m, 4 H), 7.12 - 7.22 (m, 7 H), 7.26 (d, *J* = 4.0 Hz, 4 H), 7.44 - 7.50 (m, 2 H).



2 **4**

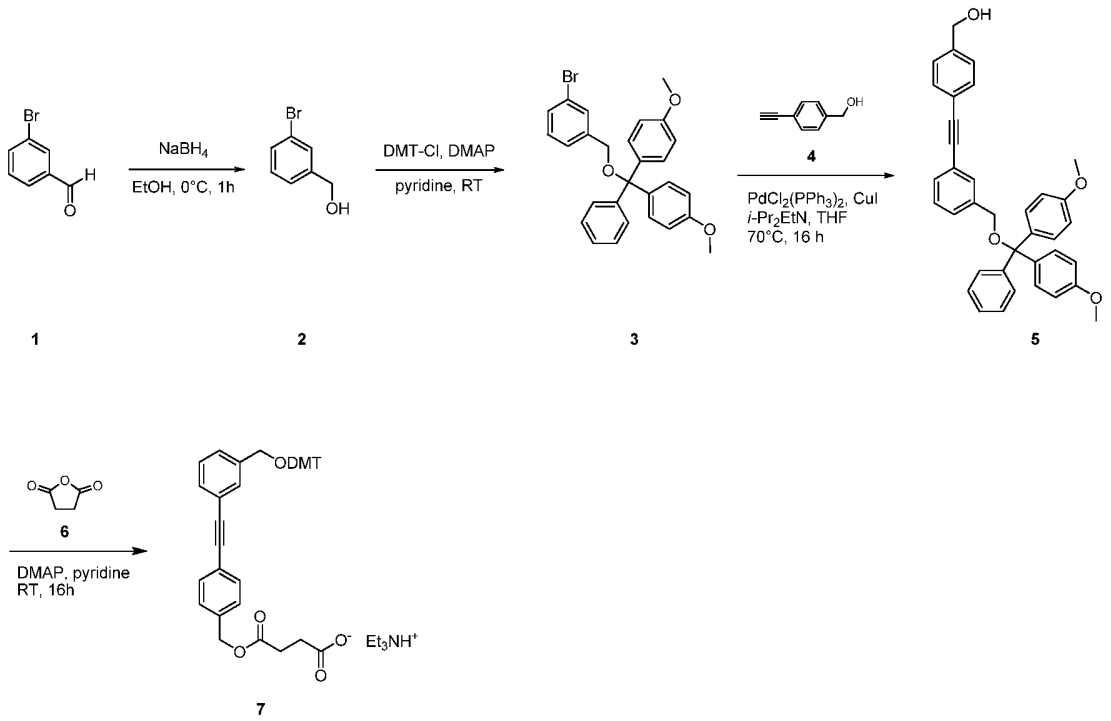
To a 40 mL glass vial with rubber septa was added **2** (0.70 g, 1.39 mmol), 4-(hydroxymethyl)phenylboronic acid **3** (0.25 g, 1.67 mmol), $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ (80 mg, 0.070 mmol), 2 M (aq) Na_2CO_3 (2.1 mL, 4.17 mmol), and 1,4-dioxane (7 mL). The contents were briefly placed under vacuum, and then placed under a nitrogen atmosphere. The vial was sealed and heated at 90 °C for 16 h. After cooling to rt, EtOAc was added and the mixture was washed with sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$ and brine. The organic portion was dried with sodium sulfate, concentrated under vacuum, and purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate / NEt_3) to give **3** (0.64 g, 87%) as a foamy solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): 2.86 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2 H), 3.16 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2 H), 3.72 (s, 6 H), 4.52 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 2 H), 5.19 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1 H), 6.81 - 6.87 (m, 4 H), 7.18 (d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 4 H), 7.20 - 7.22 (m, 1 H), 7.24 - 7.33 (m, 6 H), 7.38 (d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2 H), 7.57 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 2 H), 7.60 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 2 H).



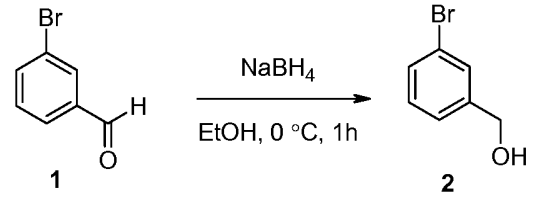
4 **6**

To a solution of 3.68 g (6.93 mmol) **4** and 847 mg (6.93 mmol) N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) in 35 mL dry pyridine under argon was added 1.39 g (13.9 mmol) succinic anhydride (**5**). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 h and then 2.5 mL water was added. Stirring was continued for 30 min. The reaction mixture was taken up in 300 mL dichloromethane and washed with 150 mL ice-cold 10% aqueous citric acid and water (2 x 150 mL). The aqueous layers were reextracted with 150 mL dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The remaining oil was coevaporated twice with toluene and the crude product purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane / methanol / triethylamine 97:2:1) to give 4.68 g (6.39 mmol, 92%) **6** as an off-white foam. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.14 (t, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 9 H), 2.51 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2 H), 2.60 (t, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 2 H), 2.82 - 2.90 (m, 8 H), 3.24 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2 H), 3.70 (s, 6 H), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 6.69 - 6.73 (m, 4 H), 7.08 - 7.21 (m, 9 H), 7.28 - 7.35 (m, 4 H), 7.42 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 2 H), 7.48 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 2 H), 8.04 (s br., 1 H).

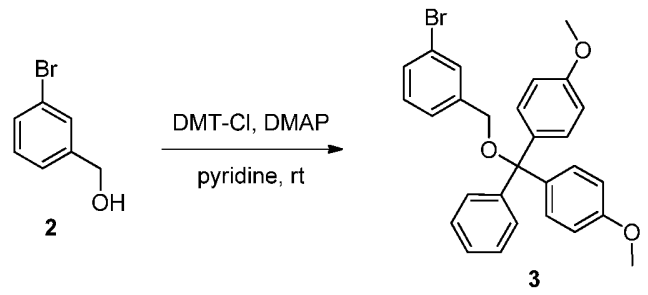
2. F. Synthesis of X069 succinate ester



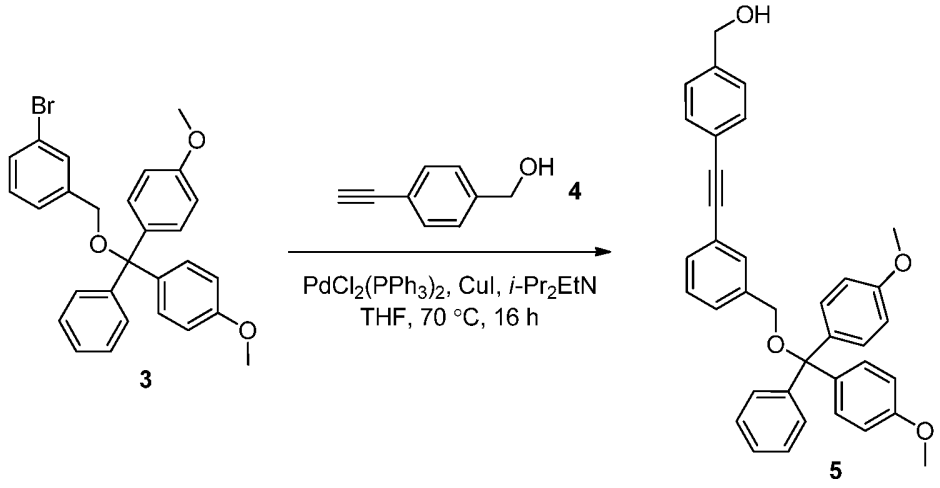
Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of succinate **7**



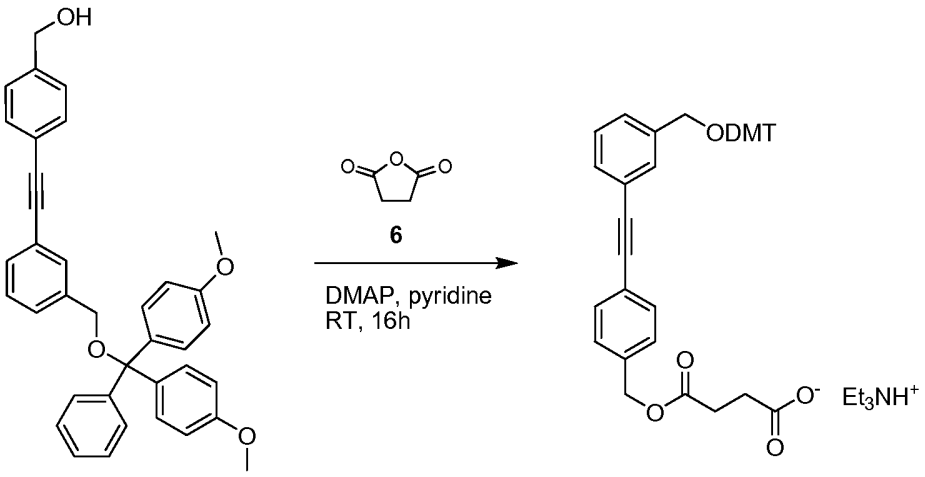
Compound **2** was prepared according to *Eur. J. Org. Chem*, **2002**, *19*, 3326-3335. In a 250 mL roundbottom was added 3-bromobenzaldehyde **1** (10.0 g, 54.0 mmol) and EtOH (25 mL). The solution was cooled to 0 °C in an ice-water bath, sodium borohydride (1.11 g, 29.5 mmol) was added, and the mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 h. Sodium sulfate decahydrate was added, and the reaction was stirred at rt for 1 h to quench the borohydride. Diethyl ether was added, and the mixture was washed with water. The organic layer was dried with sodium sulfate and concentrated under vacuum to give **2** (9.50 g, 94%) as a clear oil. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 2.34 (br. s, 1 H), 4.61 (br. s, 2 H), 7.13 - 7.33 (m, 2 H), 7.40 (d, *J* = 7.6 Hz, 1 H), 7.49 (s, 1 H).



To a 500 mL roundbottom flask was added **2** (9.50 g, 50.8 mmol), 4,4'-(chloro(phenyl)methylene)bis(methoxybenzene) (DMT-Cl) (17.2 g, 50.8 mmol), DMAP (0.310 g, 0.050 mmol), and pyridine (200 mL). The solution was placed under an atmosphere of nitrogen, and stirred overnight at rt. EtOAc was added, and the solution was washed with sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$. The organic layer was concentrated under vacuum, and purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate / NEt_3) to give **3** (23.3 g, 94%) as a foamy solid. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 3.74 (s, 6 H), 4.12 (s, 2 H), 6.92 (dd, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 4 H), 7.21 - 7.48 (m, 13 H).

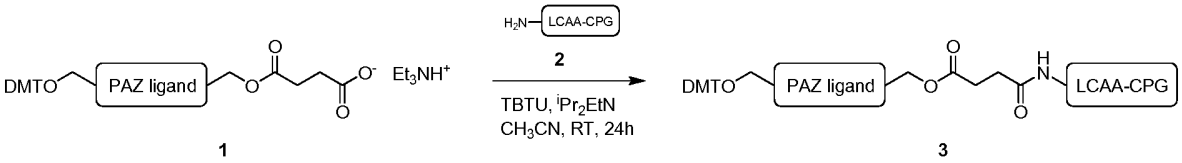


To a 40 mL glass vial with rubber septum was added **3** (1.00 g, 2.04 mmol), 4-ethynylbenzyl alcohol **4** (0.405 g, 3.06 mmol), $PdCl_2(PPh_3)_2$ (86 mg, 0.123 mmol), CuI (39 mg, 0.204 mmol), iPr_2EtN (1.06 g, 8.17 mmol) and THF (7 mL). The contents were briefly placed under vacuum, and then placed under a nitrogen atmosphere. The vial was sealed and heated at 70 °C for 16 h. After cooling to rt, the mixture was filtered through celite, washing with EtOAc, and the filtrated was concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (heptane / ethyl acetate / NEt_3) to give **5** (0.680 g, 62%) as a foamy solid. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 3.74 (s, 6 H), 4.12 (s, 2 H), 4.53 (d, *J* = 4.0 Hz, 2 H), 5.29 (t, *J* = 4.0 Hz, 1 H), 6.93 (dd, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 4 H), 7.19 - 7.58 (m, 17 H).



To a solution of 4.55 g (8.42 mmol) **5** and 1.03 g (8.42 mmol) N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) in 42 mL dry pyridine under argon was added 1.68 g (16.8 mmol) succinic anhydride (**6**). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 h and then 2.5 mL water was added. Stirring was continued for 30 min. The reaction mixture was taken up in 300 mL dichloromethane and washed with 150 mL ice-cold 10% aqueous citric acid and water (2 x 150 mL). The aqueous layers were reextracted with 150 mL dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The remaining oil was coevaporated twice with toluene and the crude product purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane / methanol / triethylamine 97:2:1) to give 5.81 g (7.83 mmol, 93%) **7** as an off-white, sticky foam. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.14 (t, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 9 H), 2.50 (t, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 2 H), 2.60 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2 H), 2.86 (q, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 6 H), 3.72 (s, 6 H), 4.09 (s, 2 H), 5.05 (s, 2 H), 5.95 (s br., 1 H), 6.75 - 6.79 (m, 4 H), 7.15 (tt, *J* = 7.3, 1.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.21 - 7.36 (m, 11 H), 7.42 - 7.45 (m, 5 H).

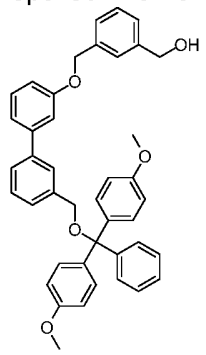
2.G. General procedure for the high density loading of controlled pore glass supports with PAZ ligand succinates

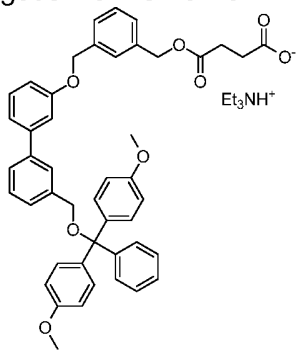


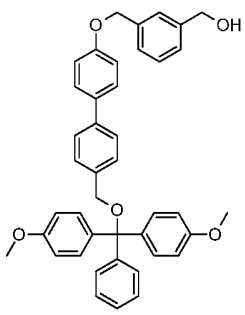
In an Erlenmeyer flask 1.00 mmol PAZ ligand succinate salt **1** was dissolved in 50 mL dry acetonitrile under argon. To this solution 353 mg (1.10mmol) O-(1H-benzo-1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-N,N,N´,N´-tetramethyl-uronium tetrafluoroborate (TBTU) was added and the solution shaken for 10 min. Then 10g long chain alkylamine controlled pore glass (LCAA/CNA-600-CPG, PrimeSynthesis, **2**) was added and the reaction mixture gently agitated for 5 min. Finally, 0.685 mL (517 mg, 4.00 mmol) Hünig's base was added and the flask gently shaken for 24 h on an orbital shaker. Loading density was assessed by detritylating an aliquote of the CPG (3-5 mg CPG washed with acetonitrile, dried in vacuo, added to 25 mL 3% dichloroacetic acid in dichloromethane (v/v), absorbance at 504 nm determined). If loading density was in the desired range (60 – 90 micromol / g), the CPG was filtered off and washed extensively with acetonitrile. Underivatized amino groups were capped by treating the CPG with x mL each of a mixture of acetic anhydride / 2,6-lutidine / THF 1:1:8 (v/v/v) and a solution of 1-methylimidazole in THF

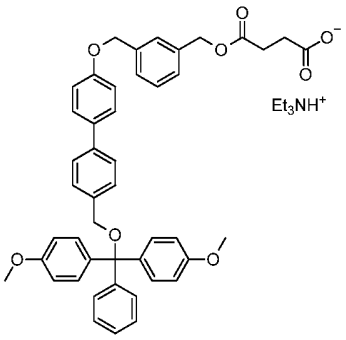
16:84 (v/v). The mixture was gently shaken for 15 min at room temperature. Then the CPG was filtered off, washed with acetonitrile and dried under vacuum overnight. Loading density was determined again as above. Loading yields for the succinates in examples 1 – 6 were in the range of 64 - 75 micromol / g.

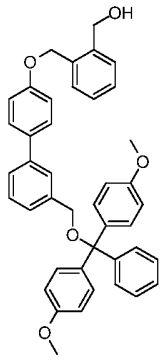
2.H. **Synthesis of X050, X059, X061, X062, X065, X068 alcohols and succinate esters**
Prepared in an analogous manner to **X027**

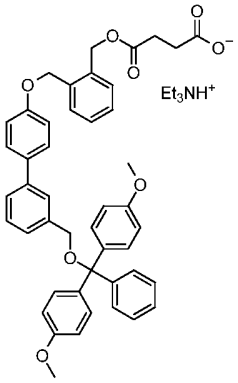

X050 alcohol

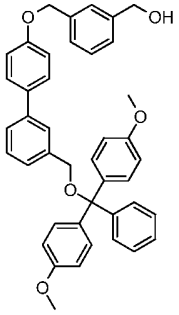

X050 succinate ester

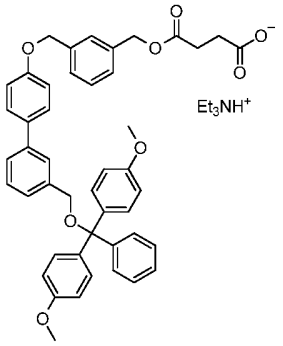

X059 alcohol

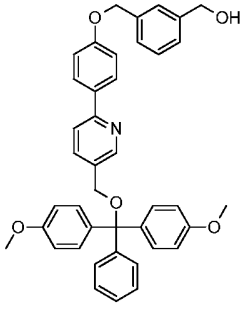

X059 succinate ester

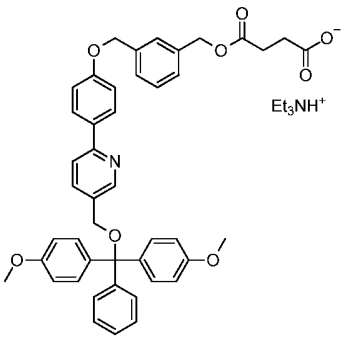

X061 alcohol

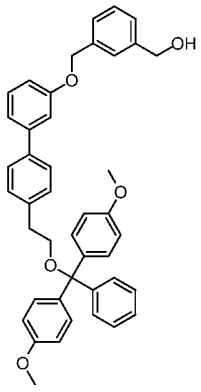

X061 succinate ester

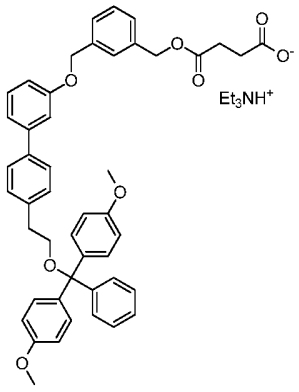

X062 alcohol


X062 succinate ester


X065 alcohol


X065 succinate ester


X068 alcohol


X068 succinate ester

X050 alcohol: ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.73 (s, 6 H) 4.19 (s, 2 H) 4.51 (d, *J*=5.56 Hz, 2 H) 5.17 (s, 2 H) 5.21 (t, *J*=5.81 Hz, 1 H) 6.89 - 6.95 (m, 4 H) 7.01 (dd, *J*=8.08, 2.02 Hz, 1 H) 7.19 - 7.30 (m, 4 H) 7.30 - 7.40 (m, 9 H) 7.40 - 7.49 (m, 5 H) 7.53 (s, 1 H) 7.57 (d, *J*=7.58 Hz, 1 H). MS (ESI-) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{42}H_{38}O_5$ 622.3; found 667.9 [MH^- + formic acid].

X059 alcohol: ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.74 (s, 6 H) 4.10 (s, 2 H) 4.52 (s, 2 H) 5.15 (s, 2 H) 5.22 (br. s., 1 H) 6.90 - 6.96 (m, 4 H) 7.07 - 7.13 (m, 2 H) 7.22 - 7.30 (m, 2 H) 7.30 - 7.38 (m, 8 H) 7.39 - 7.48 (m, 5 H) 7.60 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 4 H). MS (ESI-) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{42}H_{38}O_5$ 622.3; found 621.1 [MH^-].

X061 alcohol: ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.74 (s, 6 H) 4.17 (s, 2 H) 4.63 (d, *J*=5.05 Hz, 2 H) 5.17 - 5.22 (m,3 H) 6.93 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 4 H) 7.11 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 2 H) 7.22 - 7.37 (m, 10 H) 7.40 - 7.52 (m, 7 H) 7.58 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 2 H). MS (ESI-) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{42}H_{38}O_5$ 622.3; found 667.6 [MH^- + formic acid].

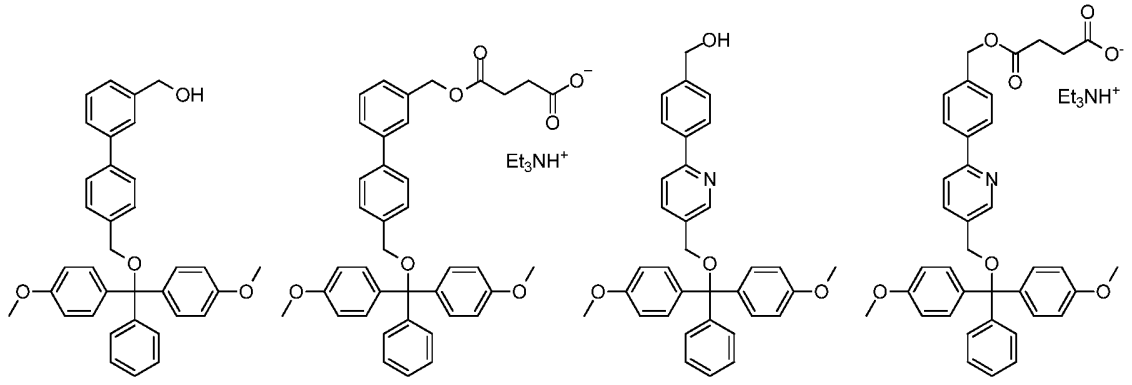
X062 alcohol: ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.74 (s, 6 H) 4.16 (s, 2 H) 4.52 (d, *J*=6.06 Hz, 2 H) 5.14 (s, 2 H) 5.19 - 5.23 (m, 1 H) 6.90 - 6.95 (m, 4 H) 7.07 - 7.12 (m, 2 H) 7.21 - 7.29 (m, 2 H) 7.30 - 7.38 (m, 9 H) 7.39 - 7.48 (m, 5 H) 7.49 - 7.53 (m, 1 H) 7.55 - 7.60 (m, 2 H). MS (ESI-) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{42}H_{38}O_5$ 622.3; found 667.7 [MH^- + formic acid].

X065 alcohol: ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.75 (s, 6 H) 4.16 (s, 2 H) 4.52 (d, *J*=6.06 Hz, 2 H) 5.17 (s, 2 H) 5.21 (t, *J*=5.81 Hz, 1 H) 6.93 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 4 H) 7.12 (d, *J*=9.09 Hz, 2 H) 7.22 - 7.39 (m, 10 H) 7.41 - 7.47 (m, 3 H) 7.78 (dd, *J*=8.34, 2.27 Hz, 1 H) 7.85 - 7.90 (m, 1 H) 8.03 (d, *J*=9.09 Hz, 2 H) 8.55 (d, *J*=1.52 Hz, 1 H). MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{41}H_{37}NO_5$ 623.3; found 624.7 [MH^+].

X068 alcohol: ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 2.87 (t, *J*=6.57 Hz, 2 H) 3.16 (t, *J*=6.57 Hz, 2 H) 3.72 (s, 6 H) 4.51 (d, *J*=5.56 Hz, 2 H) 5.17 (s, 2 H) 5.21 (t, *J*=5.81 Hz, 1 H) 6.85 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 4 H) 6.99 (dd, *J*=8.08, 1.52 Hz, 1 H) 7.18 (d, *J*=9.09 Hz, 4 H) 7.20 - 7.38 (m, 13 H) 7.43 (s, 1 H) 7.59 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 2 H). MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{43}H_{40}O_5$ 636.3; found 659.7 [M + Na].

2.I. Synthesis of X060 and X064 alcohols and succinate esters

Prepared in an analogous manner to **X067**



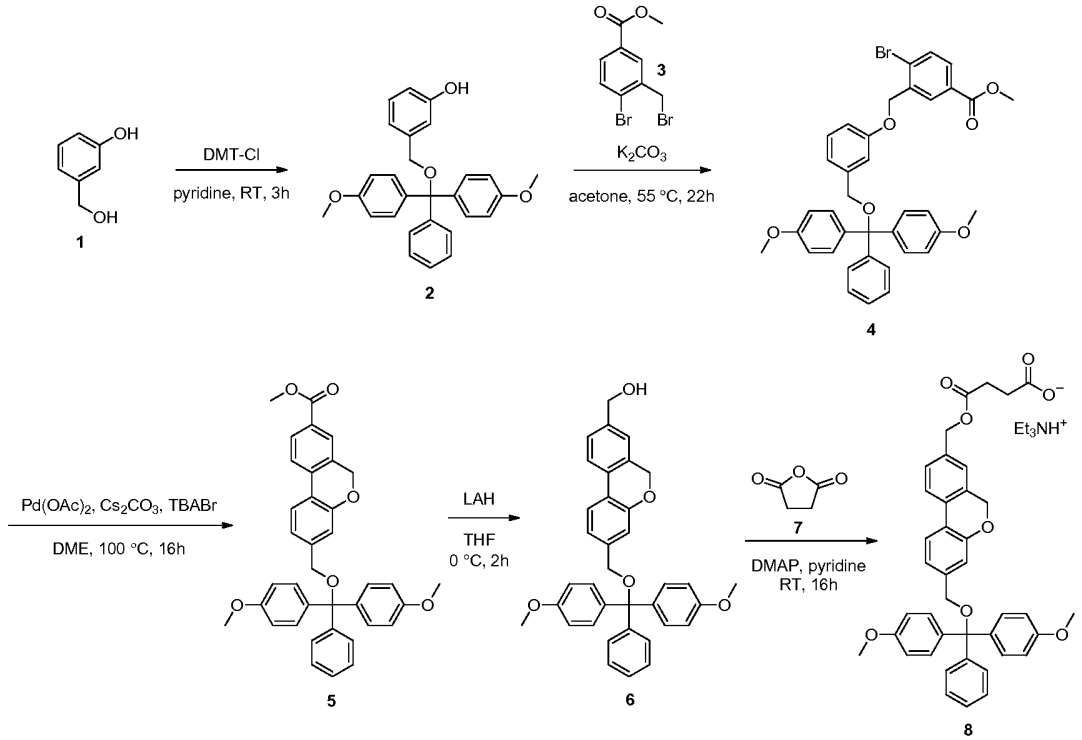
X060 alcohol **X060** succinate ester **X064** alcohol **X064** succinate ester

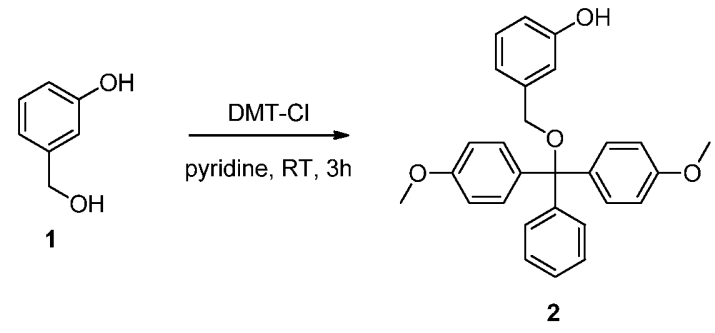
X060 alcohol: ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.75 (s, 6 H) 4.12 (s, 2 H) 4.57 (d, *J*=5.56 Hz, 2 H) 5.20 - 5.26 (m, 1 H) 6.90 - 6.96 (m, 4 H) 7.22 - 7.28 (m, 1 H) 7.29 - 7.38 (m, 7 H) 7.39 - 7.48 (m, 5 H) 7.53 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H) 7.60 (s, 1 H) 7.64 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 2 H). MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{35}H_{32}O_4$ 516.2; found 303.4 [DMT^+].

X064 alcohol: ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.75 (s, 6 H) 4.18 (s, 2 H) 4.56 (d, *J*=5.56 Hz, 2 H) 5.24 (t, *J*=5.81 Hz, 1 H) 6.93 (d, *J*=9.09 Hz, 4 H) 7.25 (t, *J*=7.33 Hz, 1 H) 7.32 (d,

J=9.09 Hz, 4 H) 7.34 - 7.39 (m, 2 H) 7.44 (t, *J*=8.08 Hz, 4 H) 7.82 (dd, *J*=8.34, 2.27 Hz, 1 H) 7.93 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H) 8.04 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 2 H) 8.59 (d, *J*=2.02 Hz, 1 H). MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{34}H_{31}NO_4$ 517.2; found 518.8 [MH^+].

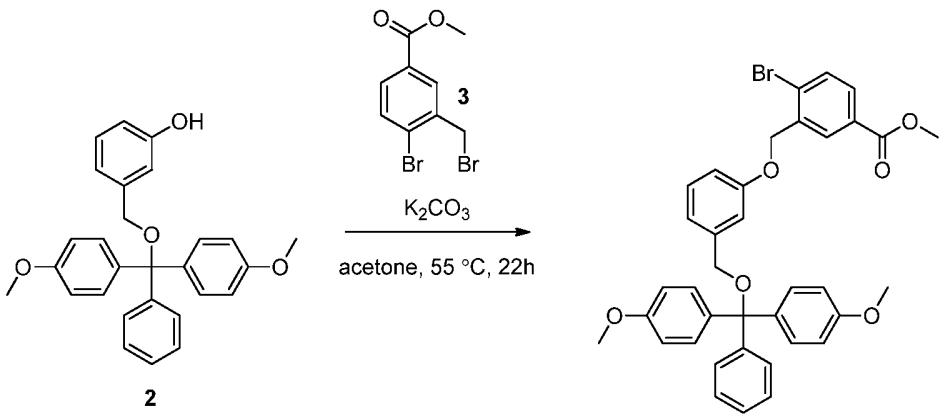
2.J. Synthesis of X063 succinate ester



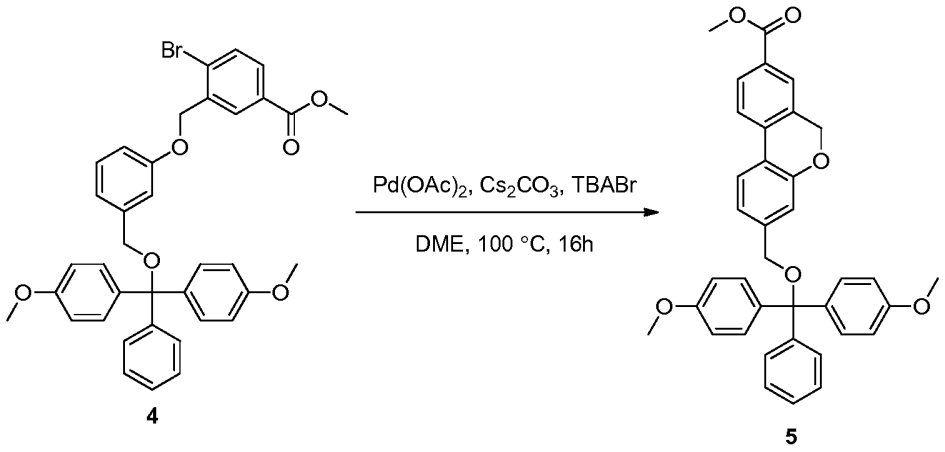


3-(hydroxymethyl)phenol (**1**, 6.21 g, 50.0 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (100 mL) and cooled to 0 °C. DMT-Cl (16.9 g, 50 mmol) was added and the solution was stirred at rt for 2 h. 500 mL of EtOAc was added, the solution was washed 1x each with 400 mL sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$, water, and brine. The organic portion was dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered, and concentrated under vacuum. The mixture was re-dissolved in acetone/toluene and conentrated, repeating this process 4-times. The residue was then concentrated under vacuum overnight to give **2** (20.9 g, 98%) as a foamy solid.

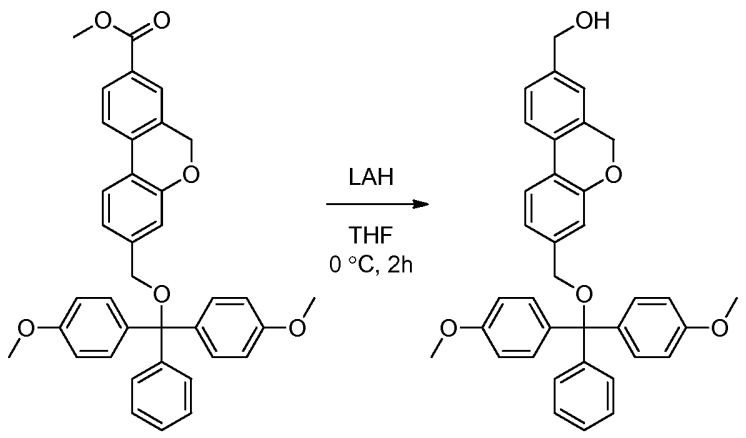
^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.74 (s, 6 H) 3.97 (s, 2 H) 6.66 (dd, *J*=8.08, 1.52 Hz, 1 H) 6.72 (d, *J*=7.58 Hz, 1 H) 6.83 (d, *J*=1.52 Hz, 1 H) 6.89 - 6.95 (m, 4 H) 7.12 (t, *J*=7.83 Hz, 1 H) 7.17 (d, *J*=7.58 Hz, 1 H) 7.27 - 7.32 (m, 4 H) 7.34 (t, *J*=7.58 Hz, 2 H) 7.40 - 7.46 (m, 2 H) 9.37 (s, 1 H).



To compound **2** (17.2 g, 36.3 mmol) in acetone (145 mL) was added methyl 4-bromo-3-(bromomethyl)benzoate (**3**, 11.7 g, 38.1 mmol) and K_2CO_3 (30.1 g, 218 mmol). The flask was evacuated/N_2 backfilled 2x, and heated at reflux overnight under an atmosphere of N_2. After cooling to rt, the mixture was filtered, washing with CH_2Cl_2, and concentrated. The residue was then redissolved in CH_2Cl_2, dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered, and concentrated. To give **4** (24.8 g, 99%) as a foamy solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.74 (s, 6 H) 3.84 (s, 3 H) 4.07 (s, 2 H) 5.20 (s, 2 H) 6.88 - 6.92 (m, 4 H) 6.94 - 6.98 (m, 2 H) 6.99 (d, *J*=1.52 Hz, 1 H) 7.21 - 7.26 (m, 1 H) 7.26 - 7.30 (m, 5 H) 7.30 - 7.35 (m, 2 H) 7.38 - 7.43 (m, 2 H) 7.85 (s, 2 H) 8.11 (s, 1 H)

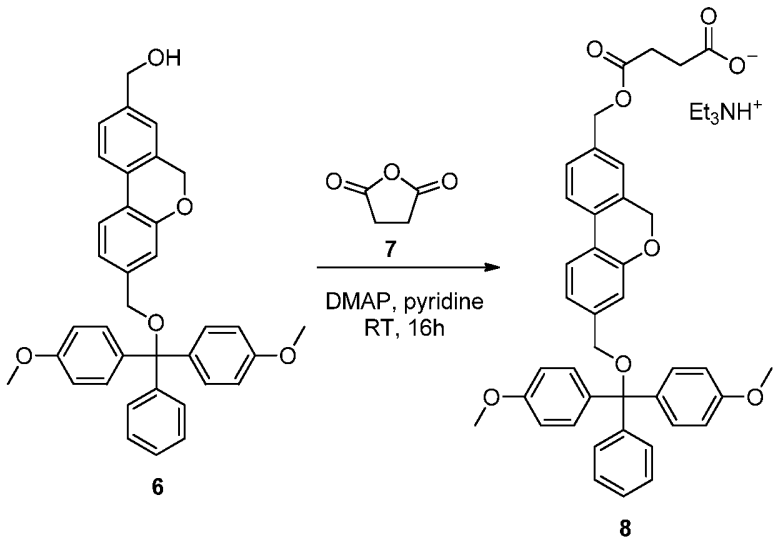


To compound **4** (24.8 g, 35.8 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (350 mL) was added Bu_4NBr (17.3 g, 53.7 mmol), Cs_2CO_3 (17.5 g, 53.7 mmol), and $Pd(OAc)_2$ (2.01 g, 8.96 mmol). The flask was degassed with two cycles of vacuum/N_2 backfill and heated to reflux overnight, under an atmosphere of N_2. After cooling to rt, the mixture was filtered through celite, eluting with THF, and concentrated. The residue was dissolved in 500 mL EtOAc, washed with 400 mL sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$, 2x 400 mL water, and 400 mL of brine. The organic fraction was dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered, and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (CH_2Cl_2/triethylamine), giving **5** (15.1 g, 68%) as a foamy solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.74 (s, 6 H) 3.87 (s, 3 H) 4.11 (s, 2 H) 5.23 (s, 2 H) 6.89 - 6.96 (m, 4 H) 7.01 (d, *J*=1.52 Hz, 1 H) 7.08 (dd, *J*=8.08, 1.52 Hz, 1 H) 7.22 - 7.27 (m, 1 H) 7.29 - 7.33 (m, 4 H) 7.33 - 7.38 (m, 2 H) 7.41 - 7.46 (m, 2 H) 7.88 - 7.93 (m, 2 H) 7.93 - 7.99 (m, 2 H)



5 6

Lithium aluminum hydride (43.4 mL of 1.0 M suspension in THF, 43.4 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **5** (12.0 g, 19.3 mmol) in THF (150 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was quenched by dropwise addition of 20 mL EtOAc, with stirring at 0 °C for 10 min. 1.65 mL H_2O, 1.65 mL 20% aq. NaOH, and 4.95 mL H_2O were added successively. The mixture was then stirred at rt for 1h, dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered through celite, and concentrated under vaccuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/heptane/triethylamine), giving **6** (8.47 g, 81%) as a foamy solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.75 (s, 6 H) 4.07 (s, 2 H) 4.52 (d, *J*=5.56 Hz, 2 H) 5.13 (s, 2 H) 5.21 - 5.25 (m, 1 H) 6.89 - 6.95 (m, 4 H) 6.96 (d, *J*=1.52 Hz, 1 H) 7.03 (dd, *J*=8.08, 1.52 Hz, 1 H) 7.22 (s, 1 H) 7.23 - 7.28 (m, 1 H) 7.29 - 7.33 (m, 4 H) 7.33 - 7.38 (m, 3 H) 7.41 - 7.46 (m, 2 H) 7.76 (d, *J*=7.58 Hz, 1 H) 7.81 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H). MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{36}H_{32}O_5$ 544.2; found 545.2 [MH^+].

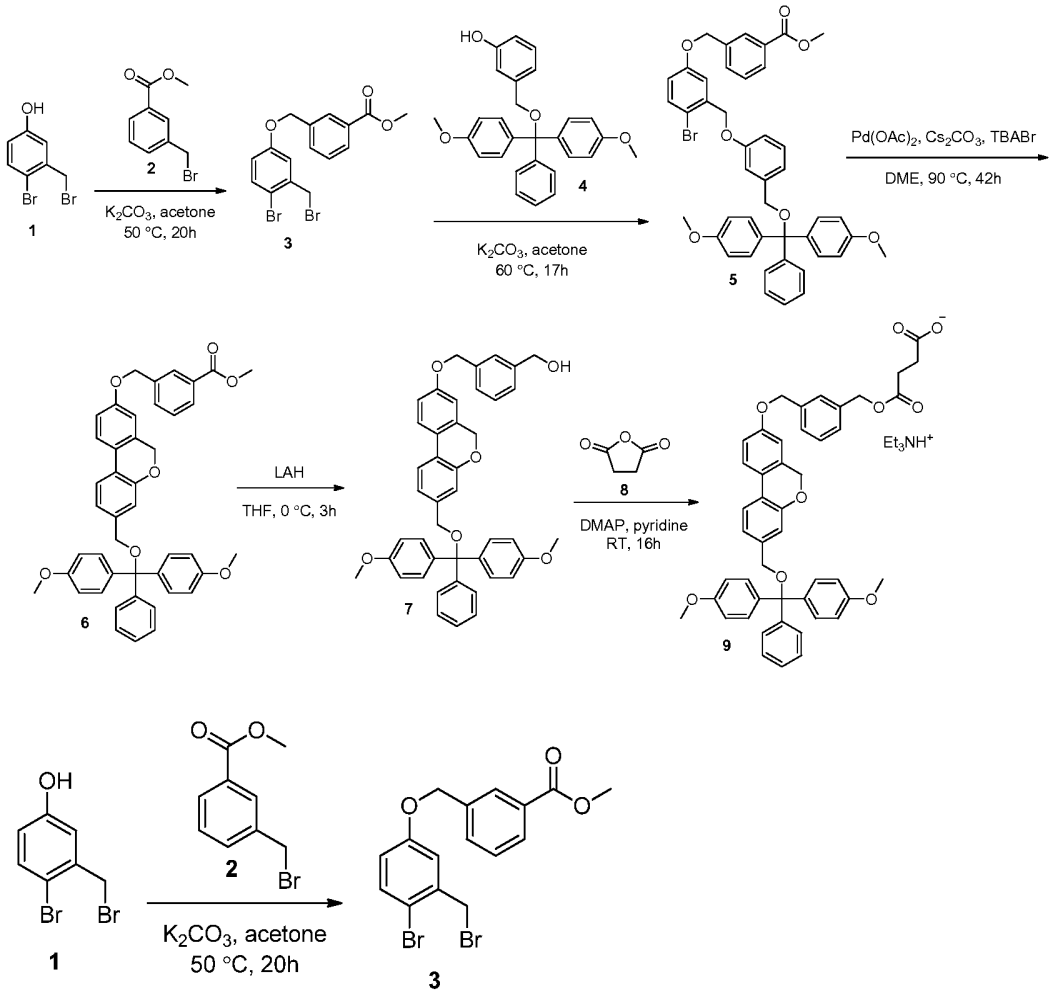


6 8

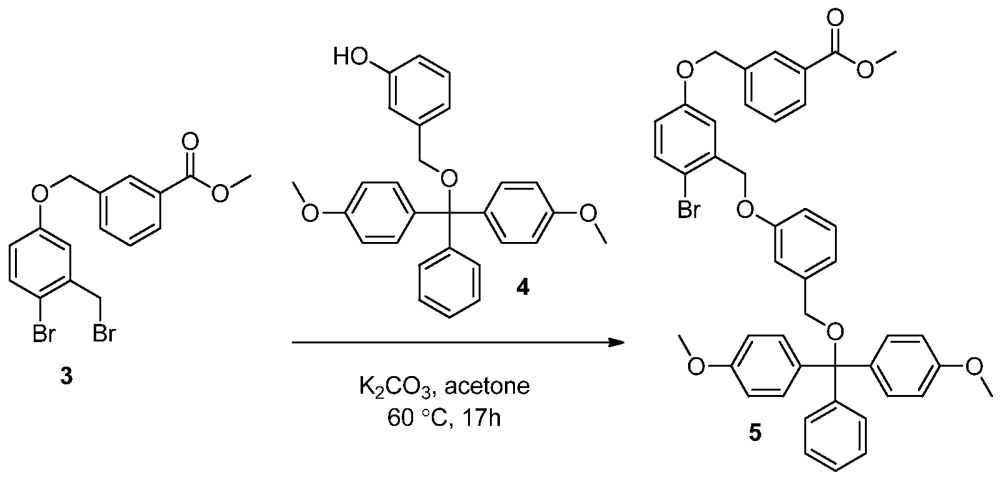
Dimethylaminopyridine (0.124 g, 1.02 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **6** (0.554g, 1.02 mmol) in pyridine (5 mL) at rt under argon. Succinic anhydride **7** (0.204g, 2.03mmol) was added and the solution was stirred at rt for 6 h. 0.5 mL H_2O was added, and the solution was stirred for 30 min. 100 mL of CH_2Cl_2 was added, and the solution was washed 1x with 50 mL

cold 10% aq. citric acid and 2x each with 50 mL of water. The aqueous fractions were re-extracted with 1x 50 mL of CH_2Cl_2. The combined organic fractions were dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered, concentrated under vacuum and then diluted/concentrated 2x with toluene. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol/triethylamine) (49:1/1%), giving **8** (0.78 g, 103%) as a foamy solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ ppm 1.45 (t, *J*=7.20 Hz, 2.5 H) 2.52 - 2.60 (m, 2 H) 2.65 - 2.71 (m, 2 H) 3.60 (q, *J*=7.33 Hz, 1.7 H) 3.79 (s, 6 H) 4.16 (s, 2 H) 5.12 (s, 2 H) 5.13 (s, 2 H) 6.82 - 6.87 (m, 4 H) 7.03 (dd, *J*=8.08, 1.26 Hz, 1 H) 7.08 (s, 1 H) 7.17 (s, 1 H) 7.19 - 7.25 (m, 1 H) 7.28 - 7.33 (m, 2 H) 7.33 - 7.37 (m, 1 H) 7.38 - 7.44 (m, 4 H) 7.49 - 7.54 (m, 2 H) 7.66 (t, *J*=7.83 Hz, 2 H)

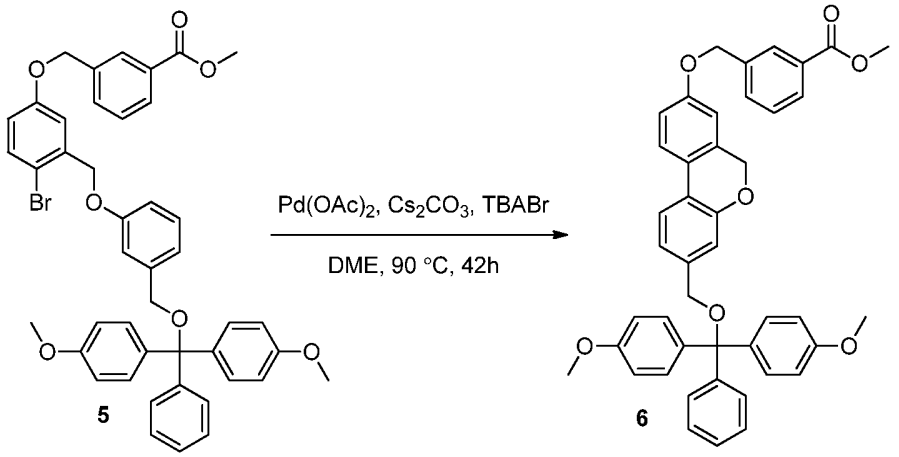
2.K. Synthesis of X066 succinate ester



To a 40 mL vial with septa were added 4-bromo-3-(bromomethyl)phenol (**1**, 0.360 g, 1.25 mmol), methyl 3-(bromomethyl)benzoate (**2**, 0.856 g, 3.74 mmol), K_2CO_3 (0.516 g, 3.74 mmol), and acetone (6 mL). The vial was evacuated/N_2 backfilled 2x, and heated at 50 °C for 20 h. after cooling to rt, the mixture was filtered washing with CH_2Cl_2, and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ehtyl aceteate/heptane), giving **3** (0.391 g, 62%) as a white solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.88 (s, 3 H) 4.67 (s, 2 H) 5.21 (s, 2 H) 6.98 (dd, *J*=8.59, 3.03 Hz, 1 H) 7.35 (d, *J*=3.03 Hz, 1 H) 7.52 - 7.58 (m, 2 H) 7.72 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H) 7.91 - 7.95 (m, 1 H) 8.05 (s, 1 H)

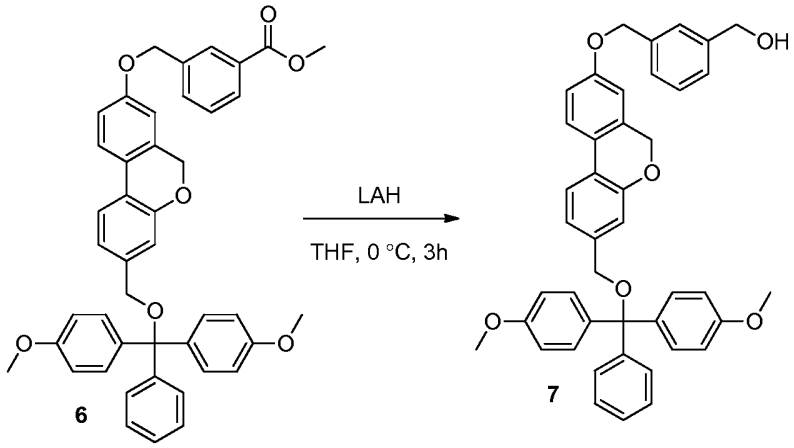


Synthesis of compound **4** is described in the synthesis of **X063**. To a 40 mL vial with a septa was added compounds **3** (0.390 g, 0.763 mmol), **4** (0.390 g, 0.915 mmol), K_2CO_3 (0.316 g, 2.29 mmol) and acetone (4 mL). The vial was sealed and the contents were evacuated/N_2 backfilled 2x. The vial was then heated at 60 °C for 17 h. After cooling to rt, the mixture was filtered washing with CH_2Cl_2, and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ehtyl aceteate/heptane/triethylamine), giving **5** (0.448 g, 77%) as a foamy solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.74 (s, 6 H) 3.85 (s, 3 H) 4.10 (s, 2 H) 5.08 (s, 2 H) 5.20 (s, 2 H) 6.87 - 6.92 (m, 4 H) 6.92 - 7.02 (m, 4 H) 7.19 - 7.26 (m, 3 H) 7.26 - 7.35 (m, 7 H) 7.39 - 7.45 (m, 2 H) 7.50 (t, *J*=7.83 Hz, 1 H) 7.56 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 1 H) 7.68 (d, *J*=7.58 Hz, 1 H) 7.90 (d, *J*=7.58 Hz, 2 H) 8.02 (s, 1 H)

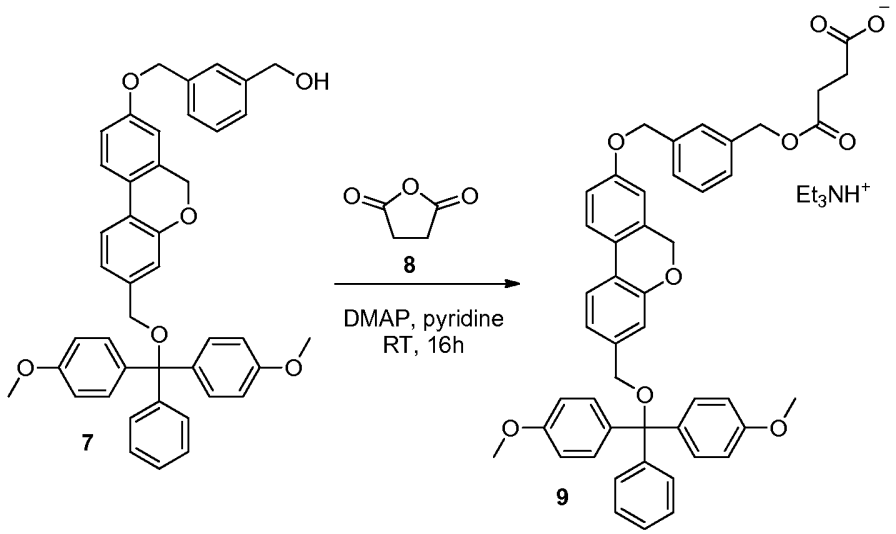


To compound **5** (0.540 g, 0.569 mmol) in a vial with a septa, was added dimethoxyethane (5.7 mL), Bu_4NBr (0.275 g, 0.853 mmol), Cs_2CO_3 (0.278 g, 0.853 mmol), and $Pd(OAc)_2$ (0.026 g, 0.11 mmol). The vial was sealed, degassed with two cycles of vacuum/N_2 backfill, and heated at 90 °C overnight. ~33% conversion was observed after 17 h by LCMS. An additional 0.100 g of $Pd(OAc)_2$ (0.44 mmol) was added, and the reacton was continued for an additional 24 h. After cooling to rt, the mixture was filtered through celite eluting with EtOAc. The solution was then washed 1 x each with aq. sat. $NaHCO_3$, water and brine. The organic portion was dried with

Na_2SO_4, filtered, and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ehtyl aceteate/heptane/triethylamine), giving **6** (0.105 g, 27%) as a foamy solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*6) δ ppm 3.75 (s, 6 H) 3.87 (s, 3 H) 4.08 (s, 2 H) 5.09 (s, 2 H) 5.24 (s, 2 H) 6.88- 6.95 (m, 5 H) 6.95 - 7.00 (m, 2 H) 7.05 (dd, *J*=8.34, 2.78 Hz, 2 H) 7.21 - 7.26 (m, 2 H) 7.29 - 7.36 (m, 6 H)7.39 - 7.46 (m, 2 H) 7.55 (t, *J*=7.83 Hz, 1 H) 7.69 - 7.77 (m, 3 H) 7.92 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H) 8.05 (s, 1 H)

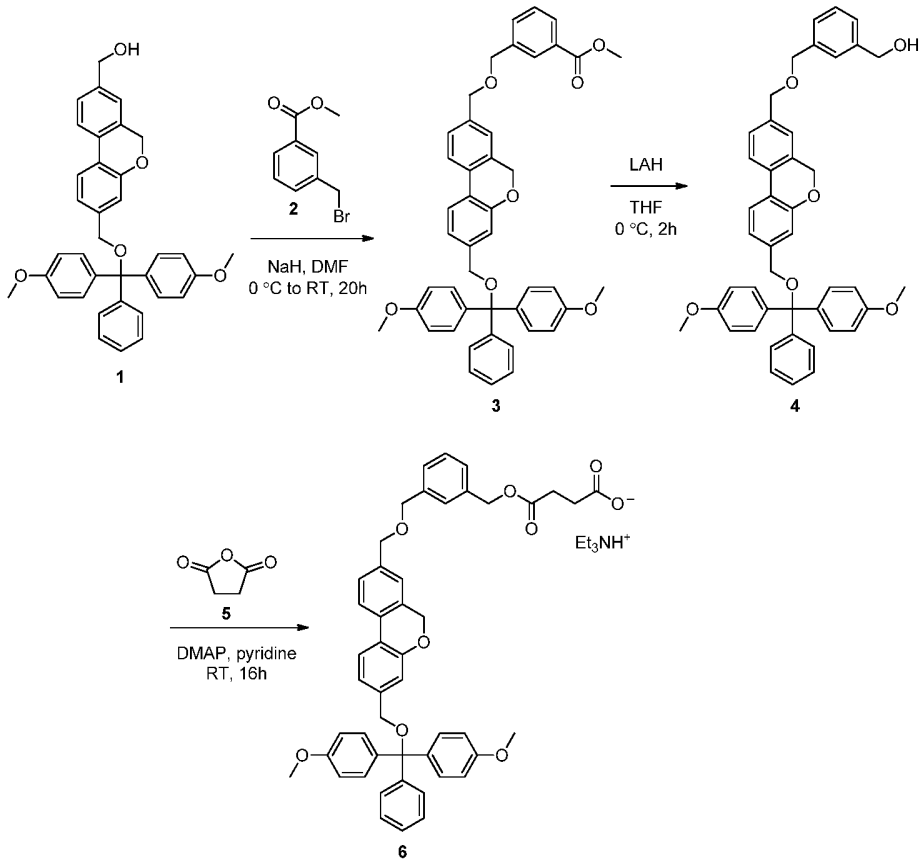


Compound **6** (0.135 g, 0.199 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was cooled to 0 °C, under an atmosphere of N_2. A 1M suspension of LAH in THF (0.477 mL, 0.477 mmol) was added dropwise, and the solution was stirred at 0 °C for 3 h. 1 mL EtOAc was added dropwise, and the solution was stirred at 0 °C for 20 min. 0.018 mL H_2O, 0.018 mL 20% aq. NaOH, and 0.054 mL H_2O were added successively, and the mixture was stirred at rt for 1 h. the mixture was dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered through celite washing with EtOAc, and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ehtyl aceteate/heptane/triethylamine), giving **7** (0.110 g, 85%) as a foamy solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.75 (s, 6 H) 4.08 (s, 2 H) 4.52 (d, *J*=5.56 Hz, 2 H) 5.04 (t, *J*=5.81 Hz, 1 H) 5.08 (s, 2 H) 5.14 (s, 2 H) 6.89 - 6.94 (m, 5 H) 6.95 (d, *J*=2.53 Hz, 1 H) 6.98 (dd, *J*=8.08, 1.52 Hz, 1 H) 7.03 (dd, *J*=8.59, 2.53 Hz, 1 H) 7.24 (t, *J*=7.33 Hz, 1 H) 7.26 - 7.37 (m, 9 H) 7.40 - 7.46 (m, 3 H) 7.72 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 2 H). MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{43}H_{38}O_6$ 650.3; found 303.4 [DMT^+].

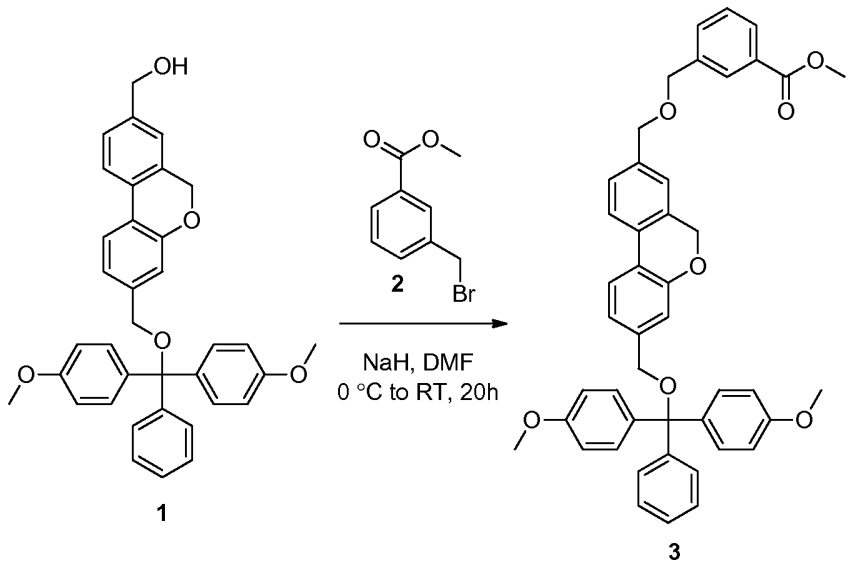


Dimethylaminopyridine (0.019 g, 0.157 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **7** (0.102 g, 0.157 mmol) in pyridine (3 mL) at rt under argon. Succinic anhydride **8** (0.031 g, 0.313 mmol) was added, and the solution was stirred at rt for 16 h. 0.5 mL of H_2O was added and the solution was stirred for 30 min. 50 mL of CH_2Cl_2 was added, the solution was washed 1x with 25 mL cold 10% aq. citric acid and 2x each with 25 mL of water. The aqueous fractions were re-extracted with 1x 25 mL of CH_2Cl_2. The organic fractions were dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered, concentrated under vacuum, and diluted/concentrated 2x with toluene. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol/triethylamine) (49:1/1%), giving **9** (0.10 g, 76%) as an oil. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ ppm 1.46 (t, *J*=7.33 Hz, 2.1 H) 2.57 (t, *J*=6.82 Hz, 2 H) 2.68 (t, *J*=6.82 Hz, 2 H) 3.61 (q, *J*=7.16 Hz,1.4 H) 3.80 (s, 6 H) 4.15 (s, 2 H) 5.09 (s, 2 H) 5.09 (s, 2 H) 5.15 (s, 2 H) 6.78 (d, *J*=2.53 Hz, 1 H) 6.82 - 6.88 (m, 4 H) 6.95 - 7.04 (m, 2 H) 7.06 (s, 1 H) 7.18 - 7.25 (m, 1 H) 7.28 - 7.36 (m, 3 H) 7.36 - 7.46 (m, 7 H) 7.50 - 7.55 (m, 2 H) 7.61 (dd, *J*=8.34, 2.27 Hz, 2 H)

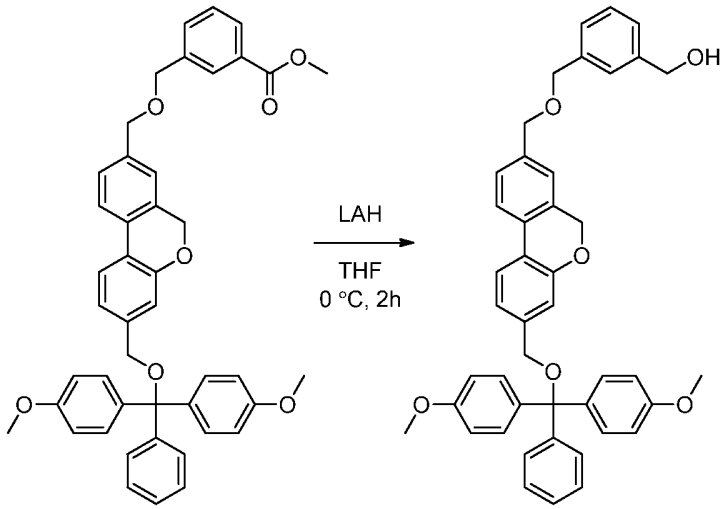
2.L. Synthesis of X051 succinate



ester

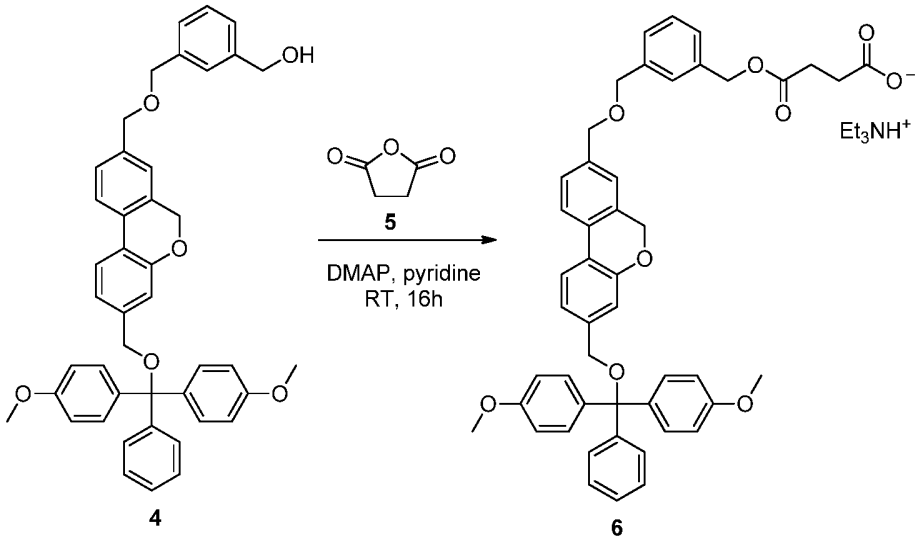


The synthesis of compound **1** is described in the synthesis of **X063**. Compound **1** (6.70 g, 12.3 mmol) was dissolved in THF (123 mL), evacuated/N_2 purged 2x, and cooled to 0 °C. A 60% dispersion of NaH in mineral oil was added (0.886 g, 36.9 mmol), and the mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 20 min. Methyl 3-(bromomethyl)benzoate (**2**, 3.38 g, 14.8 mmol) was then added, and the mixture was stirred at rt for 20 h. The reaction mixture was then diluted with 400 mL of EtOAc and washed 1x with 400 mL sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$. The aqueous layer was back-extracted with 200 mL of EtOAc, and the combined organic layers were washed 1x each with 400 mL water and brine. The organic portion was dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered, and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ehtyl aceteate/heptane/triethylamine), giving **3** (6.55 g, 77%) as a foamy solid. The product contained ~13% of the corresponding ethyl ester that was carried forward to the next step as an equivalent precursor. Methyl ester: ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 1.32 (t, *J*=7.07 Hz, 0.38 H) 3.74 (s, 6 H) 3.86 (s, 2.52 H) 4.08 (s, 2 H) 4.32 (q, *J*=7.07 Hz, 0.25 H) 4.58 (s, 2 H) 4.64 (s, 2 H) 5.14 (s, 2 H) 6.93 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 4 H) 6.97 (d, *J*=1.52 Hz, 1 H) 7.04 (dd, *J*=8.08, 1.52 Hz, 1 H) 7.25 (t, *J*=7.33 Hz, 1 H) 7.28 (s, 1 H) 7.31 (d, *J*=9.09 Hz, 4 H) 7.33 - 7.41 (m, 3 H) 7.44 (d, *J*=7.58 Hz, 2 H) 7.53 (t, *J*=7.83 Hz, 1 H) 7.66 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H) 7.80 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H) 7.83 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H) 7.90 (d, *J*=7.58 Hz, 1 H) 7.97 (s, 1 H)



3 4

Compound **3** in THF was cooled to 0 °C and placed under an atmosphere of N_2. A 1M suspension of LAH in THF (22.5 mL, 22.5 mmol) was added dropwise, and the solution was stirred at 0 °C for 2 h. 1 mL EtOAc was added dropwise, and the solution was stirred at 0 °C for 20 min. Then 0.86 mL H_2O, 0.86 mL 20% aq. NaOH, and 2.58 mL H_2O were added successively. The mixture was stirred at rt for 1 h, dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered through celite washing with EtOAc, and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (ehtyl aceteate/heptane/triethylamine), giving **4** (5.98 g, 96%) as a foamy solid. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.74 (s, 6 H) 4.08 (s, 2 H) 4.50 (d, *J*=6.06 Hz, 2 H) 4.55 (s, 2 H) 4.55 (s, 2 H) 5.14 (s, 2 H) 5.18 (t, *J*=5.81 Hz, 1 H) 6.93 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 4 H) 6.97 (d, *J*=1.01 Hz, 1 H) 7.01 - 7.06 (m, 1 H) 7.21 - 7.28 (m, 4 H) 7.28 - 7.33 (m, 5 H) 7.33 - 7.40 (m, 4 H) 7.41 - 7.46 (m, 2 H) 7.80 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H) 7.83 (d, *J*=8.08 Hz, 1 H). MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{44}H_{40}O_6$ 664.3; found 665.3 [MH^+].

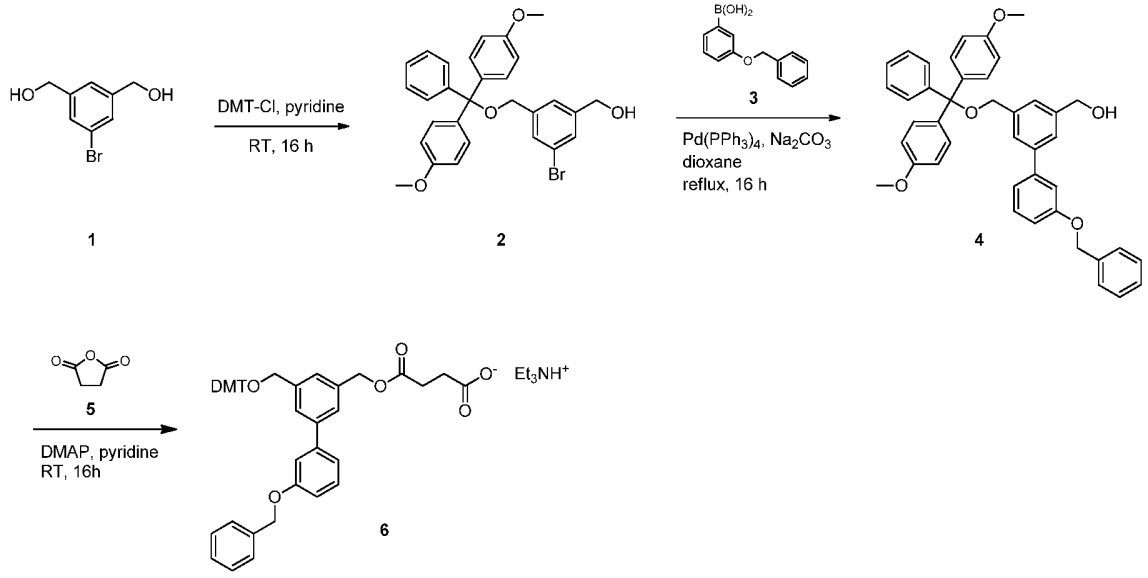


4 6

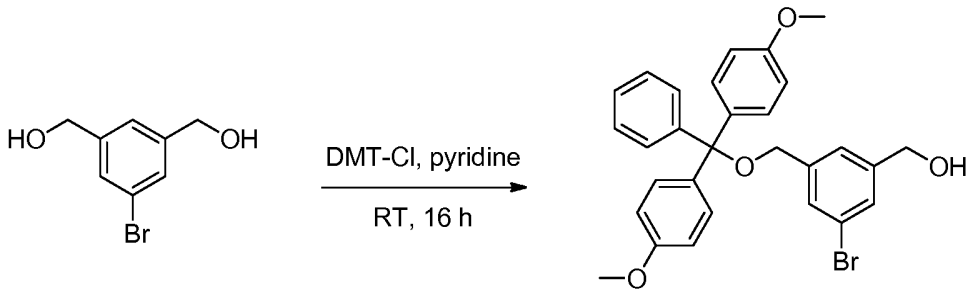
Dimethylaminopyridine (0.37 g, 3.01 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **4** (2.00 g, 3.01 mmol) in pyridine (15 mL) at rt under argon. Succinic anhydride **7** (0.60 g, 6.02 mmol) was

added, and the solution was stirred at rt for 17 h. 1 mL of H_2O was added and the solution was stirred for 1 h. 100 mL of CH_2Cl_2 was added, and the solution was washed 1x with 50 mL cold 10% aq. citric acid and 2x each with 50 mL of water. The aqueous fractions were re-extracted with 1x 50 mL of CH_2Cl_2. The combined organic fractions were dried with Na_2SO_4, filtered, concentrated under vacuum, and diluted/concentrated 2x with toluene. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol/triethylamine) (39:1/1%), giving **6** (2.48 g, 95%) as an oil. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ ppm 1.17 (t, *J*=7.33 Hz, 14.2 H) 2.56 (t, *J*=6.69 Hz, 2 H) 2.68 (t, *J*=7.45 Hz, 2 H) 2.84 (q, *J*=7.33 Hz, 9.5 H) 3.80 (s, 6 H) 4.16 (s, 2 H) 4.57 (s, 2 H) 4.58 (s, 2 H) 5.14 (s, 2 H) 5.14 (s, 2 H) 6.82 - 6.88 (m, 4 H) 7.01 - 7.05 (m, 1 H) 7.09 (s, 1 H) 7.18 (s, 1 H) 7.19 - 7.25 (m, 1 H) 7.28 - 7.34 (m, 5 H) 7.34 - 7.38 (m, 2 H) 7.39 - 7.44 (m, 4 H) 7.49 - 7.55 (m, 2 H) 7.68 (dd, *J*=7.96, 4.42 Hz, 2 H)

2.M. Synthesis of X097 succinate ester

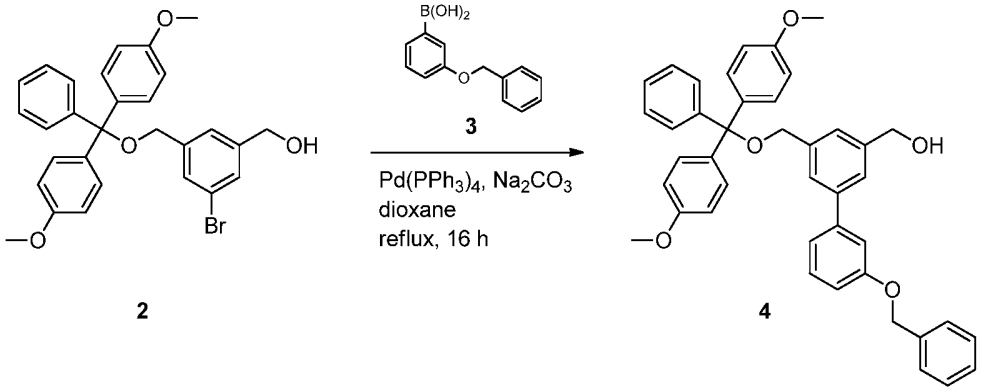


Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of **6**.



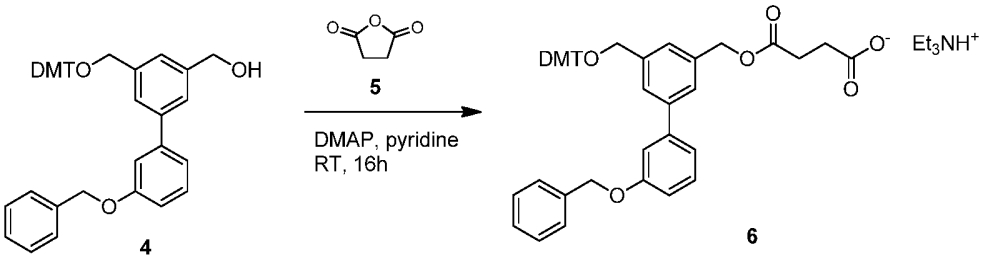
(3-((bis(4-methoxyphenyl)(phenyl)methoxy)methyl)-5-bromophenyl)methanol (**2**):
A solution of 5-bromo-1,3-dihydroxymethyl benzene **1** (3.00 g, 13.8 mmol), 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (4.68 g, 13.8 mmol) in pyridine (60 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 16 h. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and water. The EtOAc layer was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography

eluting with 1% Et_3N in 5-30% EtOAc/Heptane to provide 2.57 g (36 %) of **2**. MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{29}H_{27}BrO_4$ 518.1; found 303.5 $[DMT]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.54 – 7.48 (m, 2H), 7.47 – 7.37 (m, 6H), 7.36 – 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.27 – 7.21 (m, 2H), 6.87 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 4H), 4.67 (d, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 2H), 4.22 (s, 2H), 3.82 (s, 6H), 1.67 (t, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 1H).



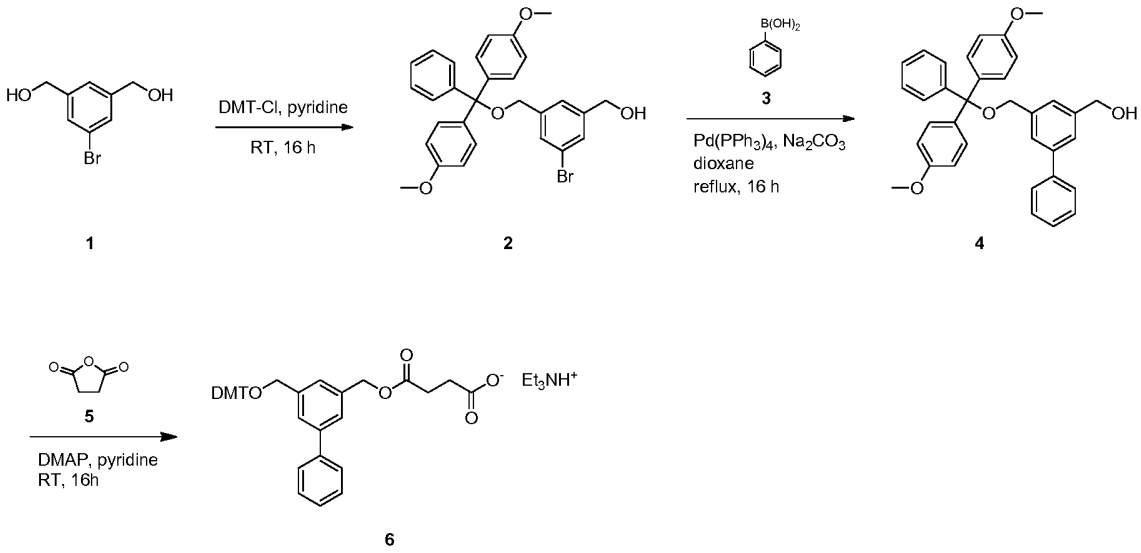
(3'-(benzyloxy)-5-((bis(4-methoxyphenyl)(phenyl)methoxy)methyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-3-yl)methanol (**4**):

To a mixture of bromide **2** (0.50 g, 0.963 mmol), 3-benzyloxybenzene boronic acid **3** (0.263 g, 1.155 mmol) and $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ (0.111 g, 0.096 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (6 mL) under nitrogen atmosphere was added 2M aq. Na_2CO_3 (1.44 mL). The mixture was heated at reflux overnight. The reaction is then cooled to room temperature and partitioned between EtOAc and sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$. The organic layer was evaporated and the crude product was purified by flash chromatography eluting with 1% Et_3N in 5-30% EtOAc/Heptane to provide 0.454 g (70 %) of **4**. MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{42}H_{38}O_5$ 622.3; found 303.5 $[DMT]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 7.52 – 7.43 (m, 5H), 7.41 – 7.29 (m, 12H), 7.27 – 7.16 (m, 3H), 7.01 (m, 1H), 6.95 – 6.86 (m, 4H), 5.18 (s, 2H), 5.07 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 4.57 (d, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 4.18 (s, 2H), 3.74 (s, 6H).

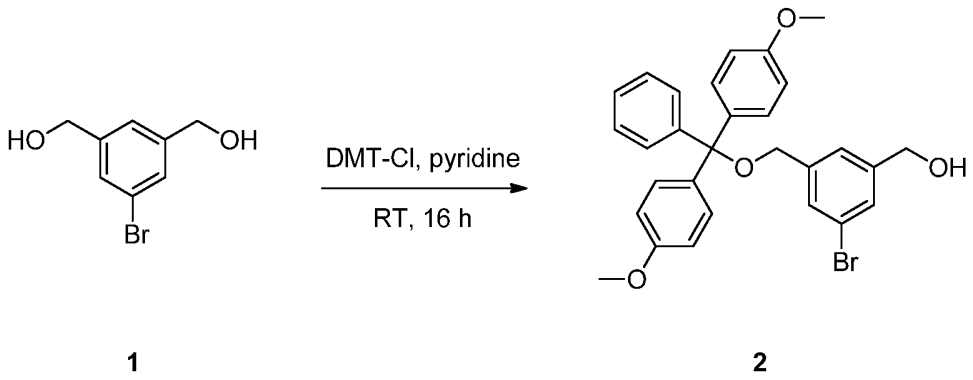


To a solution of 452 mg (0.726 mmol) **4** and 89 mg (0.726 mmol) N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) in 5 mL dry pyridine under argon was added 145 mg (1.45 mmol) succinic anhydride (**5**). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 h and then 0.5 mL water was added. Stirring was continued for 30 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with 100 mL dichloromethane and washed with 50 mL ice-cold 10% aqueous citric acid and water (2 x 50 mL). The aqueous layers were reextracted with 50 mL dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The remaining oil was coevaporated twice with toluene and the crude product purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane / methanol / triethylamine 94:5:1) to give 510 mg (0.619 mmol, 85%) **6** as a colorlessfoam. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.22 (t, J=7.3 Hz, 9 H), 2.57 - 2.59 (m, 2 H), 2.67 - 2.69 (m, 2 H), 2.97 (q, J=7.3 Hz, 6 H), 3.79 (s, 6 H), 4.24 (s, 2 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.72 (s br., 1 H), 6.84 - 6.88 (m, 4 H), 6.98 (ddd, *J* = 0.7, 2.2, 8.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.19 - 7.54 (m, 20 H).

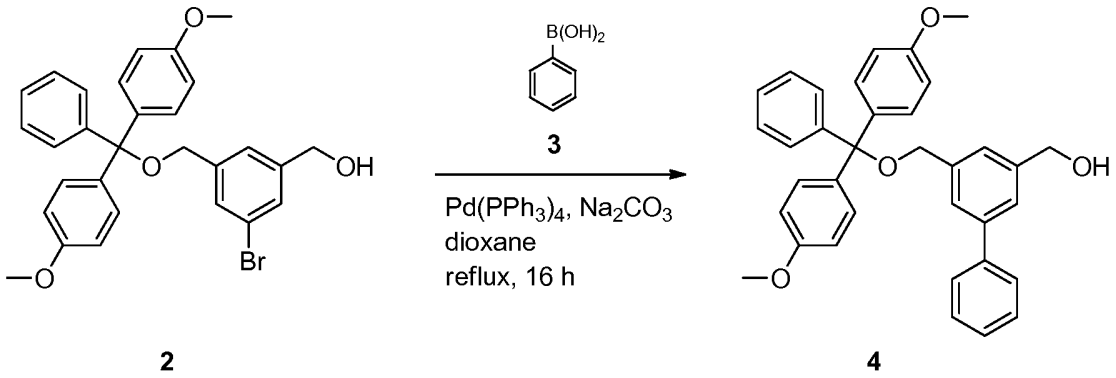
2.N. Synthesis of X098 succinate ester



Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of **6**.

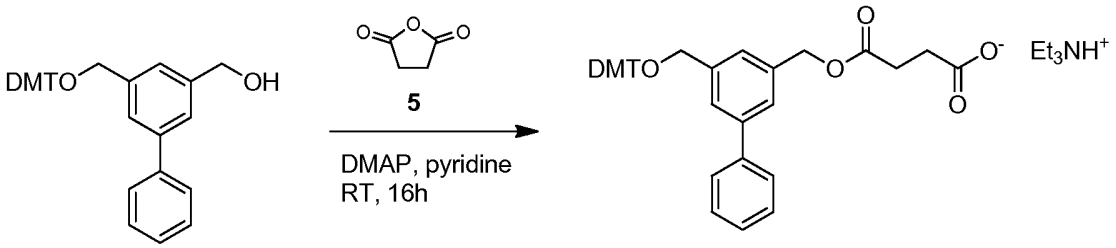


(3-((bis(4-methoxyphenyl)(phenyl)methoxy)methyl)-5-bromophenyl)methanol (**2**):
Same as above
A solution of 5-bromo-1,3-dihydroxymethyl benzene **1** (3.00 g, 13.8 mmol), 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (4.68 g, 13.8 mmol) in pyridine (60 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 16 h. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and water. The EtOAc layer was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography eluting with 1% Et_3N in 5-30% EtOAc/Heptane to provide 2.57 g (36 %) of **2**. MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{29}H_{27}BrO_4$ 518.1; found 303.5 $[DMT]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.54 – 7.48 (m, 2H), 7.47 – 7.37 (m, 6H), 7.36 – 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.27 – 7.21 (m, 2H), 6.87 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 4H), 4.67 (d, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 2H), 4.22 (s, 2H), 3.82 (s, 6H), 1.67 (t, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 1H).



2 4

(5-((bis(4-methoxyphenyl)(phenyl)methoxy)methyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-3-yl)methanol (4): To a mixture of the bromide **2** (0.500 g, 0.960 mmol), benzene boronic acid **3** (0.141 g, 1.16 mmol), and $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ (0.111 g, 0.096 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (6 mL) under nitrogen atmosphere was added 2M aq. Na_2CO_3 (1.44 mL). The mixture was heated at reflux overnight. The reaction was then cooled to room temperature and partitioned between EtOAc and sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$. The organic layer was evaporated and the crude product was purified by flash chromatography eluting with 1% Et_3N in 5-30% EtOAc/Heptane to provide 0.380 g (76 %) of **4**. MS (ESI+) *m/z:* calcd for $C_{35}H_{32}O_4$ 516.2; found 303.5 $[DMT]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 7.61 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 1.3 Hz, 2H), 7.51 – 7.42 (m, 5H), 7.39 – 7.28 (m, 9H), 7.27 – 7.20 (m, 1H), 6.95 – 6.86 (m, 4H), 5.08 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 4.57 (d, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 4.19 (s, 2H), 3.74 (s, 6H).



4 6

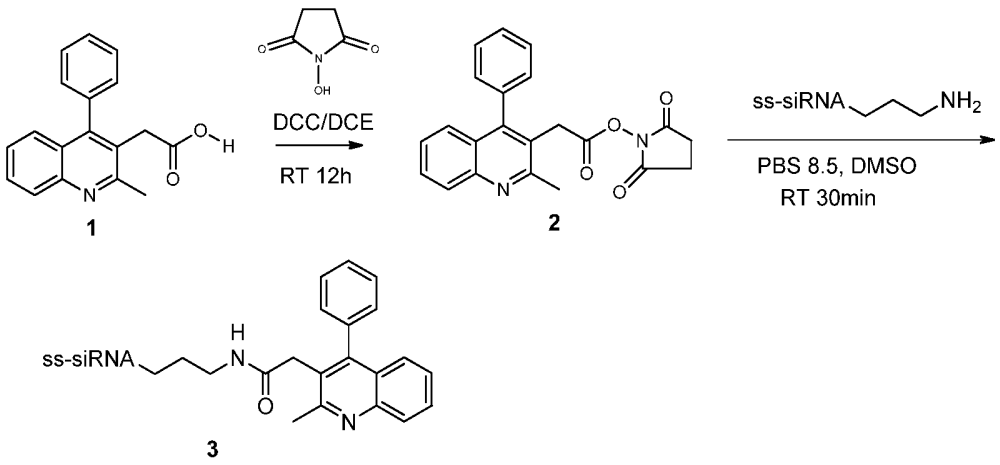
To a solution of 380 mg (0.736 mmol) **4** and 90 mg (0.736 mmol) N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) in 5 mL dry pyridine under argon was added 147 mg (1.47 mmol) succinic anhydride (**5**). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 h and then 0.5 mL water was added. Stirring was continued for 30 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with 100 mL dichloromethane and washed with 50 mL ice-cold 10% aqueous citric acid and water (2 x 50 mL). The aqueous layers were reextracted with 50 mL dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over Na_2SO_4 and evaporated. The remaining oil was coevaporated twice with toluene and the crude product purified by silica gel chromatography (dichloromethane / methanol / triethylamine 94:5:1) to give 460 mg (0.641 mmol, 87%) **6** as an off-white foam. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.22 (t, J=7.2 Hz, 9 H), 2.59 (t, J=7.1 Hz, 2 H), 2.71 (t, J=7.1 Hz, 2 H), 2.94 (q, J=7.2 Hz, 6 H), 3.81 (s, 6 H), 4.26 (s, 2 H), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 6.04 (s br., 1 H), 6.85 - 6.89 (m, 4 H), 7.22 - 7.55 (m, 15 H), 7.62 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 2 H).

2.O. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X109

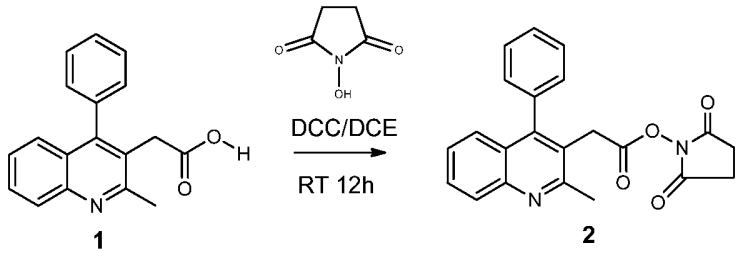
ss-siRNA = antisense single strand sequence used in conjugation = U002pUpApApU004pU004pApU004pCpU004pApU004pU004pCpCpGpU005pA005pC027 (SEQ ID NO: 44)
002 = DNA
004 = 2'Ome
005 = 2'MOE
C027 = ribitol
p = phosphate

Thus, in this and various other sequences disclosed herein, U004 indicates a nucleotide with a U base with a 2'Ome modification; U002 indicates a nucleotide with a U base which is DNA; U005 indicates a base with a U base with a 2'MOE modification. Similarly, other nucleotides are modified, e.g., C004 indicates a nucleotide with a C base and a 2'Ome modification.

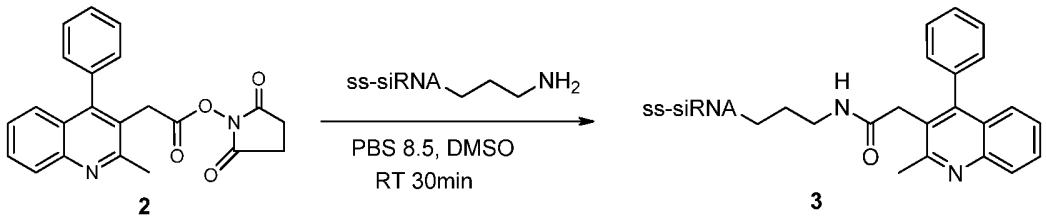
X006 = O-(CH_2)-NH_2



Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of **3**.

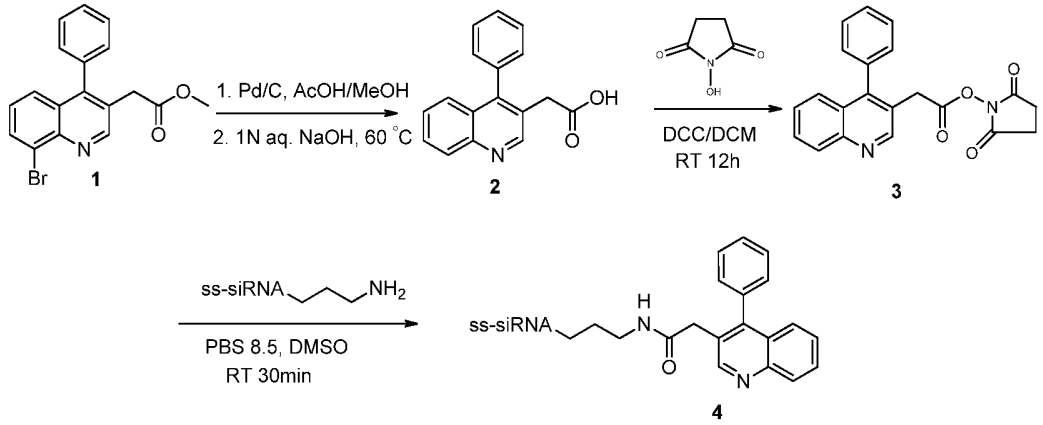


A mixture of **1** (100 mg, 0.361mmol), N-hydroxysuccinimide (83 mg, 0.721mmol) and DCC (149 mg, 0.721 mmol) in DCE (4 mL) was stirred at RT for 12h. The reaction mixture was quenched with sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$ (4 mL). The organic layer was separated from the water layer, and was washed with water (1 mL) and brine (1 mL). The organic solvent was removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by recrystallization from methanol to give **2** (27.7 mg, 0.074 mmol) in 21% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 375.4; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 2.85 (d, *J*=5.52 Hz, 4 H) 2.89 (s, 3 H) 3.94 (s, 2 H) 7.31 - 7.48 (m, 4 H) 7.49 - 7.64 (m, 3 H) 7.71 (t, *J*=6.78 Hz, 1 H) 8.12 (br. s., 1 H).

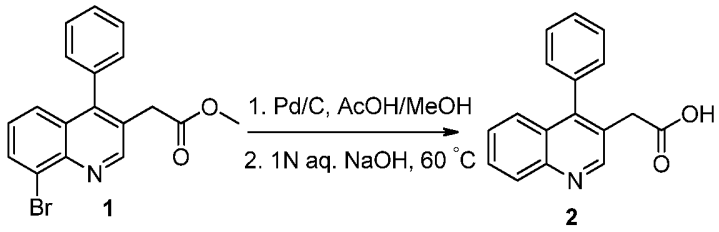


To **2** (2.23 mg, 5.96 umol) in DMSO (73.2 uL) was added a freshly prepared ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (3.66 mg, 0.596 umol in 73.2 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 30 min. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 5-60% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **3** (1.09 mg, 0.164 umol) in 27.5% yield. TOF MS (ES^-): 6403.

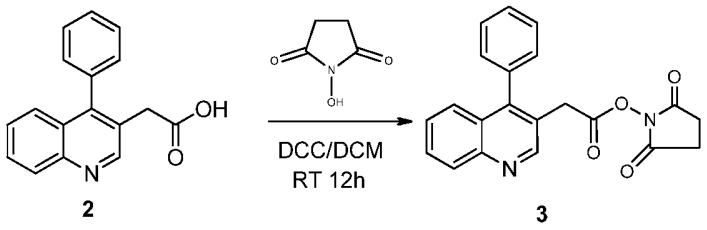
2.P. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X110



Scheme 2: Overview of the synthesis of **4**.

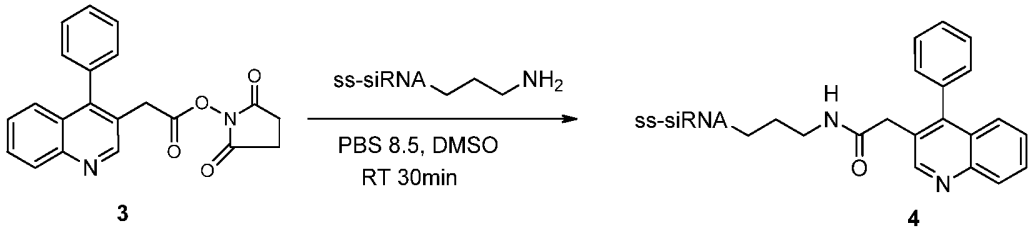


A mixture of **1** (500 mg, 1.40 mmol), Pd (30% on carbon, 24.9 mg, 0.070 mmol), and acetic acid (80 ul, 1.40 mmol) in methanol (15 mL) was stirred at RT under H_2 (1 atm) for 12h. The reaction mixture was filtered to remove Pd/C. To the solution was added aq. 1M NaOH (3 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated at 60 °C for 12h. The mixture was cooled to RT and neutralized with aq. 1M HCl to give form a precipitate. The precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and dried in the oven to give **2** (166 mg, 0.63 mmol) with 45% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 264.4. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.58 (s, 2 H) 7.18 - 7.39 (m, 3 H) 7.44 - 7.65 (m, 4 H) 7.75 (ddd, *J*=8.28, 6.78, 1.51 Hz, 1 H) 8.01 - 8.20 (m, 1 H) 8.91 (s, 1 H) 12.47 (s, 1 H).



2 3

A mixture of **2** (87.6 mg, 0.333 mmol), *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (77.0 mg, 0.665 mmol) and DCC (137 mg, 0.665 mmol) in DCM (4 mL) was stirred at RT for 12h. The reaction mixture was quenched with sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$ (4 mL). The organic layer was separated from the water layer, and was washed with water (1 mL) and brine (1mL). The organic solvent was removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by recrystallization from methanol to give **3** (27.7 mg, 0.074 mmol) in 49% yield. ESI MS(m/z, MH^+): 361.2. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 2.79 (br. s., 4 H) 4.05 (s, 2 H) 7.29 - 7.37 (m, 2 H) 7.40 (s, 1 H) 7.50 - 7.64 (m, 4 H) 7.80 (s, 1 H) 8.10 (s, 1 H) 9.02 (s, 1 H).

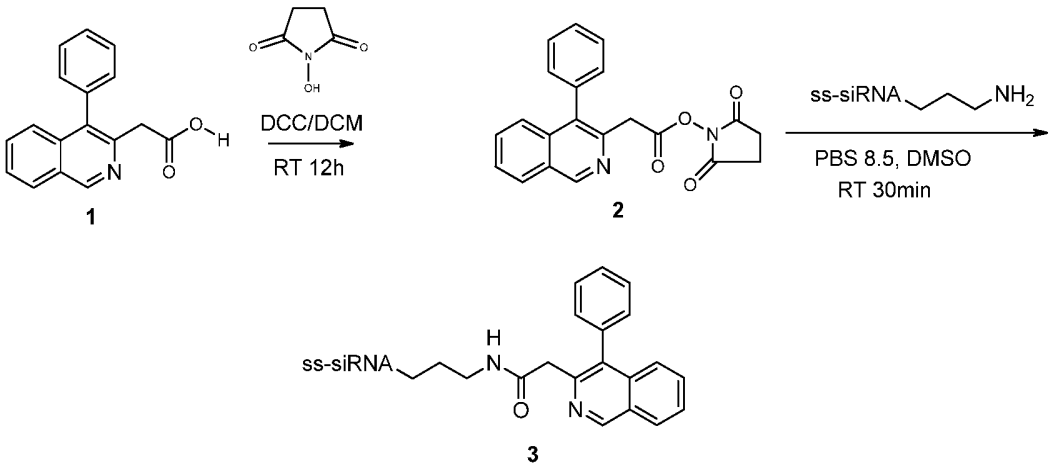


3 4

To **3** (1.76 mg, 4.88 umol) in DMSO (240 uL) was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2 mg, 0.325 umol in 40 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 30min. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 5-60% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **4** (0.526 mg, 0.082 umol) in 25% yield. TOF MS (ES^-): 6388.

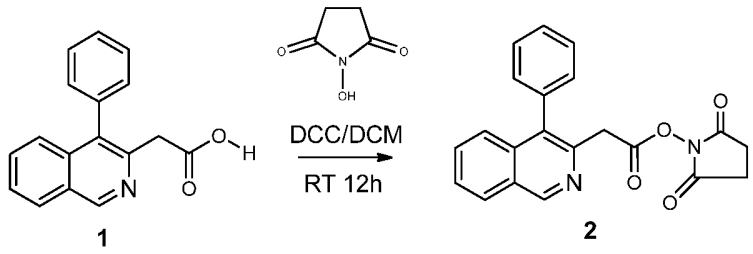
2. Q. **Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X111**

1 is commercial, but synthesis is not known in the literature



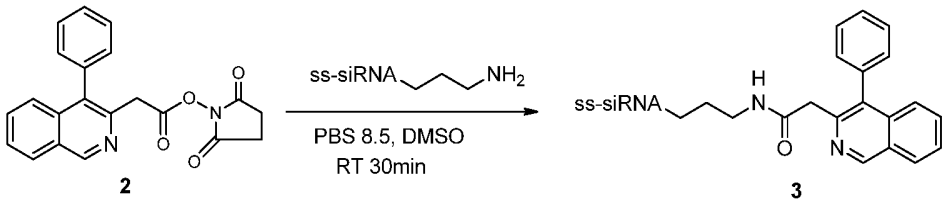
1 2 3

Scheme 3: Overview of the synthesis of **3**.



1 **2**

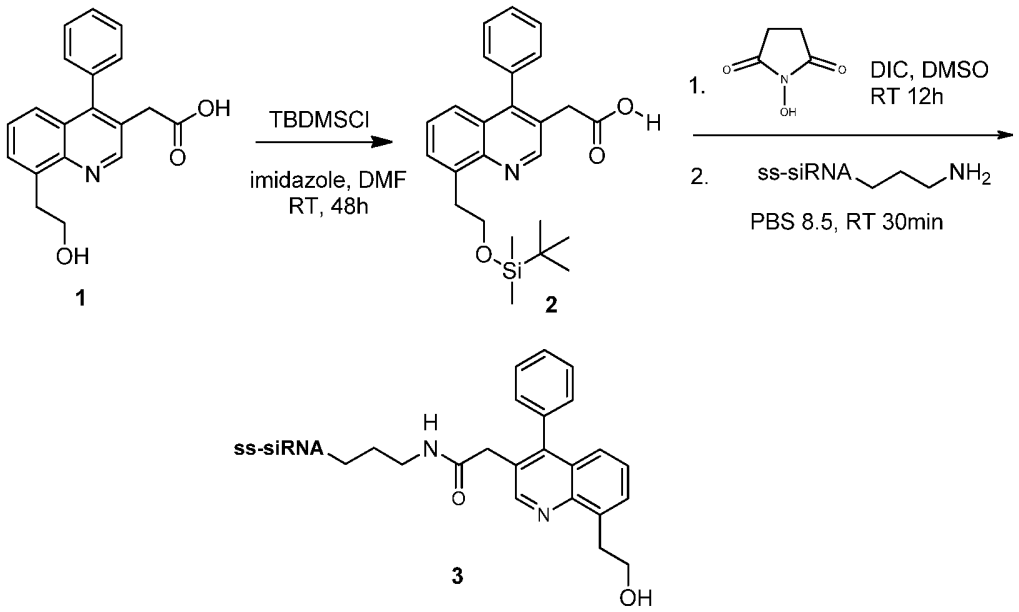
A mixture of **1** (81 mg, 0.308 mmol), *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (70.8 mg, 0.615 mmol) and DCC (127 mg, 0.615 mmol) in DCM (4 mL) was stirred at RT for 12h. The reaction mixture was quenched with sat. aq. $NaHCO_3$ (4 mL). The organic layer was separated from the water layer, and was washed with water (1 mL) and brine (1 mL). The organic solvent was removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by recrystallization from methanol to give **2** (43.7 mg, 0.121 mmol) in 39% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 361.4. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, METHANOL-d_4) δ ppm 2.82 (s, 4 H) 4.07 (s, 2 H) 7.36 - 7.42 (m, 2 H) 7.46 - 7.51 (m, 1 H) 7.55 - 7.64 (m, 3 H) 7.70 - 7.77 (m, 2 H) 8.20 (dt, *J*=4.52, 2.26 Hz, 1 H) 9.29 (s, 1 H).



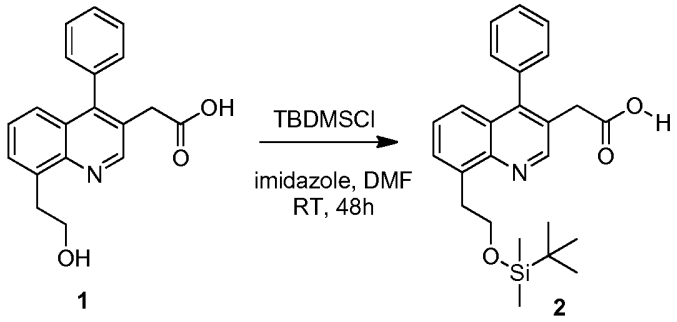
2 **3**

To **2** (2.35 mg, 6.51 umol) in DMSO (240 uL) was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2 mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 30min. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 5-60% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **3** (0.68 mg, 0.082 umol) in 33% yield. TOF MS (ES^-): 6390.

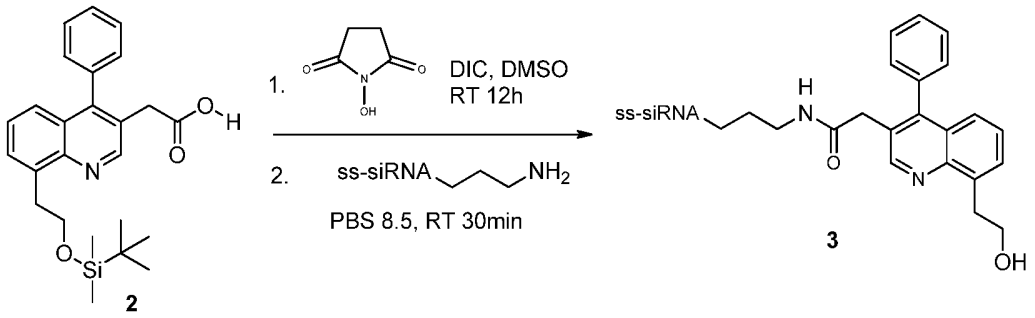
2.R. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X112



Scheme 4: Overview of the synthesis of **3**.



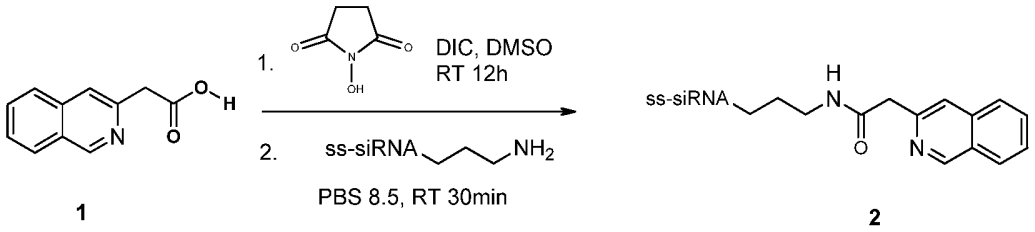
A mixture of **1** (100 mg, 0.325 mmol), tert-butylchlorodimethylsilane (108 mg, 0.716 mmol) and imidazole (91 mg, 1.33 mmol) in DMF (4 mL) was stirred at RT for 48h. The reaction mixture was quenched with water (4 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 5mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by silica chromatography with 0-50% ethyl acetate/heptane to give **2** (55 mg, 0.13 mmol) in 40% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 422.2. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 0.04 (m, 6 H) 0.88 - 0.93 (m, 9 H) 3.59 (t, *J*=6.78 Hz, 2 H) 3.71 (s, 2 H) 4.09 (t, *J*=6.78 Hz, 2 H) 7.28 - 7.45 (m, 4 H) 7.51 - 7.61 (m, 3 H) 7.63 - 7.68 (m, 1 H) 9.00 (s, 1 H).



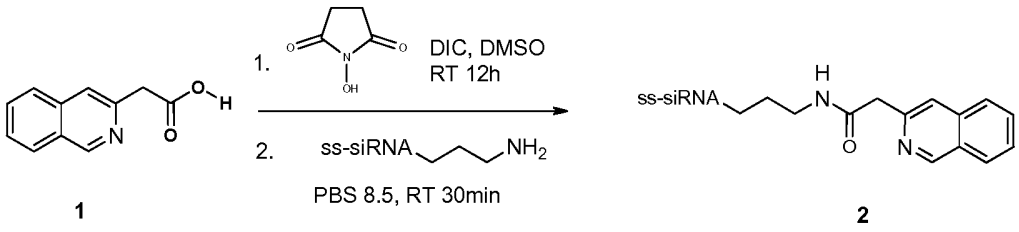
A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.73 mg, 0.024 mmol), **2** (5.0 mg, 0.012 mmol), and DIC (2 mg, 0.325 umol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2.19 mg, 0.356 umol in 80ul PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **3** (0.79 mg, 0.123 umol) in 35% yield. TOF MS (ES^-): 6435.

2.S. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X113

1 is commercial and synthesis is known in the literature. Zhang, Yan et al. From PCT Int. Appl., 2010083384, 22 Jul 2010.

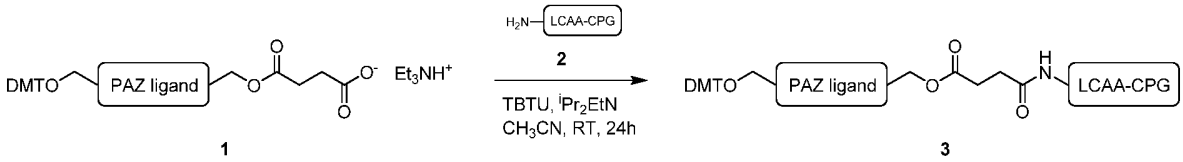


Scheme 5: Overview of the synthesis of **2**.



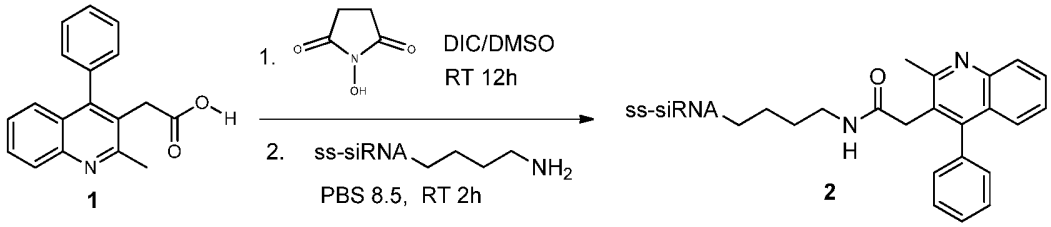
A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (6.18 mg, 0.054 mmol), **1** (5.0 mg, 0.027 mmol), and DIC (6.77 mg, 0.054 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2.46 mg, 0.401 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2** (0.24 mg, 0.038 umol) in 10% yield. TOF MS (ES^-): 6315.

2. S. 1. General procedure for the high density loading of controlled pore glass supports with PAZ ligand succinates

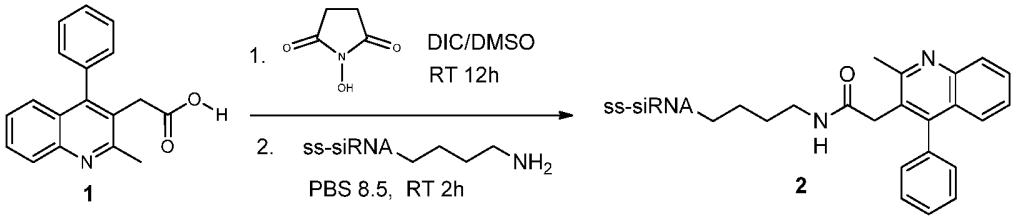


In an Erlenmeyer flask 1.00 mmol PAZ ligand succinate salt **1** was dissolved in 50 mL dry acetonitrile under argon. To this solution 353 mg (1.10mmol) O-(1H-benzo-1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-N,N,N´,N´-tetramethyl-uronium tetrafluoroborate (TBTU) was added and the solution shaken for 10 min. Then 10g long chain alkylamine controlled pore glass (LCAA/CNA-600-CPG, PrimeSynthesis, **2**) was added and the reaction mixture gently agitated for 5 min. Finally, 0.685 mL (517 mg, 4.00 mmol) Hünig's base was added and the flask gently shaken for 24 h on an orbital shaker. Loading density was assessed by detritylating an aliquote of the CPG (3-5 mg CPG washed with acetonitrile, dried in vacuo, added to 25 mL 3% dichloroacetic acid in dichloromethane (v/v), absorbance at 504 nm determined). If loading density was in the desired range (60 – 90 micromol / g), the CPG was filtered off and washed extensively with acetonitrile. Underivatized amino groups were capped by treating the CPG with x mL each of a mixture of acetic anhydride / 2,6-lutidine / THF 1:1:8 (v/v/v) and a solution of 1-methylimidazole in THF 16:84 (v/v). The mixture was gently shaken for 15 min at room temperature. Then the CPG was filtered off, washed with acetonitrile and dried under vacuum overnight. Loading density was determined again as above. Loading yields for the succinates in examples 1 – 6 were in the range of 64 - 75 micromol / g.

2. T. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1011

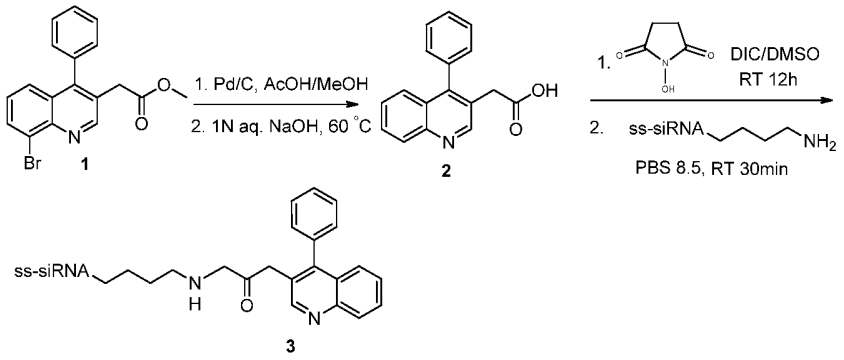


Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of **2**.

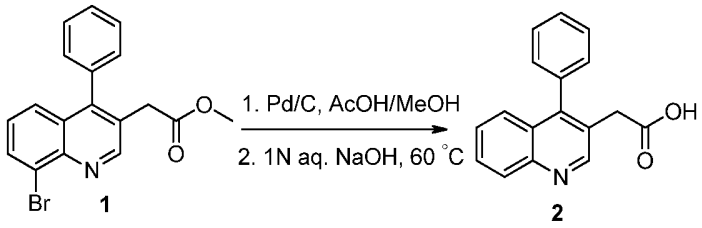


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.489 mg, 0.022 mmol), **1** (3.0 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.73 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_4$-NH_2 solution (2.00 mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6418.

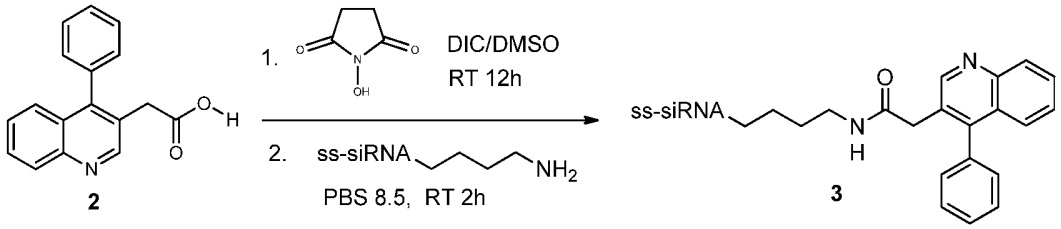
2. U. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1012 and X1018



Scheme 2: Overview of the synthesis of **3**.

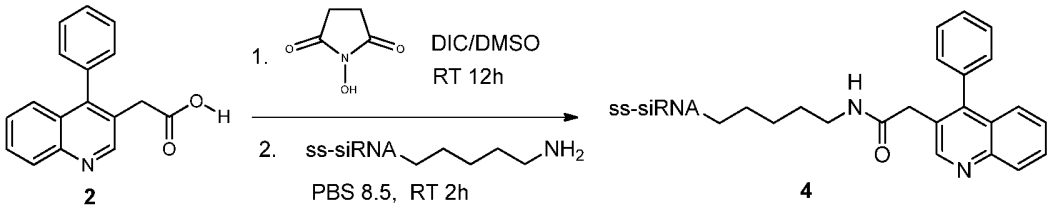


A mixture of **1** (500 mg, 1.40 mmol), Pd (30% on carbon, 24.9 mg, 0.070 mmol), and acetic acid (80 ul, 1.40 mmol) in methanol (15 mL) was stirred at RT under H_2 (1 atm) for 12h. The reaction mixture was filtered to remove Pd/C. To the solution was added aq. 1M NaOH (3 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated at 60 °C for 12h. The mixture was cooled to RT and neutralized with aq. 1M HCl to give form a precipitate. The precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and dried in the oven to give **2** (166 mg, 0.63 mmol) with 45% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 264.4. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 3.58 (s, 2 H) 7.18 - 7.39 (m, 3 H) 7.44 - 7.65 (m, 4 H) 7.75 (ddd, *J*=8.28, 6.78, 1.51 Hz, 1 H) 8.01 - 8.20 (m, 1 H) 8.91 (s, 1 H) 12.47 (s, 1 H).



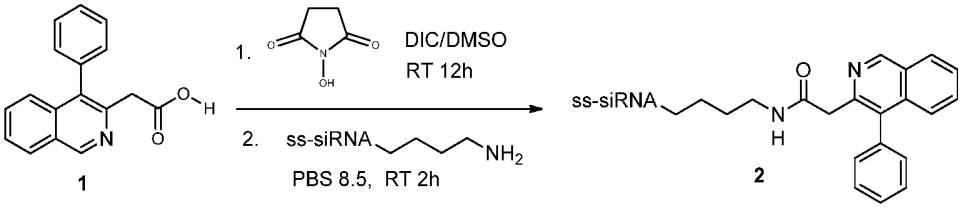
A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.489 mg, 0.022 mmol), **2** (2.85 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.73 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_4$-NH_2 solution (2.00 mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **3**. ESI MS (ES^+): 6405.

2. U. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1018

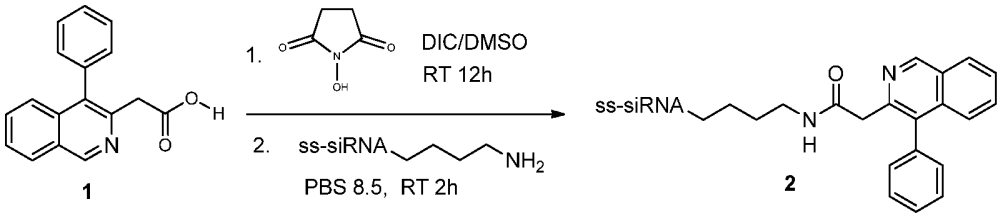


Scheme 3: Overview of the synthesis of **4**
A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.483 mg, 0.022 mmol), **2** (2.84 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.72 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_5$-NH_2 solution (2.00 mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **4**.

2. V. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1013

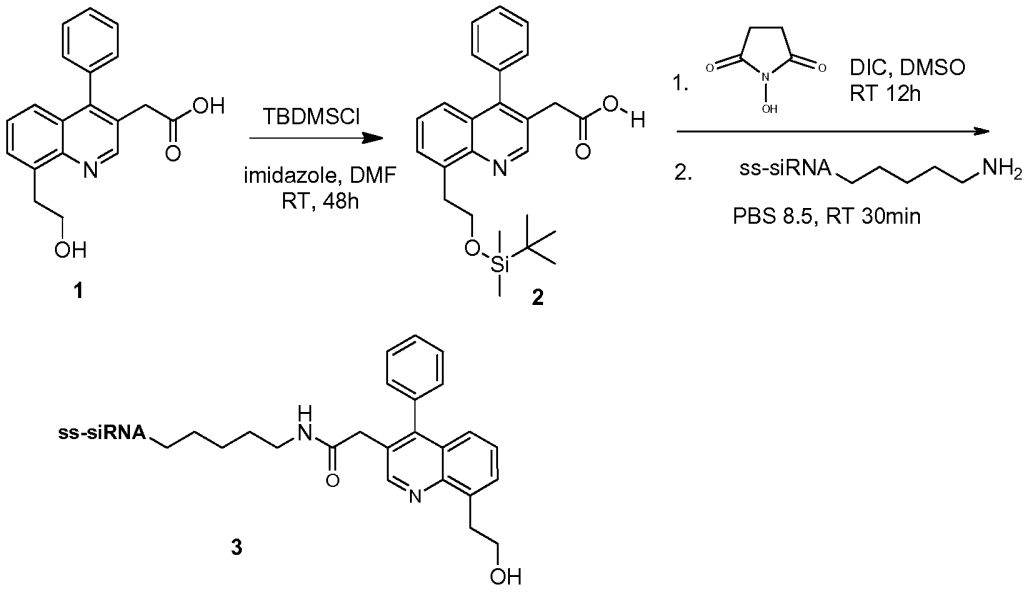


Scheme 4: Overview of the synthesis of **2**.

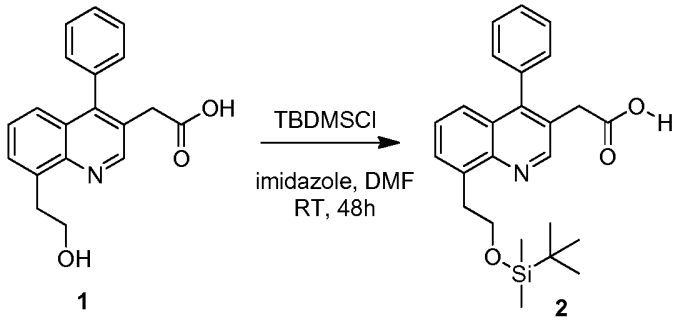


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.489 mg, 0.022 mmol), **2** (2.85 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.73 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_4$-NH_2 solution (2.00 mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6404.

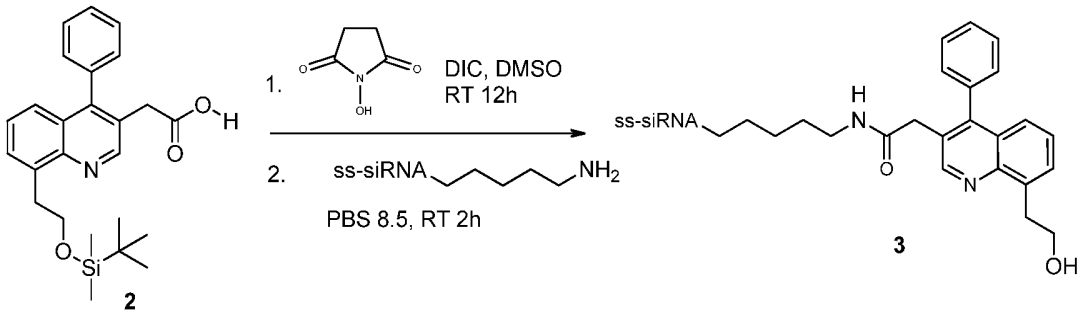
2.W. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1019



Scheme 5: Overview of the synthesis of **3**.

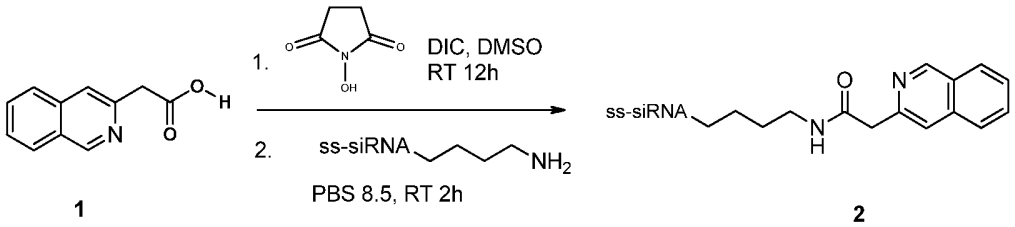


A mixture of **1** (100 mg, 0.325 mmol), tert-butylchlorodimethylsilane (108 mg, 0.716 mmol) and imidazole (91 mg, 1.33 mmol) in DMF (4 mL) was stirred at RT for 48h. The reaction mixture was quenched with water (4 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 5mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by silica chromatography with 0-50% ethyl acetate/heptane to give **2** (55 mg, 0.13 mmol) in 40% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 422.2. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 0.04 (m, 6 H) 0.88 - 0.93 (m, 9 H) 3.59 (t, *J*=6.78 Hz, 2 H) 3.71 (s, 2 H) 4.09 (t, *J*=6.78 Hz, 2 H) 7.28 - 7.45 (m, 4 H) 7.51 - 7.61 (m, 3 H) 7.63 - 7.68 (m, 1 H) 9.00 (s, 1 H).

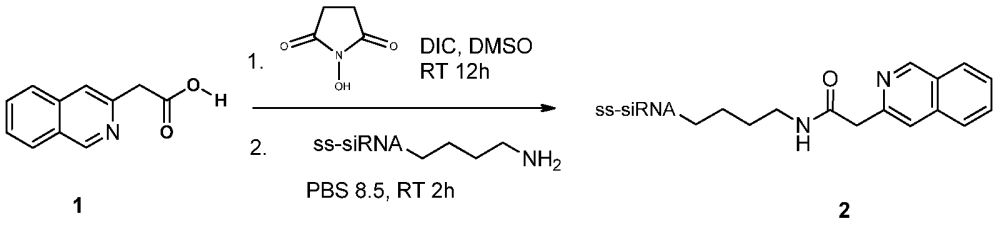


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.48 mg, 0.022 mmol), **2** (4.55mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.72 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2 mg, 0.324 umol in 80ul PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **3**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6462.

2. X. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1015

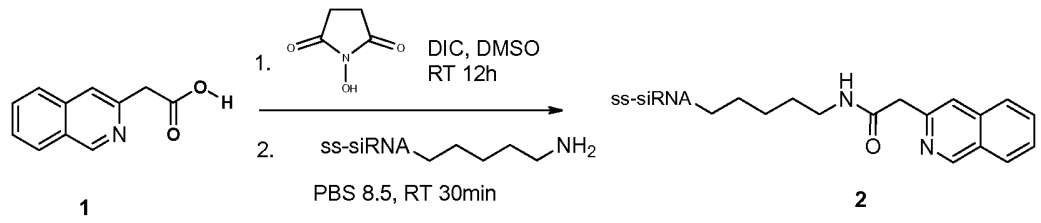


Scheme 6: Overview of the synthesis of **2.**

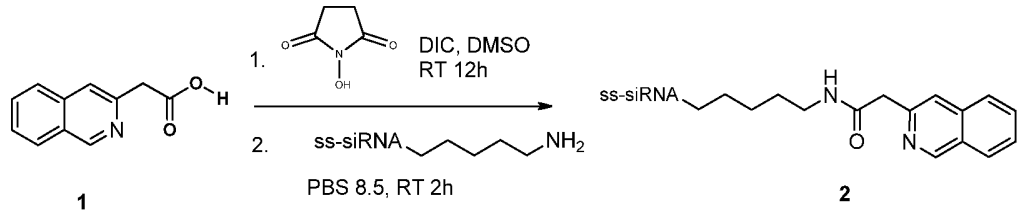


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **1** (2.02 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.73 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_4$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6327.

2.Y. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1020

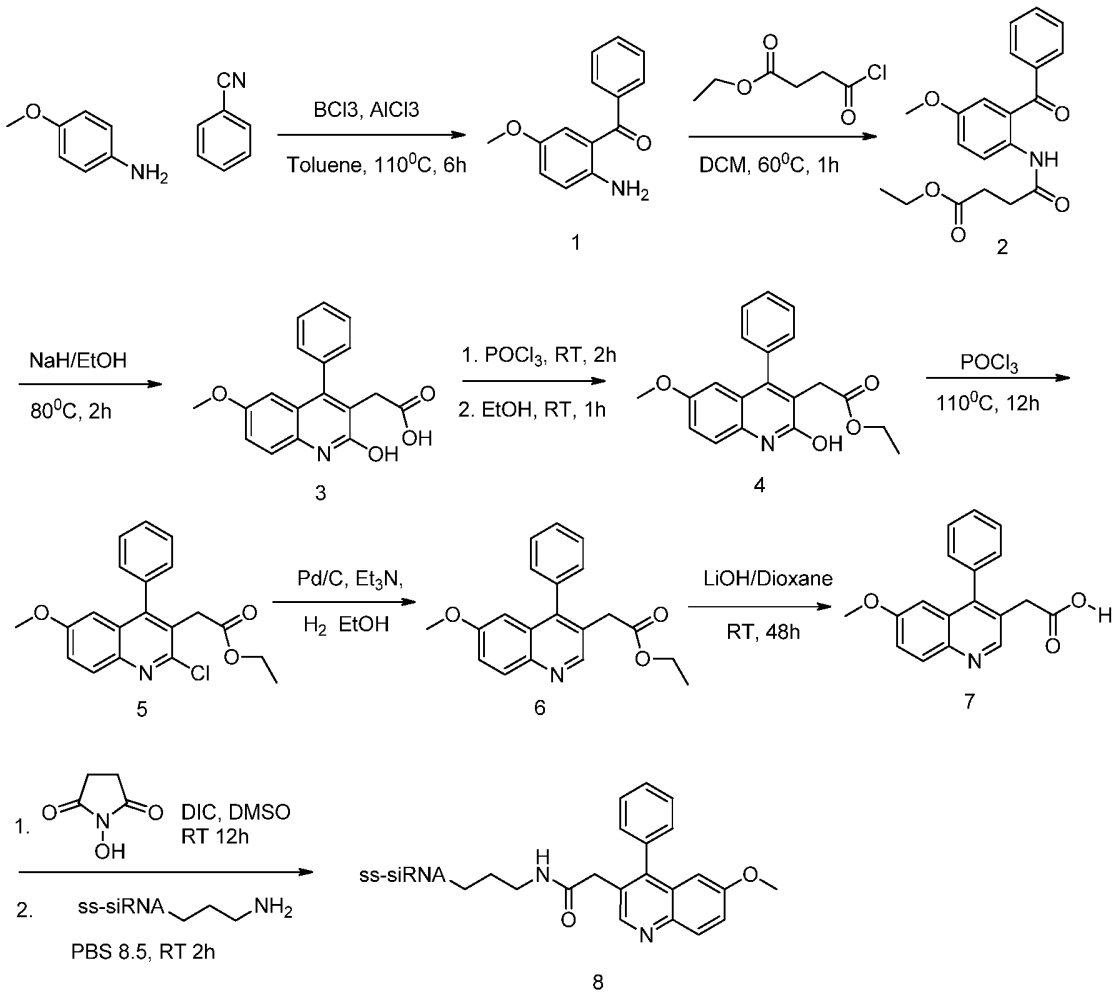


Scheme 7: Overview of the synthesis of **2**.

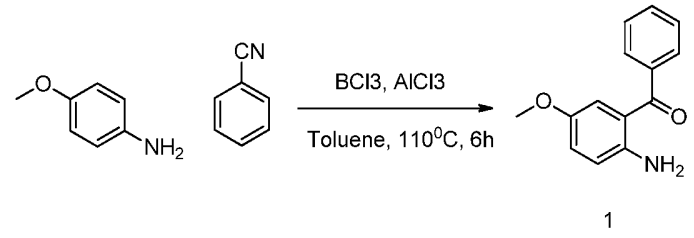


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.48 mg, 0.022 mmol), **1** (2.02 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.72 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_5$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.324 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6341.

2. Z. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1009

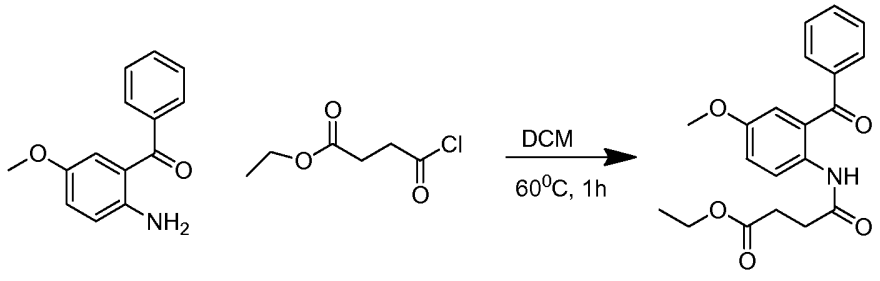


Scheme 7: Overview of the synthesis of **8**.



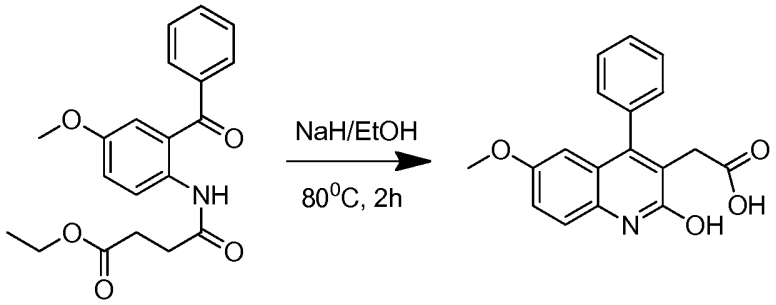
To $AlCl_3$ (1.19 g, 8.93 mmol, 40 ml Toluene solution) under N_2 was added 4-methoxyaniline (1g, 8.12 mmol, 10ml Toluene solution) dropwise. BCl_3 (8.12 ml, 8.12 mmol, 1 M solution in CH_2Cl_2) and Benzonitrile (2.51 g, 24.36 mmol) were added to the above mixture subsequently. The resulting mixture was stirred at RT for 1h, then heated at 110^{0}C for 6 hrs. The reaction mixture was cooled to RT, to which aq. HCl (1 M, 13 ml) was added. The solution was then heated at 80^{0}C for 1h. The solution was cooled to RT, and the organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by silica chromatography

with 0-40% ethyl acetate/heptane to give **1** (273 mg, 1.2 mmol) in 15% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 227.3. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 3.66 (s, 3 H) 6.80 (d, *J*=8.84 Hz, 1 H) 6.93 - 7.05 (m, 2 H) 7.40 - 7.49 (m, 2 H) 7.49 - 7.58 (m, 1 H) 7.63 - 7.72 (m, 2 H).



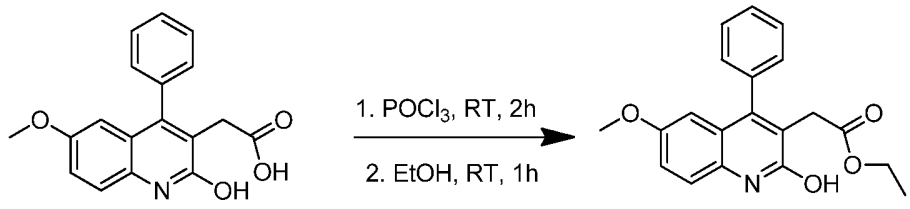
1 **2**

A mixture of **1** (269 mg, 1.18 mmol) and ethyl 4-chloro-4-oxobutanoate (214 mg, 1.3 mmol) in DCM (10 ml) was heated at 60°C for 1h. The reaction mixture was cooled and quenched with aq. 1 M NaOH (5 ml). Organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 5ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by silica chromatography with 0-60% ethyl acetate/heptane to give **2** (305 mg, 0.86 mmol) in 73% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 355.5. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 1.26 (t, *J*=7.28 Hz, 3 H) 2.74 (s, 4 H) 3.77 (s, 3 H) 4.16 (q, *J*=7.03 Hz, 2 H) 7.06 (d, *J*=3.01 Hz, 1 H) 7.14 (dd, *J*=9.03, 3.01 Hz, 1 H) 7.48 - 7.55 (m, 2 H) 7.60 - 7.66 (m, 1 H) 7.73 - 7.79 (m, 2 H) 8.50 (d, *J*=9.03 Hz, 1 H) 10.45 (br. s., 1 H).



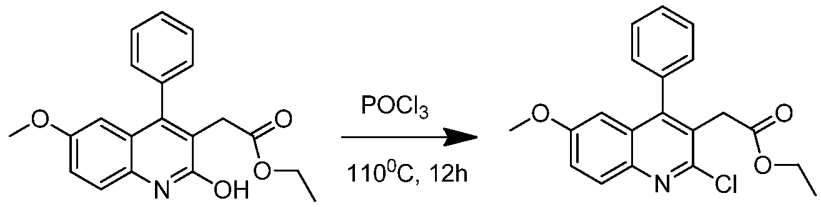
2 **3**

A mixture of **2** (305 mg, 0.86 mmol) and sodium hydride (343mg, 8.58 mmol) in ethanol (10 ml) was heated at 80°C for 2h. The reaction mixture was cooled to RT and quenched with water (5 ml) then neutralized with aq. 1 M HCl (2 ml). The resulting solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 10mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum to give **3** (250 mg, 0.81 mmol) in 94% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 309.3. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, METHANOL-d_4) δ ppm 3.38 (s, 2 H) 3.63 (s, 3 H) 6.51 (d, *J*=2.51 Hz, 1 H) 7.20 (dd, *J*=9.03, 3.01 Hz, 1 H) 7.28 - 7.47 (m, 3 H) 7.52 - 7.63 (m, 3 H).



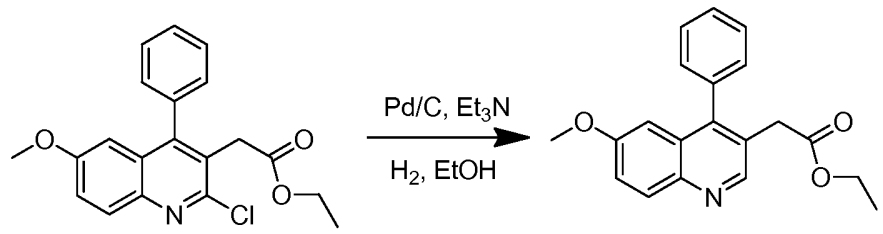
3 4

A solution of **3** (250 mg, 0.81 mmol) in $POCl_3$ (10 ml) was stirred at RT for 2h. $POCl_3$ was removed under vacuum, the resulting residue was quenched with ethanol (20 ml). The solution was stirred at RT for 1h, then ethanol was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added dichloromethane (30 ml) and aq. 1 M NaOH (20ml). Organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 20 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water, brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **4** (270 mg, 0.8 mmol) in 99% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 338.2. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 1.23 - 1.27 (m, 3 H) 3.48 (s, 2 H) 3.66 (s, 3 H) 4.04 - 4.22 (m, 2 H) 6.55 (d, *J*=2.51 Hz, 1 H) 7.09 - 7.15 (m, 1 H) 7.24 (d, *J*=9.03 Hz, 1 H) 7.29 - 7.34 (m, 2 H) 7.44 - 7.64 (m, 3 H) 10.49 (br. s., 1 H).



4 5

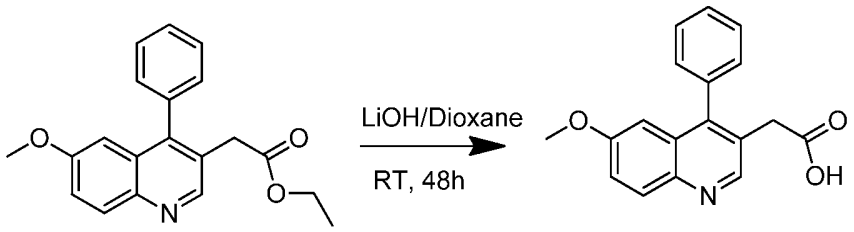
A solution of **4** (270 mg, 0.8 mmol) in $POCl_3$ (10 ml) was heated at 110^{0}C for 12h. $POCl_3$ was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added dichloromethane (20 ml) and aq. 1 M NaOH (20ml). The organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 20 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water, brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **5** (265 mg, 0.75 mmol) in 92% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 356.1. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 1.22 - 1.27 (m, 3 H) 3.70 (s, 5 H) 4.17 (q, *J*=7.03 Hz, 2 H) 6.62 (d, *J*=3.01 Hz, 1 H) 7.20 - 7.34 (m, 2 H) 7.38 (dd, *J*=9.03, 2.51 Hz, 1 H) 7.46 - 7.63 (m, 3 H) 8.01 (d, *J*=9.03 Hz, 1 H).



5 6

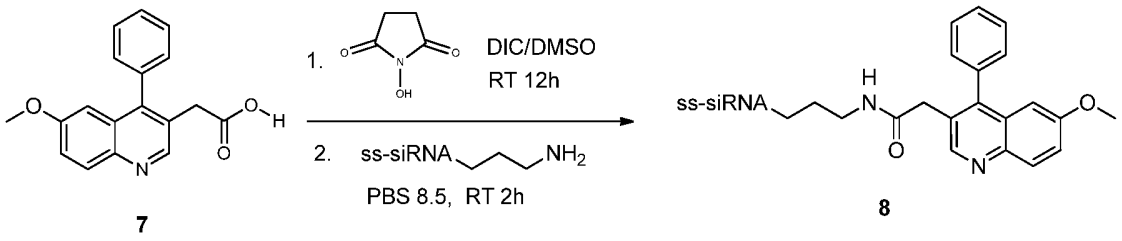
A mixture of **5** (265 mg, 0.745 mmol), triethylamine (1.28 g, 12.66 mmol), and Pd/C (10%, 79 mg, 0.745 mmol) in ethanol (20 ml) was stirred under H_2 (1 atm) at RT for 12h. The reaction

mixture was filtered to remove Pd/C. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **6** (182 mg, 0.57 mmol) in 76% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 322.1. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 1.12 (t, *J*=7.15 Hz, 3 H) 3.51 (s, 2 H) 3.62 (s, 3 H) 4.01 (q, *J*=7.19 Hz, 2 H) 6.61 (d, *J*=2.76 Hz, 1 H) 7.18 - 7.31 (m, 3 H) 7.39 - 7.50 (m, 3 H) 7.97 (d, *J*=9.29 Hz, 1 H) 8.68 (s, 1 H).



6 **7**

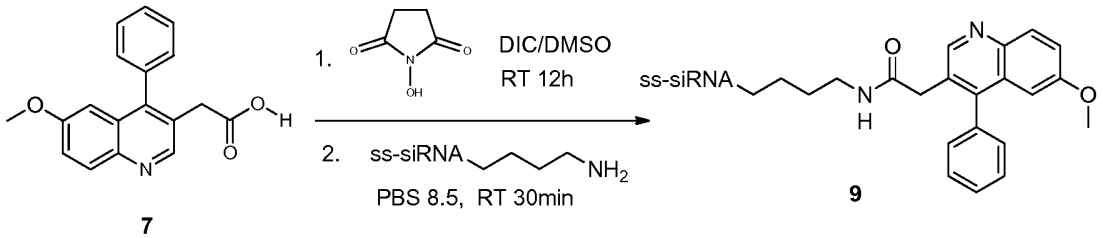
A mixture of **6** (50 mg, 0.16 mmol), aq. 1 M LiOH (0.17 ml, 0.17 mmol) in Dioxane (1 ml) was stirred at RT for 48 hrs. A precipitation from the reaction mixture was filtered and dried to give **7** (32 mg, 0.107 mmol) in 69% yield as lithium salt. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 294.2. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, METHANOL-d_4) δ ppm 3.48 (s, 2 H) 3.63 - 3.73 (m, 3 H) 6.75 (d, *J*=2.51 Hz, 1 H) 7.28 - 7.43 (m, 3 H) 7.48 - 7.64 (m, 3 H) 7.94 (d, *J*=9.03 Hz, 1 H) 8.73 (s, 1 H).



7 **8**

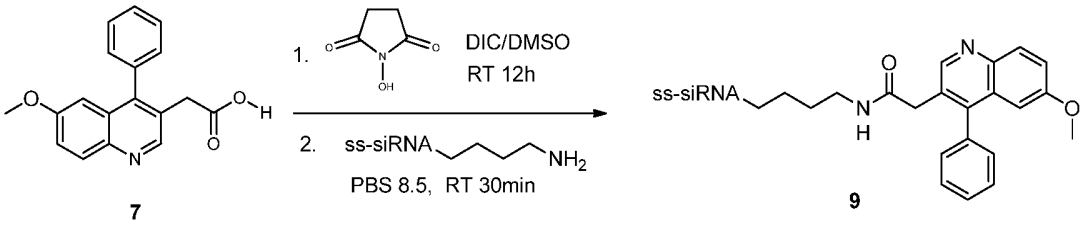
A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **7** (3.18 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.74 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **8**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6422.

2. AA. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1016



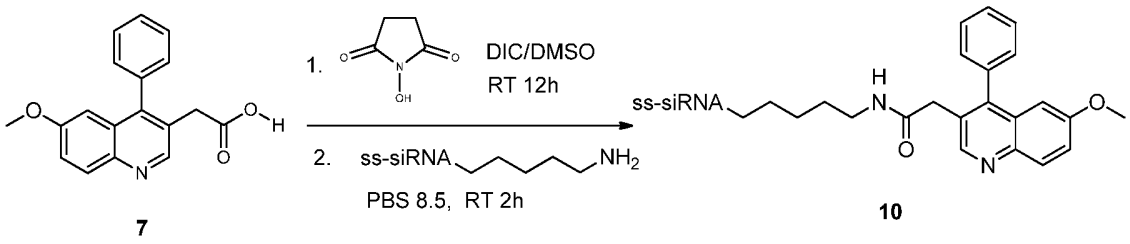
7 **9**

Scheme 8: Overview of the synthesis of **9**.

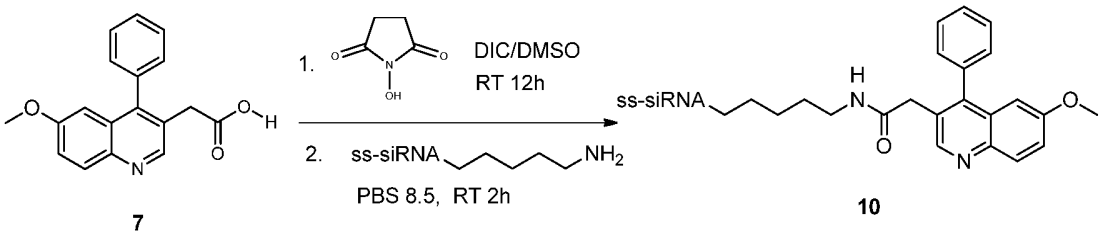


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **7** (3.18 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.74 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_4$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **9**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6434.

2. BB. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1021

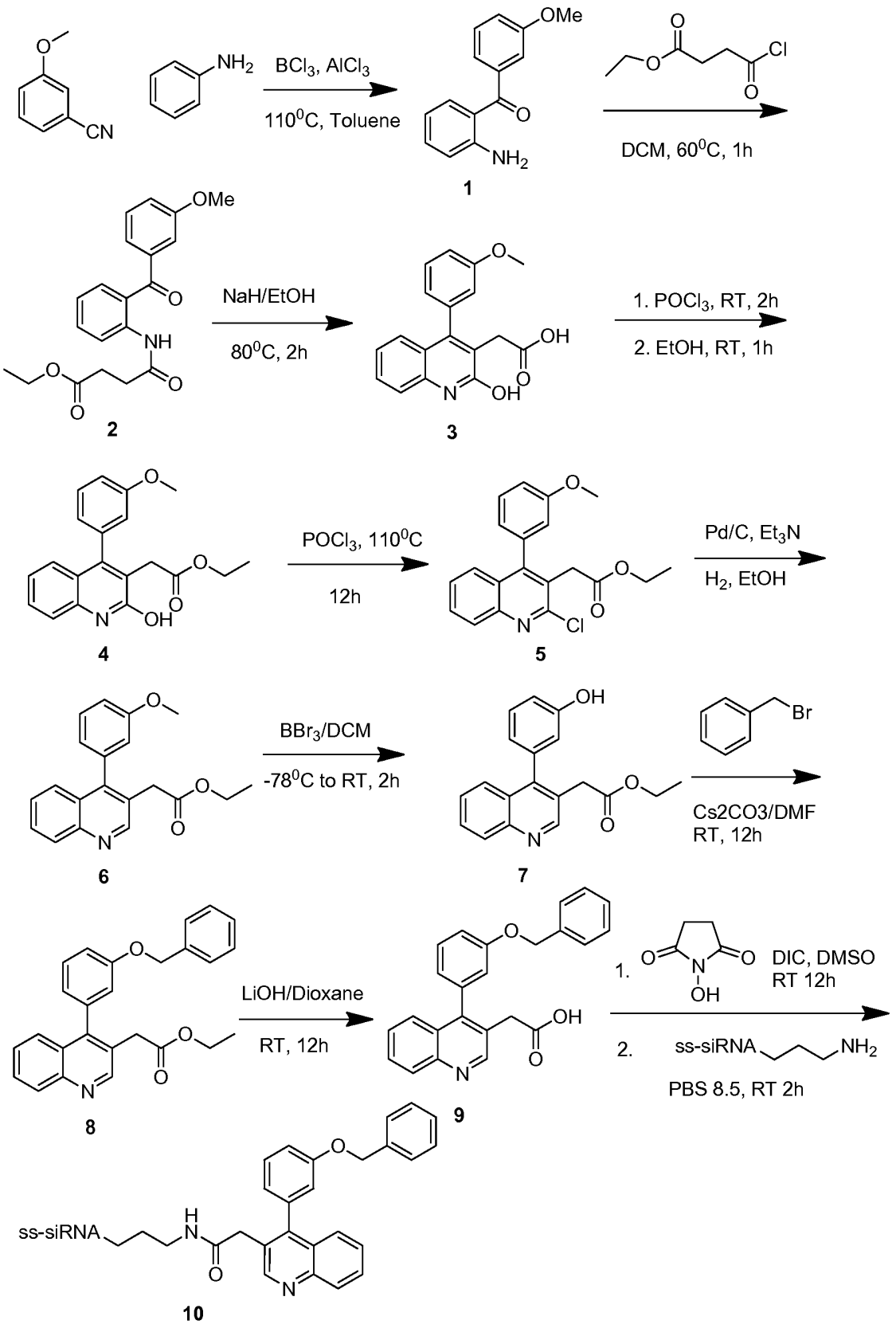


Scheme 9: Overview of the synthesis of **10**.

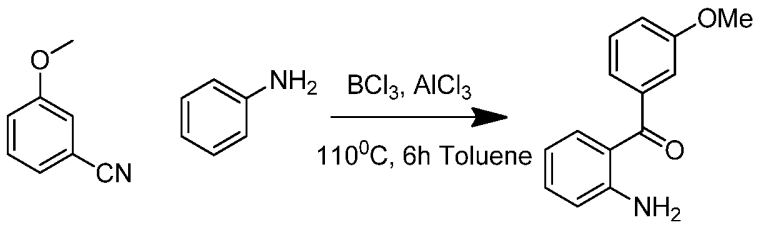


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.48 mg, 0.022 mmol), **7** (3.16 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.72 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_5$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **10**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6448.

2. CC. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1010

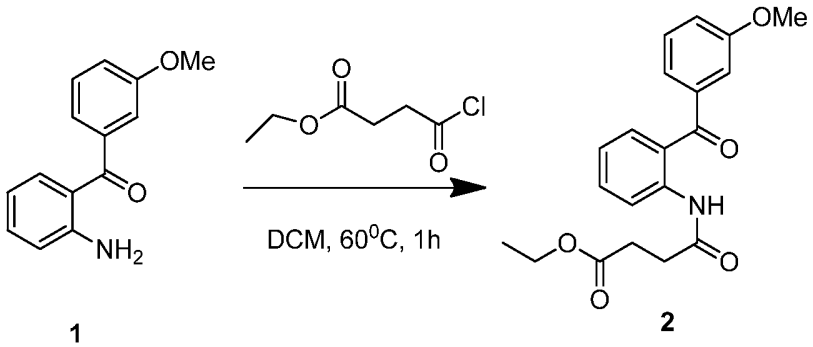

BCl3, AlCl3
110°C, Toluene
DCM, 60°C, 1h
NaH/EtOH
80°C, 2h
1. POCl3, RT, 2h
2. EtOH, RT, 1h
POCl3, 110°C
12h
Pd/C, Et3N
H2, EtOH
BBr3/DCM
-78°C to RT, 2h
Cs2CO3/DMF
RT, 12h
LiOH/Dioxane
RT, 12h
DIC, DMSO
RT 12h
ss-siRNA
PBS 8.5, RT 2h
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

Scheme 10: Overview of the synthesis of **10**.



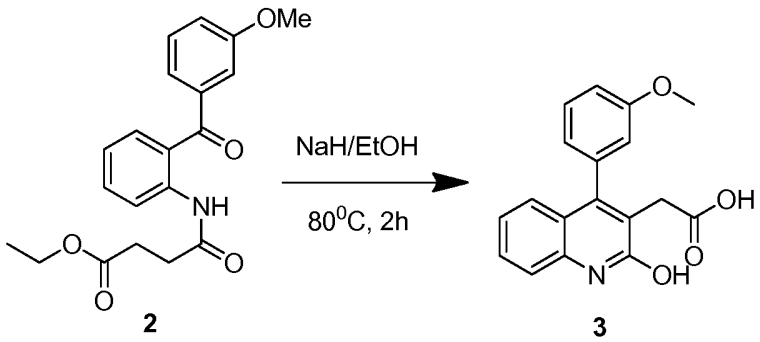
1

To BCl_3 (10.74 ml, 10.74 mmol, 1 M solution in CH_2Cl_2) under N_2 was added aniline (1g, 10.74 mmol, 10ml Toluene solution) dropwise. 3-methoxybenzonitrile (4.29 g, 32.2 mmol) and $AlCl_3$ (1.575 g, 11.81 mmol, 40 ml Toluene solution) were added to the above mixture subsequently. The resulting mixture was stirred at RT for 1h, then heated at 110^{0}C for 6 hrs. The reaction mixture was cooled to RT, to which aq. HCl (1 M, 13 ml) was added. The solution was then heated at 80^{0}C for 1h. The solution was cooled to RT, and the organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by silica chromatography with 0-40% ethyl acetate/heptane to give **1** (875 mg, 3.85 mmol) in 36% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 227.9. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 3.74 (s, 3 H) 6.00 (br. s., 2 H) 6.44 - 6.56 (m, 1 H) 6.63 (dd, *J*=8.53, 1.00 Hz, 1 H) 6.93 - 7.00 (m, 1 H) 7.04 - 7.11 (m, 2 H) 7.14 - 7.31 (m, 2 H) 7.37 (dd, *J*=8.03, 1.51 Hz, 1 H).



1 **2**

A mixture of **1** (570 mg, 2.51 mmol) and ethyl 4-chloro-4-oxobutanoate (454 mg, 2.76 mmol) in DCM (20 ml) was heated at 60^{0}C for 1h. The reaction mixture was cooled and quenched with aq. 1 M NaOH (5 ml). The organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 15ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum to give **2** (824 mg, 2.32 mmol) in 92% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 355.4. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 1.25 - 1.48 (m, 3 H) 2.73 - 3.01 (m, 4 H) 3.88 (s, 3 H) 4.18 (q, *J*=7.07 Hz, 2 H) 7.05 - 7.20 (m, 2 H) 7.22 - 7.30 (m, 2 H) 7.37 - 7.45 (m, 1 H) 7.53 - 7.64 (m, 2 H) 8.64 (d, *J*=8.59 Hz, 1 H) 10.90 (br. s., 1 H).

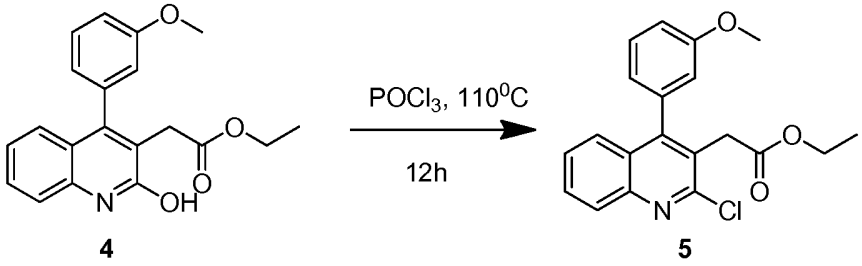


2 3

A mixture of **2** (824 mg, 2.32 mmol) and sodium hydride (927mg, 23.19 mmol) in ethanol (20 ml) was heated at 80^{0}C for 2h. The reaction mixture was cooled to RT and quenched with water (5 ml) then neutralized with aq. 1 M HCl (2 ml). The resulting solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 10mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum to give **3** (583 mg, 0.81 mmol) in 81% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 310.1. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 3.49 - 3.64 (m, 2 H) 3.83 - 3.89 (m, 3 H) 6.83 - 6.96 (m, 2 H) 7.00 - 7.28 (m, 4 H) 7.37 - 7.56 (m, 4 H) 12.02 - 12.32 (m, 2 H).

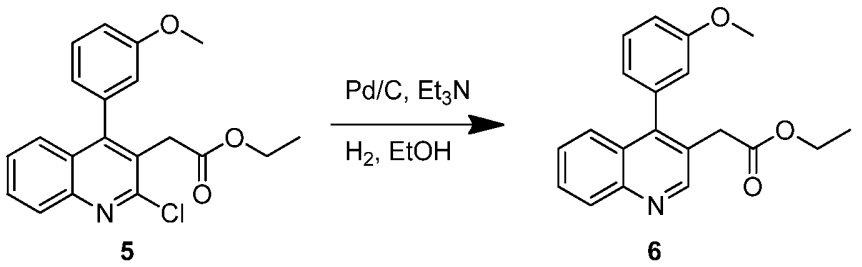
3 4

A solution of **3** (583 mg, 1.89 mmol) in $POCl_3$ (10 ml) was stirred at RT for 2h. $POCl_3$ was removed under vacuum, the resulting residue was quenched with ethanol (20 ml). The solution was stirred at RT for 1h, then ethanol was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added dichloromethane (30 ml) and aq. 1 M NaOH (20ml). Organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 20 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water, brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **4** (760 mg, 2.25 mmol) in 120% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 338.1. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 1.26 (t, *J*=7.07 Hz, 3 H) 3.44 - 3.64 (m, 2 H) 3.85 (s, 3 H) 4.17 (q, *J*=7.16 Hz, 2 H) 6.85 - 6.93 (m, 2 H) 7.03 (ddd, *J*=8.46, 2.65, 1.01 Hz, 1 H) 7.11 (ddd, *J*=8.21, 6.95, 1.01 Hz, 1 H) 7.17 (dd, *J*=8.21, 1.39 Hz, 1 H) 7.32 - 7.39 (m, 1 H) 7.40 - 7.52 (m, 2 H) 11.43 (br. s., 1 H)



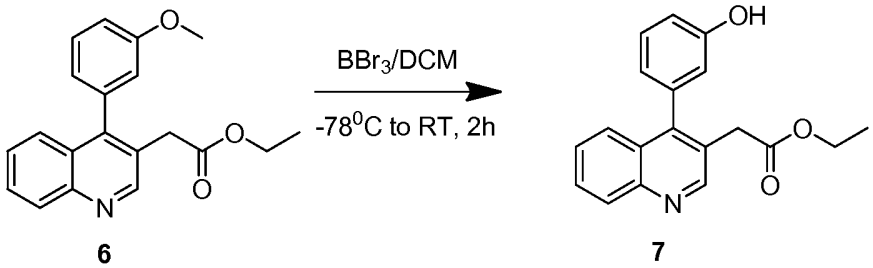
4 5

A solution of **4** (760 mg, 2.25 mmol) in $POCl_3$ (10 ml) was heated at 110^{0}C for 12h. $POCl_3$ was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added dichloromethane (20 ml) and aq. 1 M NaOH (20ml). The organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 20 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water, brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **5** (650 mg, 1.83 mmol) in 97% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 355.4. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 1.25 (t, *J*=7.28 Hz, 3 H) 3.75 (d, *J*=1.00 Hz, 2 H) 3.85 (s, 3 H) 4.18 (q, *J*=7.03 Hz, 2 H) 6.78 - 6.92 (m, 2 H) 6.97 - 7.13 (m, 1 H) 7.39 - 7.60 (m, 3 H) 7.76 (d, *J*=2.01 Hz, 1 H) 8.15 (d, *J*=8.53 Hz, 1 H).



5 6

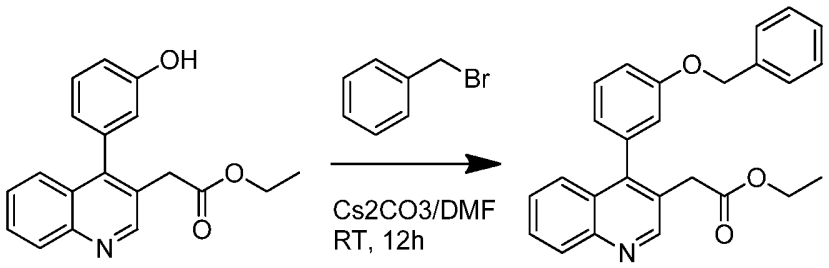
A mixture of **5** (650 mg, 1.83 mmol), triethylamine (3.14 g, 31.1 mmol), and Pd/C (10%, 194 mg, 1.827 mmol) in ethanol (20 ml) was stirred under H_2 (1 atm) at RT for 12h. The reaction mixture was filtered to remove Pd/C. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **6** (460 mg, 1.43 mmol) in 78% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 321.5. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 1.20 - 1.26 (m, 3 H) 1.44 (t, *J*=7.53 Hz, 9 H) 3.12 (qd, *J*=7.28, 4.77 Hz, 6 H) 3.65 (s, 2 H) 3.79 - 3.93 (m, 3 H) 4.12 (q, *J*=7.19 Hz, 2 H) 6.82 - 6.92 (m, 2 H) 7.06 (ddd, *J*=8.53, 2.51, 1.00 Hz, 1 H) 7.39 - 7.58 (m, 3 H) 7.72 (ddd, *J*=8.41, 6.65, 1.51 Hz, 1 H) 8.19 (d, *J*=8.53 Hz, 1 H) 8.93 (s, 1 H) 12.20 (br. s., 3 H).



6 7

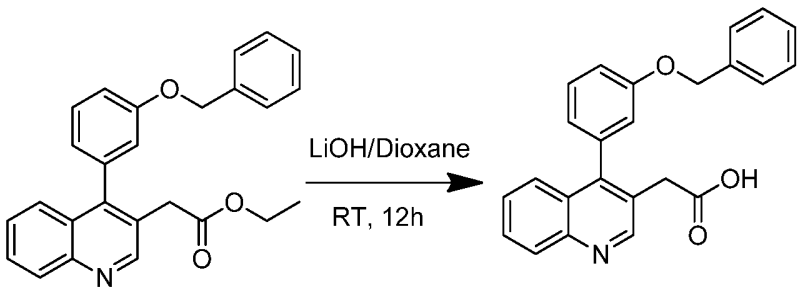
To a solution of **6** (400 mg, 1.245 mmol) in DCM (15 ml) was added BBr_3 (1 M in DCM, 3.73 ml, 3.73 mmol) at -78^{0}C. The reaction mixture was warmed to RT in 2h. The mixture was cooled down to -78^{0}C, and quenched with ethanol. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum.

To the resulting residue was added ethyl acetate (15 ml) and water (15 ml). The organic and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 15 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water, brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum. The crude was purified by recrystallization from dichloromethane to give **7** (282 mg, 0.92 mmol) in 74% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 308.2. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ ppm 1.11 (t, *J*=7.03 Hz, 3 H) 3.68 (s, 2 H) 3.91 - 4.11 (m, 2 H) 6.50 - 6.70 (m, 2 H) 6.81 - 6.97 (m, 1 H) 7.30 - 7.48 (m, 2 H) 7.51 - 7.63 (m, 1 H) 7.78 (ddd, *J*=8.53, 7.03, 1.51 Hz, 1 H) 8.08 (d, *J*=8.03 Hz, 1 H) 8.93 (s, 1 H) 9.75 (br. s., 1 H).



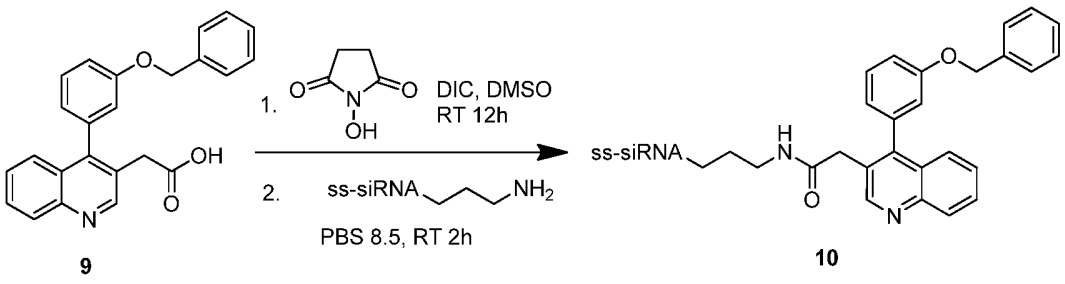
7 **8**

A mixture of **7** (20 mg, 0.065 mmol), benzyl bromide (16.69 mg, 0.098 mmol) and cesium carbonate (42.4 mg, 0.13 mmol) in DMF (500 ul) was stirred at RT for 12hrs. The reaction mixture was filtered to remove insoluable material. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 5% NH_4OH in 5-95% acetonitrile/water to give **8** (6.9 mg, 0.017 mmol) in 26.7% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 398.3. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 1.22 (t, *J*=7.03 Hz, 3 H) 3.64 (s, 2 H) 4.12 (q, *J*=7.03 Hz, 2 H) 5.11 (s, 2 H) 6.76 - 7.02 (m, 2 H) 7.13 (ddd, *J*=8.53, 2.51, 1.00 Hz, 1 H) 7.31 - 7.56 (m, 8 H) 7.71 (ddd, *J*=8.28, 6.78, 2.01 Hz, 1 H) 8.17 (d, *J*=8.53 Hz, 1 H) 8.92 (s, 1 H).



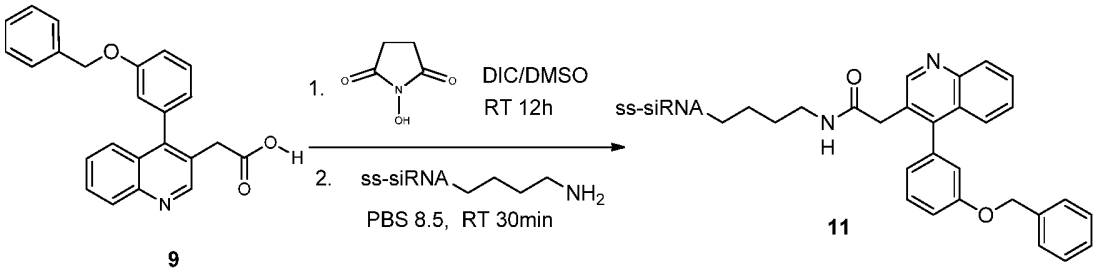
8 **9**

A mixture of **8** (6.9 mg, 0.017 mmol), aq. 1 M LiOH (0.019 ml, 0.019 mmol) in Dioxane (0.5 ml) was stirred at RT for 12 hrs. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **9** (6 mg, 0.016 mmol) in 92% yield as lithium salt. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 370.2. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, METHANOL-d_4) δ ppm 3.42 - 3.60 (m, 2 H) 5.07 - 5.19 (m, 2 H) 6.94 (dt, *J*=7.53, 1.25 Hz, 1 H) 7.06 (dd, *J*=2.51, 1.51 Hz, 1 H) 7.14 (ddd, *J*=8.53, 2.51, 1.00 Hz, 1 H) 7.25 - 7.42 (m, 3 H) 7.42 - 7.53 (m, 2 H) 7.70 (ddd, *J*=8.41, 4.64, 3.51 Hz, 2 H) 8.04 (d, *J*=8.03 Hz, 1 H) 8.56 (s, 2 H) 8.88 (s, 1 H).

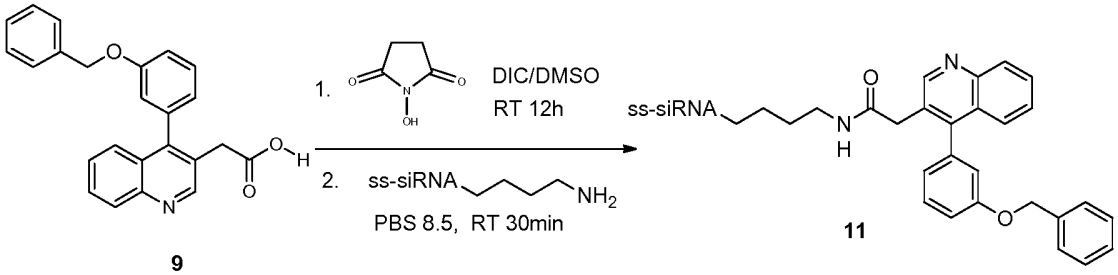


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **9** (4.08 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.74 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **10**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6495.

2. DD. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1017

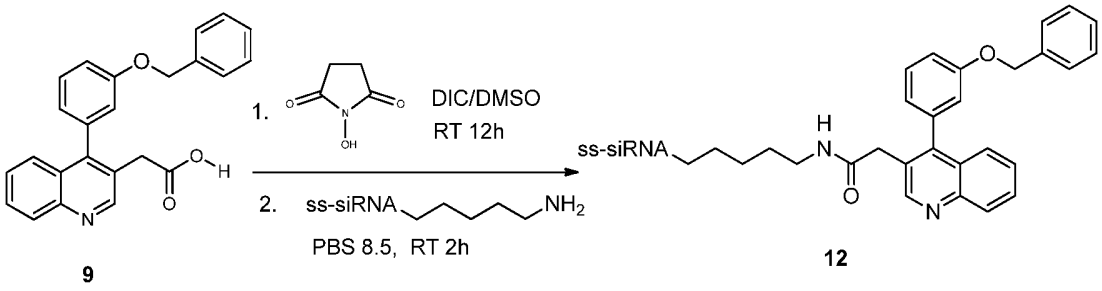


Scheme 11: Overview of the synthesis of **11**.

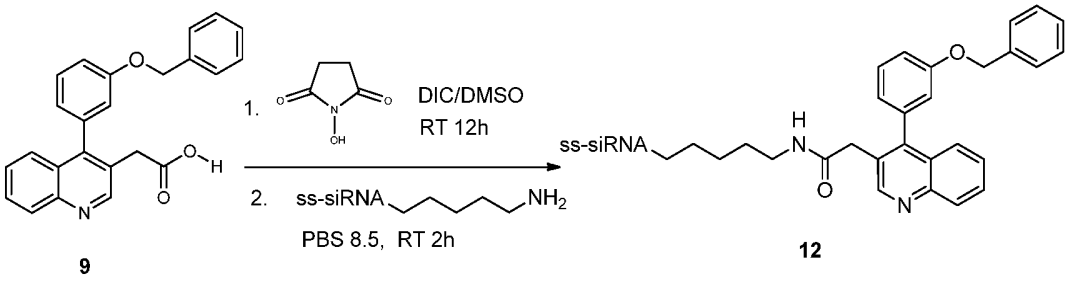


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **9** (4.07 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.73 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_4$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **11**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6510.

2. EE. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1022

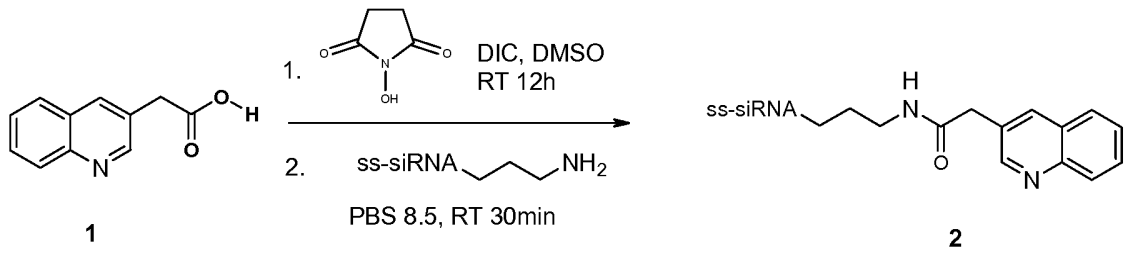


Scheme 12: Overview of the synthesis of **12**.

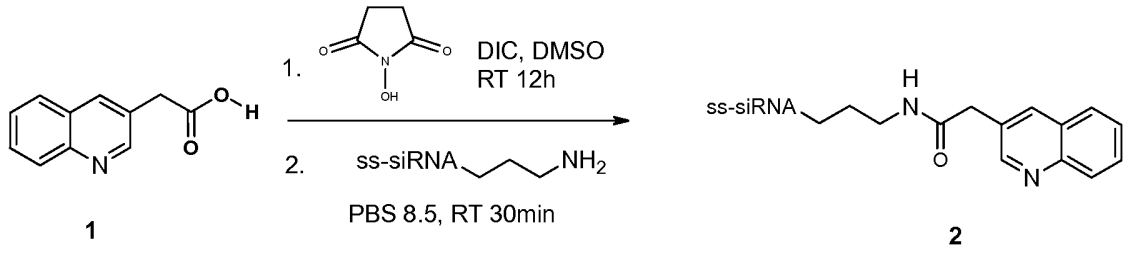


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.48 mg, 0.022 mmol), **9** (4.06 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.72 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_5$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **12**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6524.

2. FF. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1024

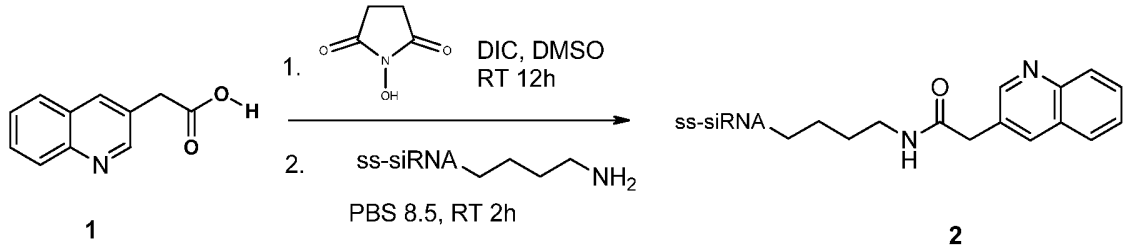


Scheme 13: Overview of the synthesis of **2**.

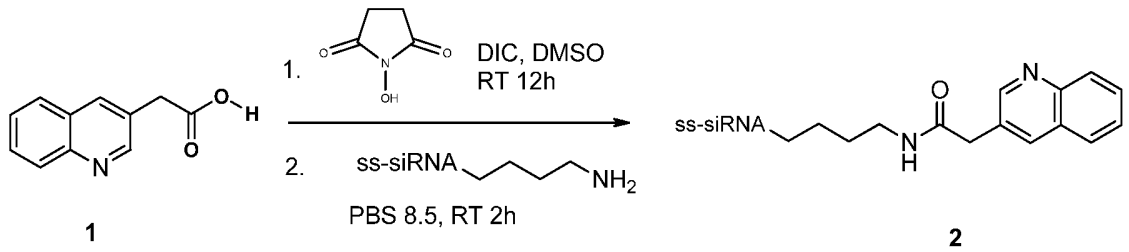


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.5 mg, 0.0522 mmol), **1** (2.5 mg, 0.013 mmol), and DIC (2.74 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2.0 mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6315.

2. GG. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1026

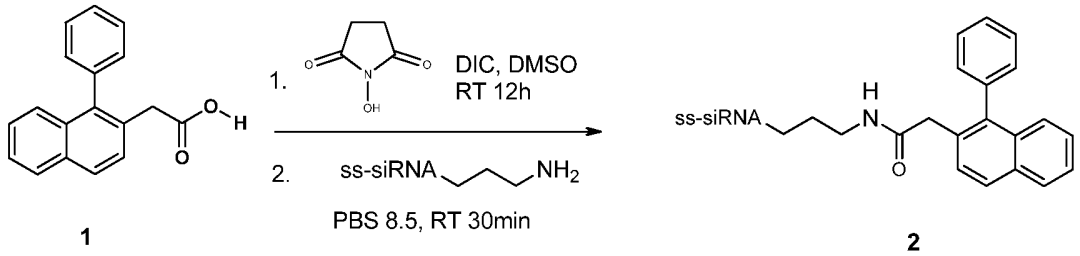


Scheme 14: Overview of the synthesis of **2**.

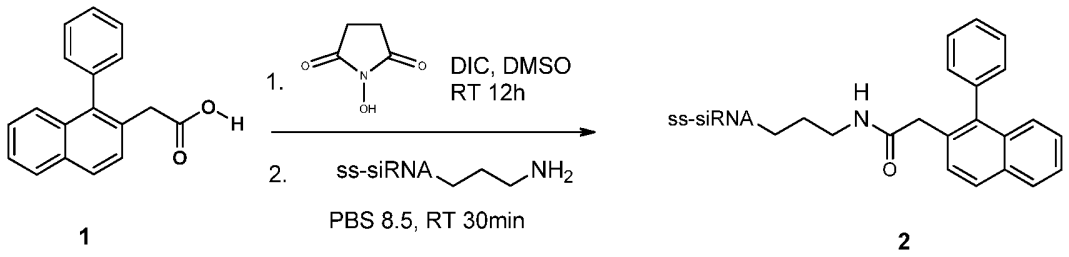


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **1** (2.02 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.73 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_4$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6327.

2. HH. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1025

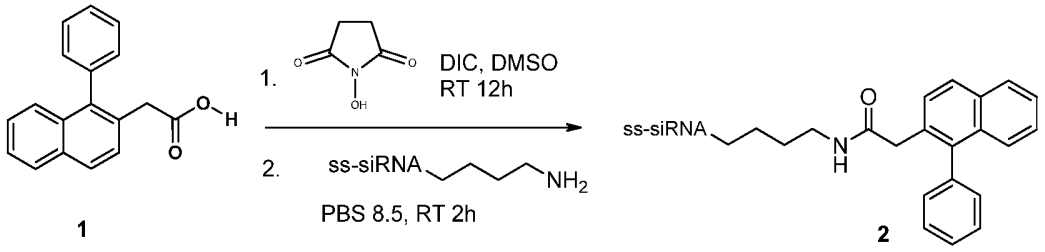


Scheme 15: Overview of the synthesis of **2**.

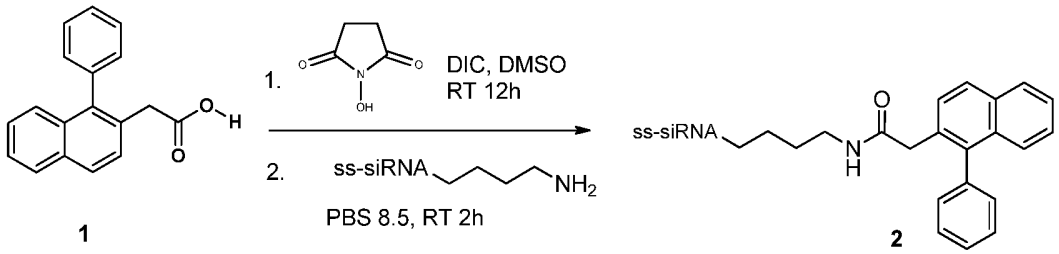


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **1** (2.84 mg, 0.01 mmol), and DIC (2.74 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2.0 mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6390.

2. II. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1027

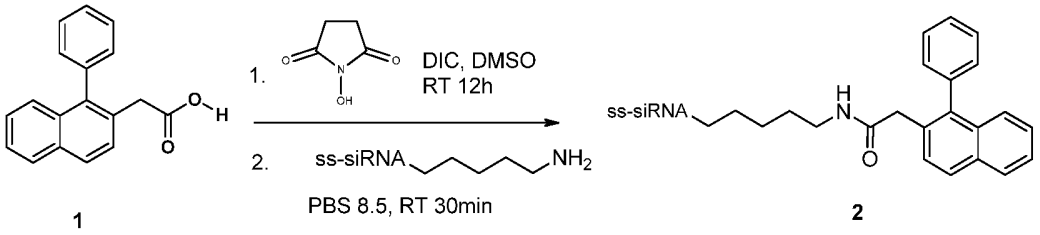


Scheme 16: Overview of the synthesis of **2**.

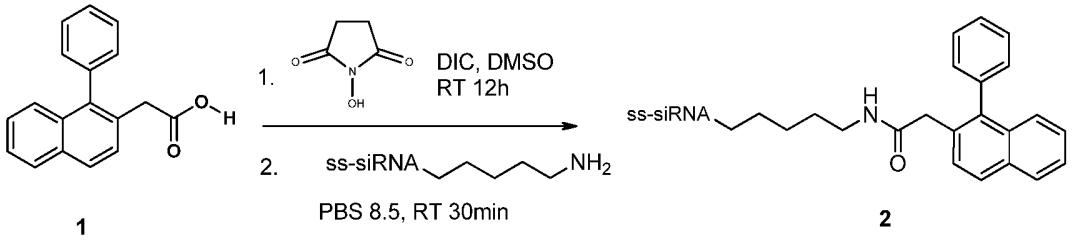


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **1** (2.84 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.73 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_4$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6404.

2. JJ. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1028

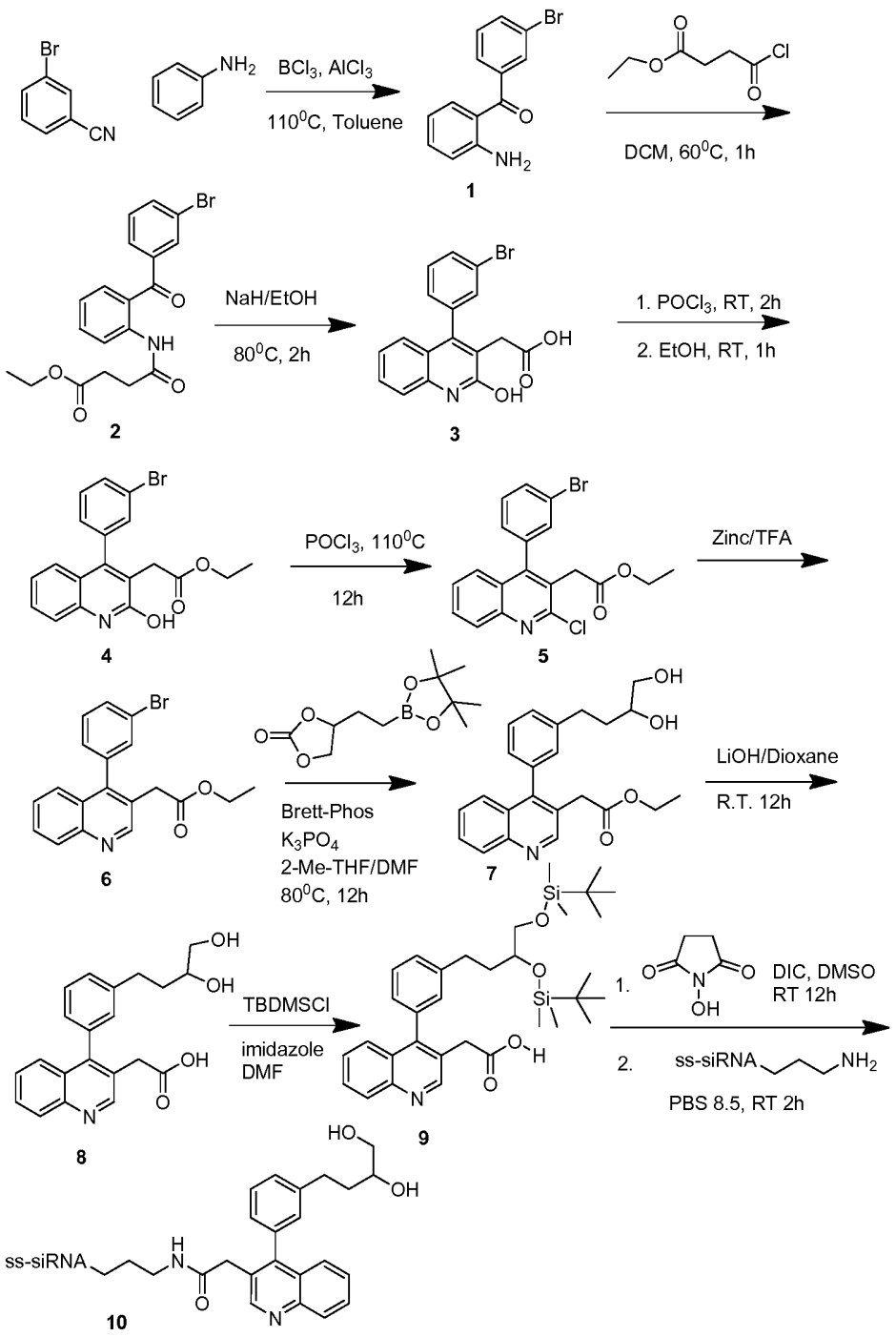


Scheme 17: Overview of the synthesis of **2**.

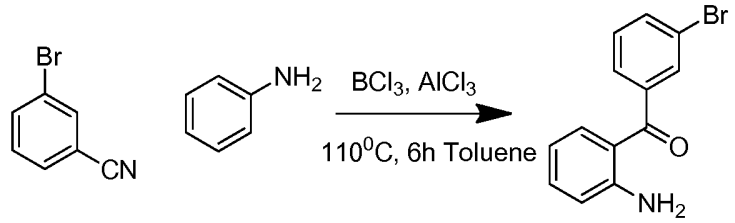


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.48 mg, 0.022 mmol), **1** (2.90 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.72 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_5$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.324 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **2**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6417.

2.KK. Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1062

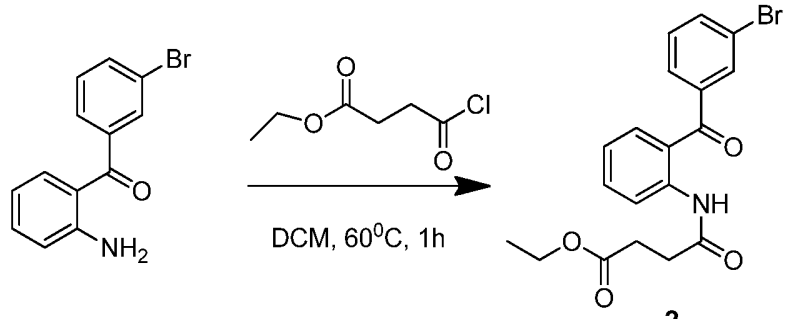


Scheme 1: Overview of the synthesis of **10**.



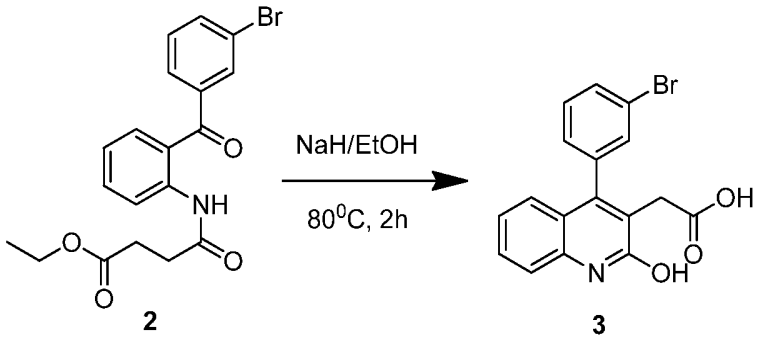
1

To $AlCl_3$ (7.88 g, 59.1 mmol) in Toluene (200 ml) was added aniline (5g, 53.7 mmol, 4.59 ml, in 50 ml Toluene) dropwise under N_2. 3-bormobenzonitrile (29.3 g, 161 mmol) was added to the above mixture subsequently. The resulting mixture was stirred at RT for 1h, then heated at 110^{0}C for 6 hrs. The reaction mixture was cooled to RT, to which aq. HCl (1 M, 3 ml) was added. The solution was then heated at 80^{0}C for 1h. The solution was cooled to RT, and the organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 100mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by silica chromatography with 0-40% ethyl acetate/heptane to give **1** (4.31 g, 15.6 mmol) in 29% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 278.1 ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) δ ppm 6.16 (br. s., 2 H) 6.64 (t, *J*=7.53 Hz, 1 H) 6.76 (d, *J*=8.53 Hz, 1 H) 7.29 - 7.49 (m, 3 H) 7.56 (d, *J*=7.53 Hz, 1 H) 7.67 (d, *J*=8.03 Hz, 1 H) 7.74 - 7.84 (m, 1 H)



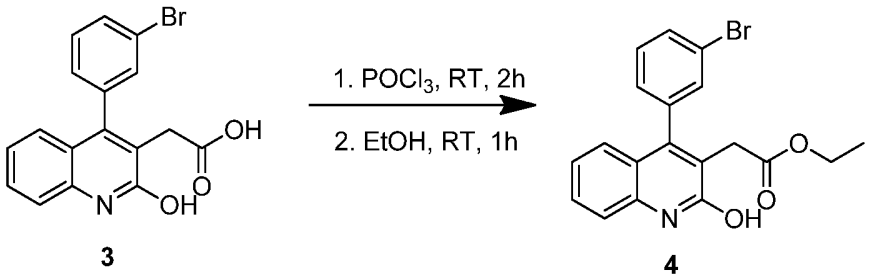
1 **2**

A mixture of **1** (1.02 g, 3.69 mmol) and ethyl 4-chloro-4-oxobutanoate (0.669 g, 4.06 mmol) in DCM (60 ml) was heated at 60^{0}C for 1h. The reaction mixture was cooled and quenched with aq. 1 M NaOH (15 ml). The organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum to give **2** (1.44 g, 3.56 mmol) in 96% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 406.2. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 10.88 (s, 1H), 8.65 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.86 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.74 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.65 – 7.51 (m, 3H), 7.39 (t, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 7.12 (t, *J* = 7.7 Hz, 1H), 4.17 (q, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2H), 2.77 (dt, *J* = 10.3, 5.2 Hz, 4H), 1.27 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 4H).



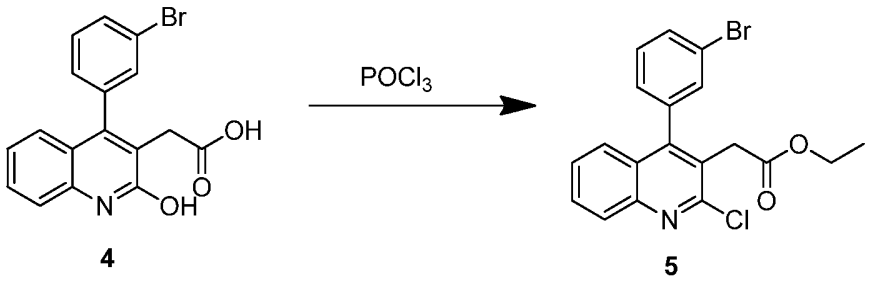
2 3

A mixture of **2** (1.44 g, 3.56 mmol) and sodium hydride (1.425g, 35.6 mmol) in ethanol (20 ml) was heated at 80^{0}C for 2h. The reaction mixture was cooled to RT and quenched with water (5 ml) then neutralized with aq. 1 M HCl (2 ml). The resulting solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was then removed under vacuum to give **3** (1.2 g, 3.63 mmol) in 94% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH$^+$): 360.2. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 11.71 – 11.63 (m, 1H), 11.55 – 11.42 (m, 3H), 11.37 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 11.30 – 11.22 (m, 1H), 11.12 (td, *J* = 7.6, 7.0, 1.2 Hz, 1H), 11.00 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 1.4 Hz, 1H), 7.33 (d, *J* = 3.5 Hz, 2H), 4.87 – 4.82 (m, 2H).



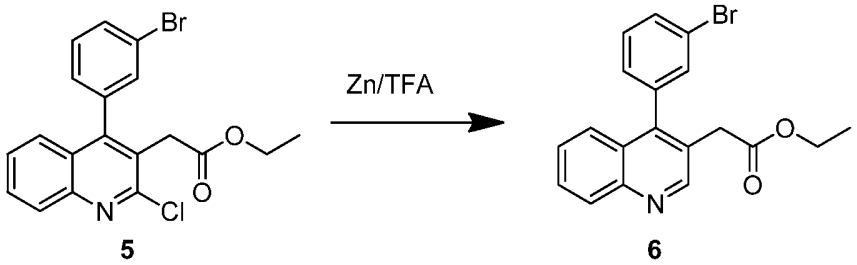
3 4

A solution of **3** (1.2 g, 1.89 mmol) in $POCl_3$ (15 ml) was stirred at RT for 2h. $POCl_3$ was removed under vacuum, the resulting residue was quenched with ethanol (50 ml). The solution was stirred at RT for 2h, then ethanol was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added dichloromethane (50 ml) and aq. 1 M NaOH (20ml). Organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 50 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water, brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **4** (1.76 mg, 4.56 mmol) in 136% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH$^+$): 388.2. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 7.65 (dt, *J* = 8.2, 1.4 Hz, 1H), 7.54 – 7.46 (m, 2H), 7.45 – 7.37 (m, 2H), 7.27 (dt, *J* = 7.8, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.17 – 7.04 (m, 2H), 4.18 – 4.16 (m, 2H), 3.50 (d, *J* = 1.5 Hz, 2H), 1.27 (h, *J* = 3.7 Hz, 3H).



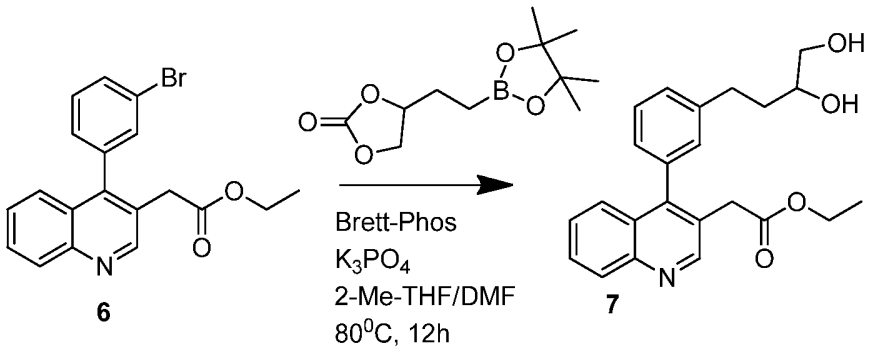
4 5

A solution of **4** (1.76 g, 4.56 mmol) in $POCl_3$ (10 ml) was heated at 110^0C for 12h. $POCl_3$ was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added dichloromethane (50 ml) and aq. 1 M NaOH (20ml). The organic layer and water layer were separated. The water layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 50 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water, brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **5** (440 mg, 1.09 mmol) in 32.5% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 406.0. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.14 – 8.05 (m, 1H), 7.76 (ddd, *J* = 8.4, 6.9, 1.4 Hz, 1H), 7.69 (ddd, *J* = 8.0, 1.9, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 7.53 – 7.41 (m, 3H), 7.36 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.26 (dt, *J* = 7.7, 1.3 Hz, 1H), 4.19 (q, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 1.27 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 3H).

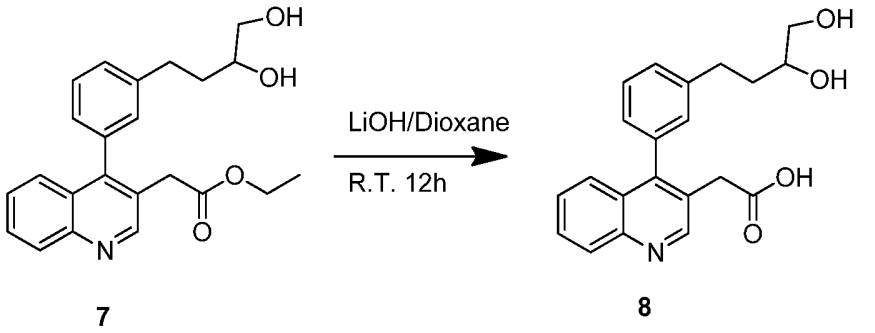


5 6

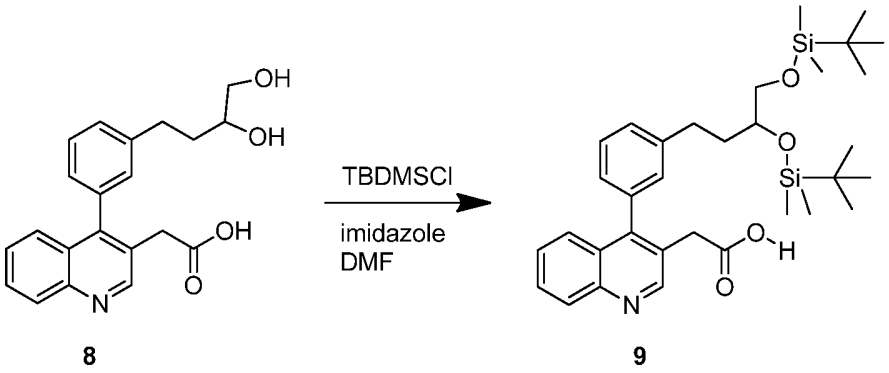
A mixture of **5** (50 mg, 0.124 mmol), Zinc power (40.4 mg, 0.618 mmol) in TFA (1 ml) was heated at 40^0C for 12h. The reaction mixture was quenched with NaOH (1M, 1 ml). The organic layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 10 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water, brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by silica flash chromotograph with elute 0-50% EtOAc/Heptane to give **6** (39 mg, 0.105 mmol) in 85% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 372.1. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) ppm 1.24 (t, *J*=7.15 Hz, 3 H) 3.63 (s, 2 H) 4.02 - 4.27 (m, 2 H) 7.12 - 7.33 (m, 1 H) 7.37 - 7.61 (m, 4 H) 7.61 - 7.71 (m, 1 H) 7.75 (t, *J*=1.51 Hz, 1 H) 8.21 (d, *J*=8.53 Hz, 1 H) 8.94 (s, 1 H).



A mixture of 4-(2-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)ethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-2-one) (255 mg, 1.05 mmol), **6** (39 mg, 0.105 mmol), (Brettphos)paddadium(II) phenethylamine chloride (4.21 mg, 5.27 umol) and 1M aqueous K_3PO_4 (421 uL, 0.421 mmol) in 2-Me THF (500 uL) and DMF (500uL) was heated at 80^0C for 12h. The reaction mixture was filtered to remove insoluable material. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum. The crude was purified by HPLC with 5% TFA in 5-95% acetonitrile/water to give **7** (15 mg, 0.04 mmol) in 37.5% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 380.4. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*) ppm 1.22 (td, *J*=7.15, 2.26 Hz, 3 H) 1.73 - 1.92 (m, 2 H) 2.72 - 2.98 (m, 2 H) 3.49 (dd, *J*=11.04, 7.53 Hz, 1 H) 3.56 - 3.84 (m, 4 H) 4.04 - 4.20 (m, 2 H) 7.15 (d, *J*=7.53 Hz, 1 H) 7.13 (d, *J*=8.78 Hz, 1 H) 7.37 (d, *J*=7.53 Hz, 1 H) 7.43 - 7.56 (m, 3 H) 7.74 (br. s., 1 H) 8.22 (br. s., 1 H) 8.94 (br. s., 1 H).

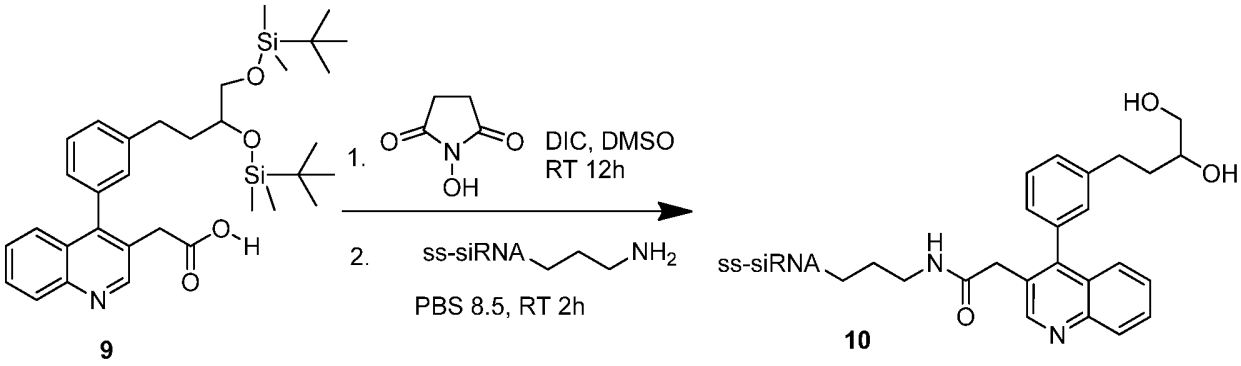


A mixture of **7** (15 mg, 0.04 mmol) and aq. 1 M LiOH (87 uL ml, 0.087 mmol) in dioxane (200 ul) was stirred at RT for 12hrs. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum to give **8** (14.17 mg, 0.04 mmol) in 100% yield as lithium salt. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 352.4. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, METHANOL-d_4) δ ppm 1.62 - 1.80 (m, 1 H) 1.80 - 1.98 (m, 1 H) 2.78 (ddd, *J*=13.33, 6.76, 3.16 Hz, 1 H) 2.84 - 2.99 (m, 1 H) 3.46 - 3.55 (m, 3 H) 3.55 - 3.68 (m, 3 H) 6.98 - 7.25 (m, 2 H) 7.31 - 7.59 (m, 4 H) 7.74 (ddd, *J*=8.40, 6.38, 1.89 Hz, 1 H) 8.06 (d, *J*=8.34 Hz, 1 H) 8.86 (s, 1 H).



8 **9**

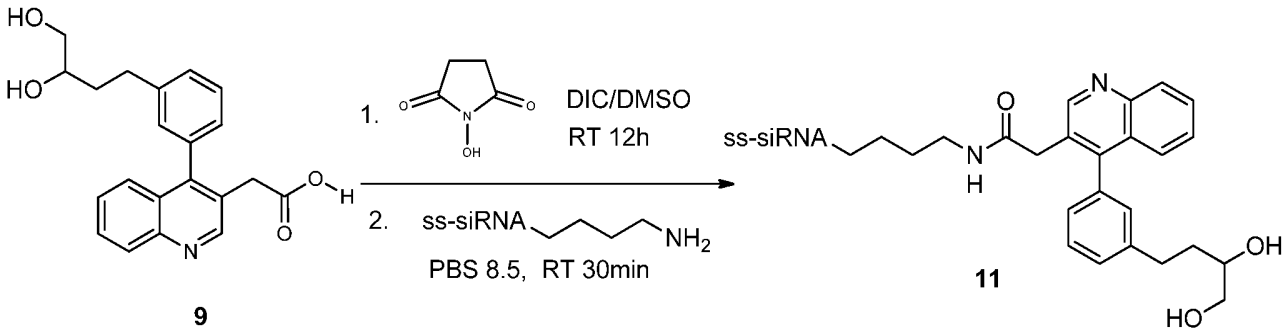
A mixture of **8** (14 mg, 0.039 mmol), TBDMSCl and imidazole (43.6 mg, 0.641 mmol) in DMF (4 ml) was stirred at RT for 24 hrs. The reaction mixture was quenched with water (1 ml). The organic layer was extracted with ethylestate (3 x 5 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with water, brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solvent was removed under vacuum. The crude product was purified by silica flash chromotograph with elute 0-50% EtOAc/Heptane to give **9** (15.9 mg, 0.025 mmol) in 63.2% yield. ESI MS (m/z, MH^+): 580.6. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, METHANOL-d_4) δ ppm -0.12 - 0.13 (m, 8 H) 0.69 - 0.98 (m, 12 H) 1.17 - 1.36 (m, 5 H) 2.60 - 2.90 (m, 2 H) 3.38 - 3.62 (m, 6 H) 3.73 (d, *J*=4.55 Hz, 1 H) 7.02 - 7.15 (m, 2 H) 7.24 - 7.38 (m, 1 H) 7.39 - 7.47 (m, 3 H) 7.64 - 7.74 (m, 1 H) 7.98 - 8.06 (m, 1 H) 8.68 - 8.89 (m, 1 H).



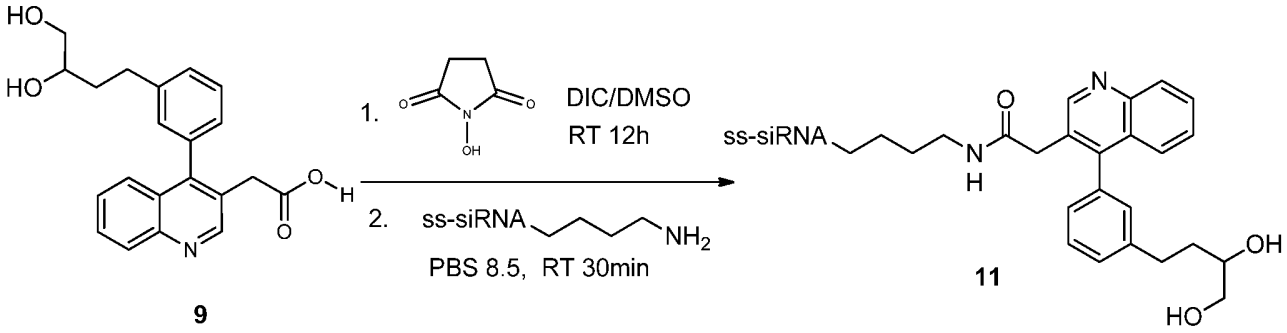
9 **10**

A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **9** (6.26 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.74 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12hrs. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_3$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **10**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6478.

2.LL. **Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1063**

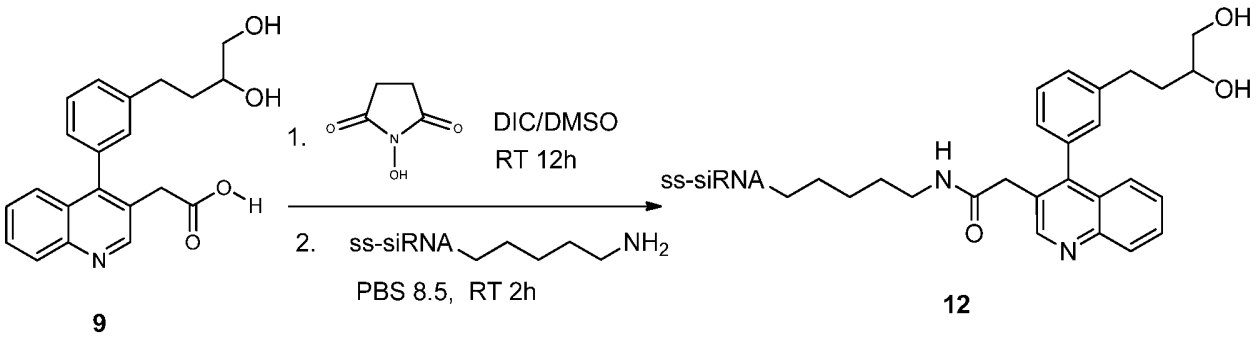


Scheme 2: Overview of the synthesis of **11**.

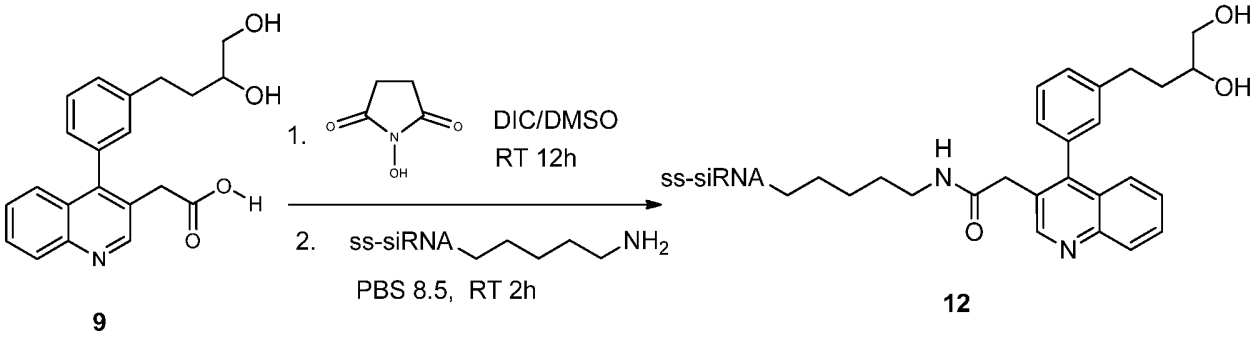


A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.49 mg, 0.022 mmol), **9** (6.26 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.73 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_4$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **11**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6492.

2.MM. **Synthesis of siRNA conjugated with X1064**



Scheme 3: Overview of the synthesis of **12**.



A mixture of *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (2.48 mg, 0.022 mmol), **9** (6.26 mg, 0.011 mmol), and DIC (2.72 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMSO (200 uL) was stirred at RT for 12h. 10 uL of reaction mixture was diluted with 190 uL DMSO. To the resulting solution was added a freshly ss-siRNA-$(CH_2)_5$-NH_2 solution (2mg, 0.325 umol in 80 uL PBS 8.5 buffer). The reaction mixture was vortexed and sat at RT for 2h. The crude product was purified by HPLC with 10-40% 100 mM triethylammonium acetate in acetonitrile/water to afford **12**. TOF MS (ES^-): 6506.

EXAMPLE 3. 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and a 3' end cap (e.g., PAZ ligand)

RNA interference activity of 18-mer duplexes comprising a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and any of various 3' end caps is analyzed. *In vitro* and *in vivo* potency is studied, as shown in Example 3A (*in vitro* data) and 3B (*in vivo* data).

EXAMPLE 3A. In vitro potency of 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and a 3' end cap (PAZ ligand)

Potency of 18-mer HAMP (Hepcidin) siRNA - PAZ Ligand Conjugates is studied.
A variety of constructs were made using the same two sequences. Some of these have or do not have a modification at the last two nt at the 3' end (2'-MOE, or MOE). Some of these have

or do not have a ribitol spacer (Rib). A variety of 3' end caps is also used.
Hepcidin mRNA down regulation in HuH-7 cells is studied at 3 doses.
Two test sequences used are hs_HAMP_400 and 402. "hs" indicates "*Homo sapiens*". 400 is a sequence beginning at position 400 and 402 is an overlapping sequence beginning at position 402
Parent stem format: A106S42 (2'-OMe chemistry, as shown in Fig. 5A and 5B). Various other hs_HAMP 400 and 402 are depicted in Figs. 5A (Guide or antisense strand) and 5B (corresponding Sense strand).

Results are shown in Figs. 4A and 4B and 7 and in Table 5, below.

Figs. 4A and 4B show the in vitro RNA interference or KD (knockdown) mediated by various RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap: BP (biphenyl), C6, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, and X069 on the guide (antisense) strand. The circled data points in Figs. 4A and 4B represent the most potent format for hs_HAMP_400 and the most potent format for the hs_HAMP_402.

Additional data is provided in Table 5, below. This Table indicates the Nickname ("Oligo Identifier") for the 3' end cap, and the DMT, Succinate and Carboxylate variants thereof; the Carboxylate Kd; the KD (knockdown) mediated by a Hepcidin RNAi agent comprising the 3' end cap (format: S402 + ribitol + MOE clamp) at 5 nM *in vitro*; and the approximate (approx.) IC50

TABLE 6.

Oligo Identifier (Nickname)	Hepcidin KD at 5 nM in vitro (%)	Hepcidin (approx.) IC50
BP (biphenyl)	68	2.3
X027	57	3.3
X038	62	2.6
X050	61	4.0
X051	61	3.4
X052	64	3.0

X058	68	2.7
X059	55	4.1
X060	65	3.5
X061	61	3.0
X062	63	3.5
X063	56	3.7
X064	60	3.1
X065	66	3.0
X066	49	4.9
X067	66	2.5
X068	63	3.0
X069	81	1.5
C6	66	2.6

FIG. 6 shows the residual gene activity (wherein residual gene activity = 100% - KD) of mouse Hepcidin mm-reporter levels at 72 hours in COS1 cells after various doses of 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a spacer, a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker, and 3' end cap, at a range from 1.57 nM to 15 nM. The format of the strands is indicated. The 3' end of the sense strand terminates in a 2' MOE-clamp – ribp (ribitol spacer) – C6. The 3' end of the antisense strand terminates in a 2' MOE-clamp – ribp (ribitol spacer) – ligand, wherein the ligands used were 3' end caps (X027, X058, X067, etc.).

These data thus show the efficacy of various RNAi agents having the 18-mer format wherein the 3' end cap is BP (biphenyl), C6, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, or X069.

EXAMPLE 3B. In vivo potency of 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap (PAZ ligand)

Example 3A showed the in vitro potency of various 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap. Example 3B shows the in vivo potency of various 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap.

These in vivo experiments used these parameters:

Mice (n=5/group) injected via IV bolus (tail vein): LNP569

- PBS
- LNP569 - Hamp254 - X052 (SL52-49CE) - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 - Hamp254 - X058 (IL54-43-XE) - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 - Hamp254 - X067 (YL55-48RE) - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 - Hamp254 - X038 (CL51-55IE) - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 - Hamp254 - X069 (GA35-24OF) - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 - Hamp254 - X027 (ML59-39NE) - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 - Hamp254 - C6 control – 3mg/kg

LNP569 is a lipid nanoparticle preparation of the RNAi agent.

Two timepoints – 48 and 168hrs post-injection (both 3mg/kg).

Assess hepcidin knockdown in liver (mRNA - qPCR)

Key questions are asked:

Are PAZ domain ligands active in vivo? (This is tested at the 48 hour timepoint.)

Do PAZ domain ligands provide benefit for duration of knockdown? (This is tested at the 168 hour timepoint.)

The results are shown in Figures 7A and 7B.

Figs. 7A and 7B show that in both the ABI Hamp1 Taqman assay (Fig. 7A) and the Hamp1 specific Taqman Assay (Fig. 7B) all of the RNAi agents were able to mediate Hepcidin

knockdown in vivo at 48 hours post-dose, with a 1x3 mg/kg dose. 3' end caps used were: X052, X058, X067, X038, X069, and X027, with C6 as a control.

The finding that 18-mer RNAi agents with 3' end caps of X052, X058, X067, X038, X069, X027, or C6 are still able to mediate RNA interference at 48 hours indicates that the 3' end caps protect the RNAi agents against degradation or digestion (e.g., by nucleases in the serum).

Fig. 8A shows that in the Hamp1 specific Taqman assay, the 18-mer duplex comprising the X058 3' end cap was still able to mediate RNA interference (measured by Hepcidin knockdown) at 168 hours post-dose in vivo. Thus, >50% knockdown was observed in mice after 7 days with a single dose.

These data thus show the efficacy of RNAi agents having the 18-mer format, wherein the 3' end cap is X052, X058, X067, X038, X069, X027, or C6.

EXAMPLE 3C. Interaction of X058 with Ago2.

Without being bound by any particular theory, this disclosure notes that the increased potency and duration of knockdown mediated by 18-mer RNAi agents with a X058 3' end cap in Example 3B may be due to the increased association of X058 with Ago2. Fig. 9B shows the X058 and C6 Ago2 Pulldown experiment using Hepcidin 18-mer oligonucleotides.

Briefly, antibodies to Ago2 were used to pull down Ago2 from cells 72 after dosage with RNAi agents comprising either a X058 or C6 3' end cap, or a non-targeting (NT) control RNAi agent. Analysis was then performed to determine levels of RNAi agents, as shown. Fig. 9B shows that, after 72 hrs, much more RNAi agent with X058 was associated with Ago2 than the RNAi agent with C6.

Thus, these data show that:

HAMP 18-mer (254) siRNAs with X038, X052, X058, X067, or X069 PAZ ligands on guide strand are active *in vivo*.

X058 shows convincing increased potency and duration of knockdown.

These data thus show the efficacy of RNAi agents having the 18-mer format, wherein the 3' end cap is X038, X052, X058, X067, or X069.

EXAMPLE 3C. Additional in vivo testing.

An additional in vivo testing was done with different chemical formats: (A160_S38,S42,S45 & A161_S38,S42,S45).

In the antisense strand:

A160_ → F in position 2 and ribC6 overhang

A161_ → F in position 2, 5, 6, 7 and ribC6 overhang

In the sense strand:

_S38 → C6 overhang

_S42 → ribC6 overhang

_S45 → BP overhang

Parameters used in this experiment were:

Mice (n=5/group) injected via IV bolus (tail vein): LNP569

- PBS
- LNP569 – Hamp254 A160_S38 - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 – Hamp254 A160_S42 - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 – Hamp254 A160_S45 - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 – Hamp254 A161_S38 - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 – Hamp254 A161_S42 - 3mg/kg
- LNP569 – Hamp254 A161_S45- 3mg/kg

48 hour timepoint.

Assess hepcidin knockdown in liver (mRNA - qPCR)

The results are shown in FIG. 10. FIG. 10 shows the *In vivo* comparison of A160 & A161 format [various passenger (sense) strand overhangs]. This experiment was done 48 hours post-dose, with a 1x3mg/kg dose.

EXAMPLE 4. ADDITIONAL STUDIES SHOWING EFFICACY OF 18-MERS COMPRISING A SPACER, A SECOND PHOSPHATE OR MODIFIED INTERNUCLEOSIDE LINKER, AND A 3' END CAP.

Additional studies are performed using 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap.

FIG. 13A shows the efficacy of 18-mer RNAi agents wherein the 3' end cap is X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X058 or C6. HuR is the target. Doses used are: 1 nM, 0.25 nM, 0.62 nM, and 0.16 nM. RNAi agents comprising any of the 3' end caps were able to mediate RNA interference, particularly at the highest doses used.

In particular, HuR-PAZ ligands X110, X111 and X112 appear to be similar in potency as X058.

These data thus show the efficacy of RNAi agents having an 18-mer format wherein the 3' end cap is X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X058 or C6.

Table 6, below, provides additional data showing the efficacy of 18-mer format RNAi agents with various 3' end caps: X059, X050, X061, X051, X027, X062, X060, C6 (X003), X068, X065, X069, X097, X066, X098, X052, X063, BP (X014), X038, X067, X058, X064, and ribprib (X025).

TABLE 7. Efficacy of RNAi agents with a 3' end cap to ELAVL1/HuR in Huh-7 cells in vitro

		AV			SD		
		5.04	9.95	19.85	5.04	9.95	19.85
Nickname siTrack	**siRNA**	% residual mRNA (qRT-PCR)					
untreated - HB	untreated	100.54			10.76		
av_PSAT6-EYFP-N1_471_A25S27	eYFP neg. control 1	110.06	104.72	101.98	6.52	13.38	11.84
av_PNAS-280_1_A25S27	eYFP neg. control 2	102.15	96.16	98.87	15.02	6.60	9.41
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X059	45.17	20.58	10.24	2.84	0.63	0.79
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X050	26.69	11.48	6.92	0.99	2.40	1.41
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X061	26.11	11.49	6.25	5.81	0.99	0.74
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X051	25.35	10.80	6.88	3.28	0.61	0.86
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X027	24.54	11.67	6.17	2.90	1.38	1.03
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X062	24.35	11.68	5.66	2.88	1.46	1.17
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X060	23.86	9.27	5.62	1.10	0.86	0.76
hs_ELAVL1_1186_A106_S42	18-mer siRNA with C6 (X003)	22.42	9.77	5.65	1.90	1.60	1.31
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X068	22.40	10.77	5.89	2.25	1.92	1.31
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X065	22.24	10.50	5.20	3.44	1.26	0.96
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X069	21.93	9.57	6.13	6.25	1.11	1.57
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X097	21.26	9.83	6.29	3.45	1.98	1.27
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X066	21.12	10.25	5.77	2.04	1.14	0.43
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X098	21.06	9.94	6.15	4.39	2.16	1.29
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X052	21.02	8.32	6.75	1.41	1.29	0.93
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X063	20.53	10.91	5.61	3.01	0.86	0.18
hs_ELAVL1_1186_A324_S42	18-mer siRNA with BP (X014)	20.38	9.37	6.19	2.56	1.37	0.67
hs_ELAVL1_1186_A27_S30	19-mer pos. control	19.90	8.03	5.40	1.40	0.98	0.37
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X038	19.80	10.60	5.26	2.52	0.75	0.75
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X067	19.07	11.38	5.82	2.02	3.00	0.94
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X058	18.40	10.36	6.23	2.70	2.78	0.42
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with X064	18.33	9.84	6.49	3.03	0.45	1.67
hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42	18-mer siRNA with ribprib	17.10	9.78	5.75	3.69	1.38	0.75

	(X025)						
hs_ELAVL1_1186_A22_S26	21-mer pos. control	16.68	8.61	5.15	2.39	1.17	0.86

This table provides: the nickname of the RNAi agent (column 1); the length and the 3' end cap used and identification of controls (column 2); % residual mRNA level, as determined by qRT-PCR, at doses of 5.04, 9.95, and 19.85 nM (columns 3-5); standard deviation (SD) (columns 6-8). HuR is normalized to Cyc.

The knockdown (RNA interference activity) can be readily calculated by subtracting the % residual mRNA from 100%. Thus, the final line shows that the 21-mer pos. (positive) control exhibits 16.68% residual mRNA, indicating 83.32% knockdown.

These data thus show the efficacy of various RNAi agents having the 18-mer format wherein the 3' end cap is: BP (X014), C6 (X003), rib (X025), X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, or X098. It is noted that the construct designed "18-mer siRNA with ribprib" comprises a first strand and a second strand, wherein the 3' end of one strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (ribitol), a second phosphate and a 3' end cap (a second ribitol).

EXAMPLE 5. 18-MER RNAi AGENTS COMPRISING A SPACER, A SECOND PHOSPHATE OR MODIFIED INTERNUCLEOSIDE LINKER, AND A 3' END CAP

[00552] This Example shows efficacy of 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a spacer, a second phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and a 3' end cap which is:

X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1024 or X1025 (Fig. 23A);

X1011, X1012, X1013, X058, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1026, X1027 (Fig. 23B): or

X1018; X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022 or X1028 (Fig. 23C).

It is noted that in this example, C3, C4 and C5 "linkers" refer to a portion of the 3' end cap between the R1 and the head group. This terminology should be differentiated from the C3, C4, and C5 "spacers".

The efficacy of such RNAi agents is shown in Figs. 23A, 23B and 23C.

These data thus show the efficacy of RNAi agents having an 18-mer format, wherein the 3' end cap is X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1024 or X1025 (Fig. 23A); X1011, X1012, X1013, X058, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1026, X1027 (Fig. 23B): or X1018; X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022 or X1028 (Fig. 23C).

[00553] A HuR 18-mer RNAi agent is used.

[00554] In these experiments, Huh-7 cells are transfected using RNAiMax in a 96-well plate format. RNA is isolated 48 hours post-transfection. HuR mRNA is normalized to PPIA endogenous control. RNAi agent concentrations of 3, 10 and 30 pM are chosen based on IC50 data of the PAZ ligands (3' end caps) previously analyzed. For the X109 to X113 data, an average of two previous data sets is provided.

[00555] In general, length of the linker within the 3' end cap does not significantly affect potency of any of the 3' end caps.

[00556] In separate but related experiments, IC50 data was determined for several 3' end caps using HuR RNAi agents in Huh-7 cells. Data points for two separate studies are shown below:

3' end cap	pM IC50 study#1	pM IC50 study#2
X058	5.85	12.78
X109	3.47	3.85
X110	1.50	6.42
X111	1.21	3.63
X112	0.72	2.38
X113	2.71	4.55

These data thus show the efficacy of RNAi agents having an 18-mer format, wherein the 3' end cap is X058, X109, X110, X111, X112, or X113.

EXAMPLE 6. ADDITIONAL 18-MER RNAi AGENTS COMPRISING A SPACER, A SECOND PHOSPHATE OR MODIFIED INTERNUCLEOSIDER LINKER, AND A C3, C4, or C5 LINKER IN THE 3' END CAP

This example shows the efficacy of various 18-mer RNAi agents comprising a 3' end cap which is:

X110, X1012, X1018, X111, X1013, X112, X058, X1019, X1025, X1027, or X1028.

This various 3' end caps (illustrated in Table 1) vary in the length of the linker (C3, C4 or C5) between R_2 and the head group.

The target gene is HuR. Huh-7 cells are transfected using RNAiMax transfection reagent. 24 well plates are seeded with 40,000 cells per well. "Reverse transfection" with 1 nM RNAi agent/well is done, followed by incubation for approximately 18 hours. Duplicate plates are set up using one for RNA extraction and the other for duration. Transfection media is replaced with fresh growth media (no RNAi agent) and cells are incubated for an additional 2 days before RNA isolation or split for duration experiments.

Cells are split on days 3 and 7 post-transfection. RNA is isolated at days 3, 7 and 10 post-transfection for HuR mRNA analysis.

Results are shown in Figs. 21 and 22. The control (NTC) is a mFVII 21-mer RNAi agent.

In Fig. 21, ligand LME844 (X110, X1012 and X1018), the linker length does not appear to alter the duration of activity. For ligand PKF027-895 (X111 and X1013), the shorter linker (C3) and the C4 linker are not significantly different.

In Fig. 22, for ligand LPI230 (X1025, X1027 and X1028), the duration of the C3 linker is better than the longer linkers. There is evidence of this as early as Day 7 post-transfection.

For ligand LKS871 (X112, X058 and X1019), the longer linker appears to have slightly better activity at the later time point and the "trend" is there at Day 7, as well, although the error bars overlaps and it is probably not significant. The X058 activity at Day 10 is about 15% less than demonstrated in a previous duration study, but there will be study to study variability for these types of analyses.

These data thus show the efficacy of RNAi agents comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminate in a phosphate and further

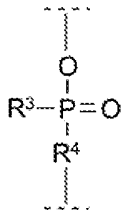
comprise, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer (e.g., ribitol), a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap (e.g., X110, X1012, X1018, X111, X1013, X112, X058, X1019, X1025, X1027, or X1028).

EXAMPLE 7. Efficacy of additional 3' end caps

The 3' end caps X1062, X1063 and X1064 were each found to be efficacious when used on RNAi agents. For example, these were effective on HuR siRNAs, wherein the HuR siRNAs were 18-mers as described herein, wherein the 3' end of each strand terminates in a phosphate and further comprises, in 5' to 3' direction, a spacer which is ribitol, a second phosphate, and a 3' end cap which is X1062, X1063 or X1064. Huh7 cells were transfected with siRNAs using RNAi Max transfection reagent; 24-well plates were seeded with 40,000 cells per well; reverse transfection was performed with 1 nM siRNA per well, and cells were incubated for about 18 hours. Transfection medium was replaced (without siRNA), and cells were incubated for an additional 2 days before RNA isolation or split for seeding. Cells were split on days 3 and 7 post transfection for duration time points. RNA was isolated at days 3, 7 and 10 post-transfection for HuR mRNA analysis. HuR siRNAs with 3' end caps which were X1062 demonstrated efficacy (knockdown) of 89.0, 77.9 and 32.7% after 3, 7 or 10 days. HuR siRNAs with 3' end caps which were X1063 and X1064 showed 89.6, 81.5, and 43.7%; and 67.0, 30.9 and 0.0%, respectively, after 3, 7 and 10 days.

EMBODIMENTS

1. A composition comprising a HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is that of any sequence of Table 8C.
2. A composition comprising a HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is that of any sequence or an 18-nt portion of any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10.
3. A composition comprising a HBV RNAi agents comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is that of any sequence of at least 15 contiguous nt of any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10 (e.g., nt 1-15 or nt 2-16 of any sequence in these tables).
4. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 3, wherein the HBV RNAi agent is blunt-ended.
5. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 4, wherein the first and second strands are 18-mers and together form a blunt-ended duplex, and 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a 3' end cap.
6. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 5, wherein the spacer is ribitol.
7. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 6, wherein the spacer is a ribitol, 2'-deoxyribitol, or 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol (ribitol with 2'-MOE), a C3, C4, C5 or C6, or 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol.
8. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 7, wherein the 3' end cap is C6.
9. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 8, wherein the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, X1064, or ribitol, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.
10. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 9, wherein the modified internucleoside linker is selected from phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate,



boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, and a compound of formula (I): (I), where R^3 is selected from O^-, S^-, NH_2, BH_3, CH_3, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{6-10} aryl, C_{1-6} alkoxy and C_{6-10} aryl-oxy, wherein C_{1-6} alkyl and C_{6-10} aryl are unsubstituted or optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 groups independently selected from halo, hydroxyl and NH_2; and R^4 is selected from O, S, NH, or CH_2.

11. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 10, wherein one or more nucleotides is modified or is substituted with DNA, a peptide nucleic acid (PNA), locked nucleic acid (LNA), morpholino nucleotide, threose nucleic acid (TNA), glycol nucleic acid (GNA), arabinose nucleic acid (ANA), 2´-fluoroarabinose nucleic acid (FANA), cyclohexene nucleic acid (CeNA), anhydrohexitol nucleic acid (HNA), and/or unlocked nucleic acid (UNA).
12. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 11, wherein the RNAi agent can be modified on one or both 5' end.
13. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 12, wherein the sense strand comprises a 5' end cap which reduces the amount of the RNA interference mediated by this strand.
14. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 13, wherein the sense strand comprises a 5' end cap selected: a nucleotide lacking a 5' phosphate or 5'-OH; a nucleotide lacking a 5' phosphate or a 5'-OH and also comprising a 2-OMe or 2'-MOE modification; 5'-deoxy-2'-O-methyl modification; 5'-OME-dT; ddT; and 5'-OTr-dT.
15. The composition of any of embodiments 1 to 14, wherein at least one nucleotide is modified or substituted.
16. The composition of embodiment 15, wherein said at least one modified nucleotide is selected from among 2' alkoxyribonucleotide, 2' alkoxyalkoxy ribonucleotide, or 2'-fluoro ribonucleotide, and optionally said at least one modified nucleotide is selected from 2'-OMe, 2'-MOE and 2'-H.
17. A method of treating, ameliorating or preventing HBV in a patient, comprising the step of administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of any of embodiments 1 to 16.

Unless defined otherwise, the technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as that usually understood by a specialist familiar with the field to which the disclosure belongs.

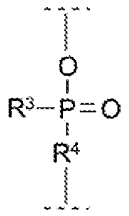
Unless indicated otherwise, all methods, steps, techniques and manipulations that are not specifically described in detail can be performed and have been performed in a manner known per se, as will be clear to the skilled person. Reference is for example again made to the standard handbooks and the general background art mentioned herein and to the further references cited therein. Unless indicated otherwise, each of the references cited herein is incorporated in its entirety by reference.

Claims are non-limiting and are provided below.

Although particular embodiments and claims have been disclosed herein in detail, this has been done by way of example for purposes of illustration only, or is not intended to be limiting with respect to the scope of the appended claims, or the scope of subject matter of claims of any corresponding future application. In particular, it is contemplated by the inventors that various substitutions, alterations, and modifications may be made to the disclosure without departing from the spirit and scope of the disclosure as defined by the claims. The choice of nucleic acid starting material, clone of interest, or library type is believed to be a matter of routine for a person of ordinary skill in the art with knowledge of the embodiments described herein. Other embodiments, advantages, and modifications considered to be within the scope of the following claims. Those skilled in the art will recognize or be able to ascertain, using no more than routine experimentation, many equivalents of the specific embodiments of the disclosure described herein. Such equivalents are intended to be encompassed by the following claims. Redrafting of claim scope in later filed corresponding applications may be due to limitations by the patent laws of various countries and should not be interpreted as giving up subject matter of the claims.

CLAIMS

1. A composition comprising a HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is that of any sequence of Table 8C.
2. A composition comprising a HBV RNAi agent comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is that of any sequence or an 18-nt portion of any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10.
3. A composition comprising a HBV RNAi agents comprising a first and a second strand, wherein the sequence of the first and/or second strand is that of any sequence of at least 15 contiguous nt of any sequence in any of Tables 8B – 8E or 10.
4. The composition of any of claims 1 to 3, wherein the HBV RNAi agent is blunt-ended.
5. The composition of any of claims 1 to 4, wherein the first and second strands are 18-mers and together form a blunt-ended duplex, and 3' end of the first and/or second strand terminates in a phosphate or modified internucleoside linker and further comprises, in 5' to 3' order: a spacer and a 3' end cap.
6. The composition of any of claims 1 to 5, wherein the spacer is ribitol.
7. The composition of any of claims 1 to 6, wherein the spacer is a ribitol, 2'-deoxyribitol, or 2'-methoxyethoxy ribitol (ribitol with 2'-MOE), a C3, C4, C5 or C6, or 4-methoxybutane-1,3-diol.
8. The composition of any of claims 1 to 7, wherein the 3' end cap is C6.
9. The composition of any of claims 1 to 8, wherein the 3' end cap is triethylene glycol, cyclohexyl, phenyl, BP (biphenyl), lithochol (lithocholic acid), adamantane, C3 amino, C7 amino, C3, C6, C8, C10, C12, X027, X038, X050, X051, X052, X058, X059, X060, X061, X062, X063, X064, X065, X066, X067, X068, X069, X097, X098, X109, X110, X111, X112, X113, X1009, X1010, X1011, X1012, X1013, X1015, X1016, X1017, X1018, X1019, X1020, X1021, X1022, X1024, X1025, X1026, X1027, X1028, X1047, X1048, X1049, X1062, X1063, X1064, or ribitol, or any 3' end cap disclosed herein or known in the art.
10. The composition of any of claims 1 to 9, wherein the modified internucleoside linker is selected from phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate,



boranophosphonoate, an amide linker, and a compound of formula (I): (I), where R^3 is selected from O^-, S^-, NH_2, BH_3, CH_3, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{6-10} aryl, C_{1-6} alkoxy and C_{6-10} aryl-oxy, wherein C_{1-6} alkyl and C_{6-10} aryl are unsubstituted or optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 groups independently selected from halo, hydroxyl and NH_2; and R^4 is selected from O, S, NH, or CH_2.

11. The composition of any of claims 1 to 10, wherein one or more nucleotides is modified or is substituted with DNA, a peptide nucleic acid (PNA), locked nucleic acid (LNA), morpholino nucleotide, threose nucleic acid (TNA), glycol nucleic acid (GNA), arabinose nucleic acid (ANA), 2´-fluoroarabinose nucleic acid (FANA), cyclohexene nucleic acid (CeNA), anhydrohexitol nucleic acid (HNA), and/or unlocked nucleic acid (UNA).
12. The composition of any of claims 1 to 11, wherein the RNAi agent can be modified on one or both 5' end.
13. The composition of any of claims 1 to 12, wherein the sense strand comprises a 5' end cap which reduces the amount of the RNA interference mediated by this strand.
14. The composition of any of claims 1 to 13, wherein the sense strand comprises a 5' end cap selected: a nucleotide lacking a 5' phosphate or 5'-OH; a nucleotide lacking a 5' phosphate or a 5'-OH and also comprising a 2-OMe or 2'-MOE modification; 5'-deoxy-2'-O-methyl modification; 5'-OME-dT; ddT; and 5'-OTr-dT.
15. The composition of any of claims 1 to 14, wherein at least one nucleotide is modified or substituted.
16. The composition of claim 15, wherein said at least one modified nucleotide is selected from among 2' alkoxyribonucleotide, 2' alkoxyalkoxy ribonucleotide, or 2'-fluoro ribonucleotide, and optionally said at least one modified nucleotide is selected from 2'-OMe, 2'-MOE and 2'-H.
17. A method of treating, ameliorating or preventing HBV in a patient, comprising the step of administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of any of claims 1 to 16.

FIG. 1

5'-NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN-X-3'
3'-X-NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN-5'

A12S17 modification scheme

5'-UUuAAUUGAAACcAAGACA-X-3' antisense mF7-3
3'-X-AAAuuAAcuuuGGuucuGu-5' sense

X = C3, C6, C12, glycol, cyclohex, phenyl, biphenyl, lithochol (lithocholic acid), C7 amino, C3 amino

A = 2'-MOE A; u = 2'-OMe
C = 2'-MOE (5-Me)C; c = 2'-Ome

FIG. 2

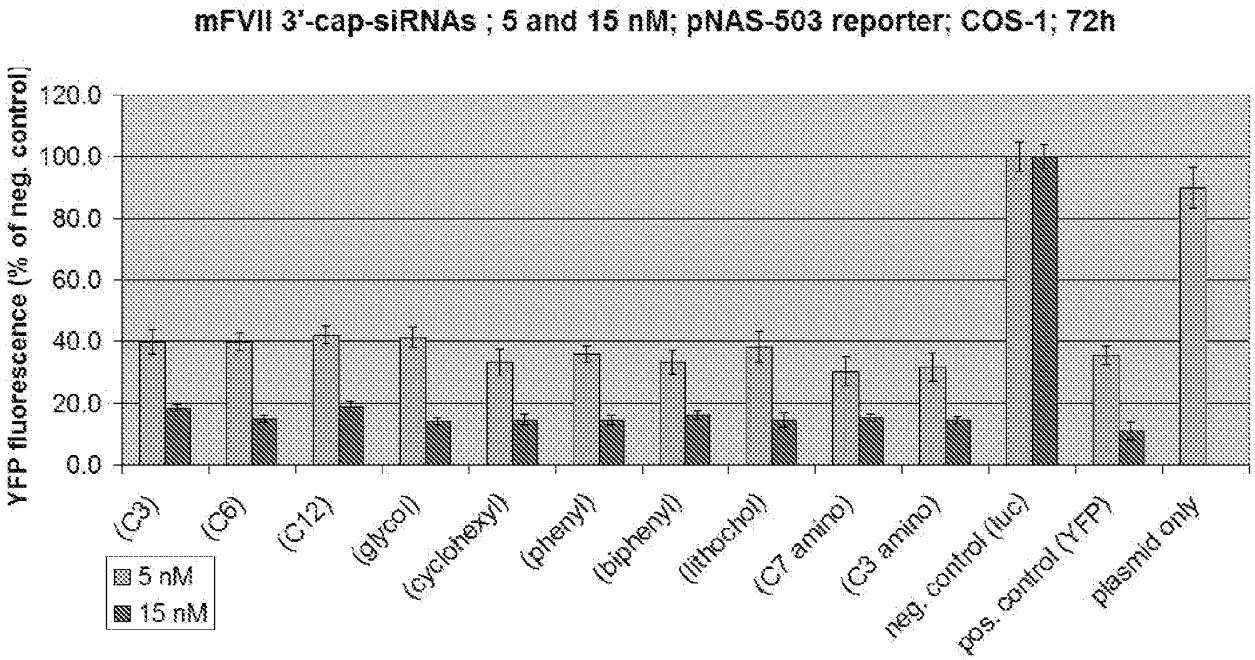

mFVII 3'-cap-siRNAs ; 5 and 15 nM; pNAS-503 reporter; COS-1; 72h
YFP fluorescence (% of neg. control)
120.0
100.0
80.0
60.0
40.0
20.0
0.0
5 nM
15 nM
(C3)
(C6)
(C12)
(glycol)
(cyclohexyl)
(phenyl)
(biphenyl)
(lithocholl)
(C7 amino)
(C3 amino)
neg. control (luc)
pos. control (YFP)
plasmid only

FIG. 3

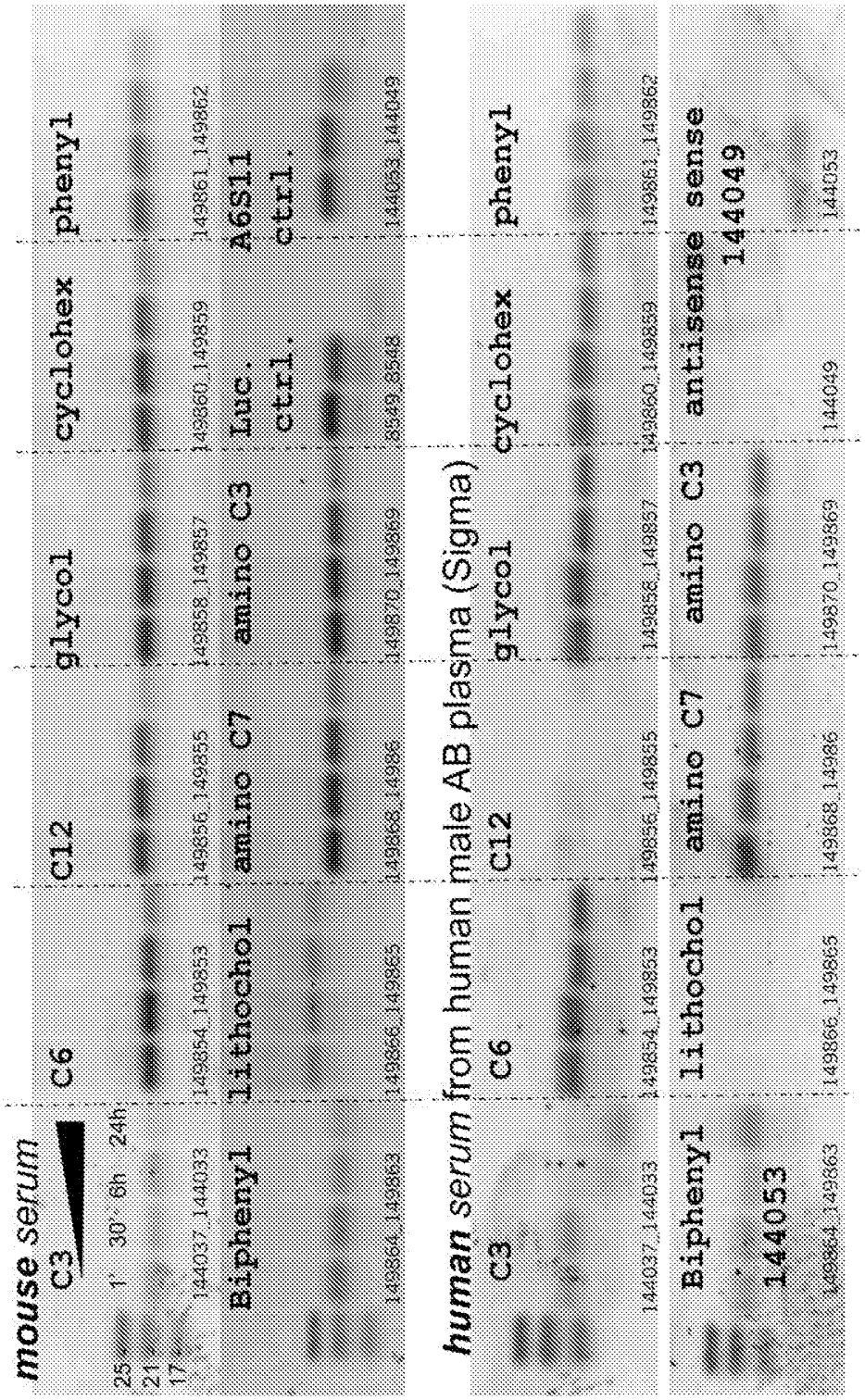

mouse serum
C3
1 30' 6h 24h
25
21
17
C6
C12
glycol
cyclohex
phenyl
144037_144033
149364_149363
149356_149355
149358_149357
149360_149359
149361_149362
Biphenyl
lithochol
amino C7
amino C3
Luc. ctrl.
A6S11 ctrl.
149366_149365
149368_14986
149870_149869
9349_9348
144053_144049
human serum from human male AB plasma (Sigma)
C3
C6
C12
glycol
cyclohex
phenyl
149354_149353
149356_149355
149358_149357
149360_149359
149361_149362
Biphenyl
lithochol
amino C7
amino C3
antisense
144049
144053
149364_149363
149866_149865
149368_14986
149870_149869
144049
144053

FIG. 4A

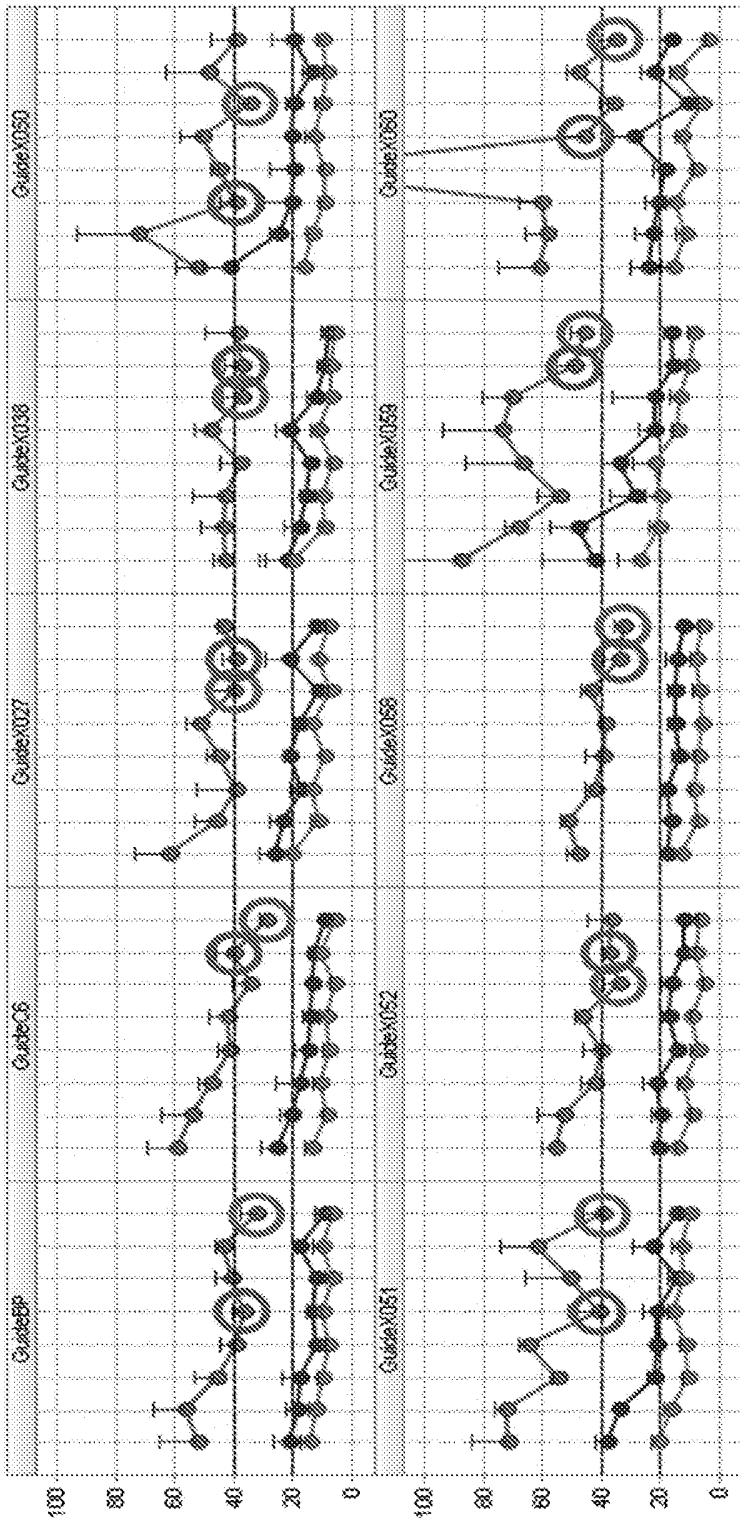

GuideBP
GuideC6
GuideX027
GuideX038
GuideX053
GuideX051
GuideX052
GuideX059
GuideX060
100
80
60
40
20
0

FIG. 4B.

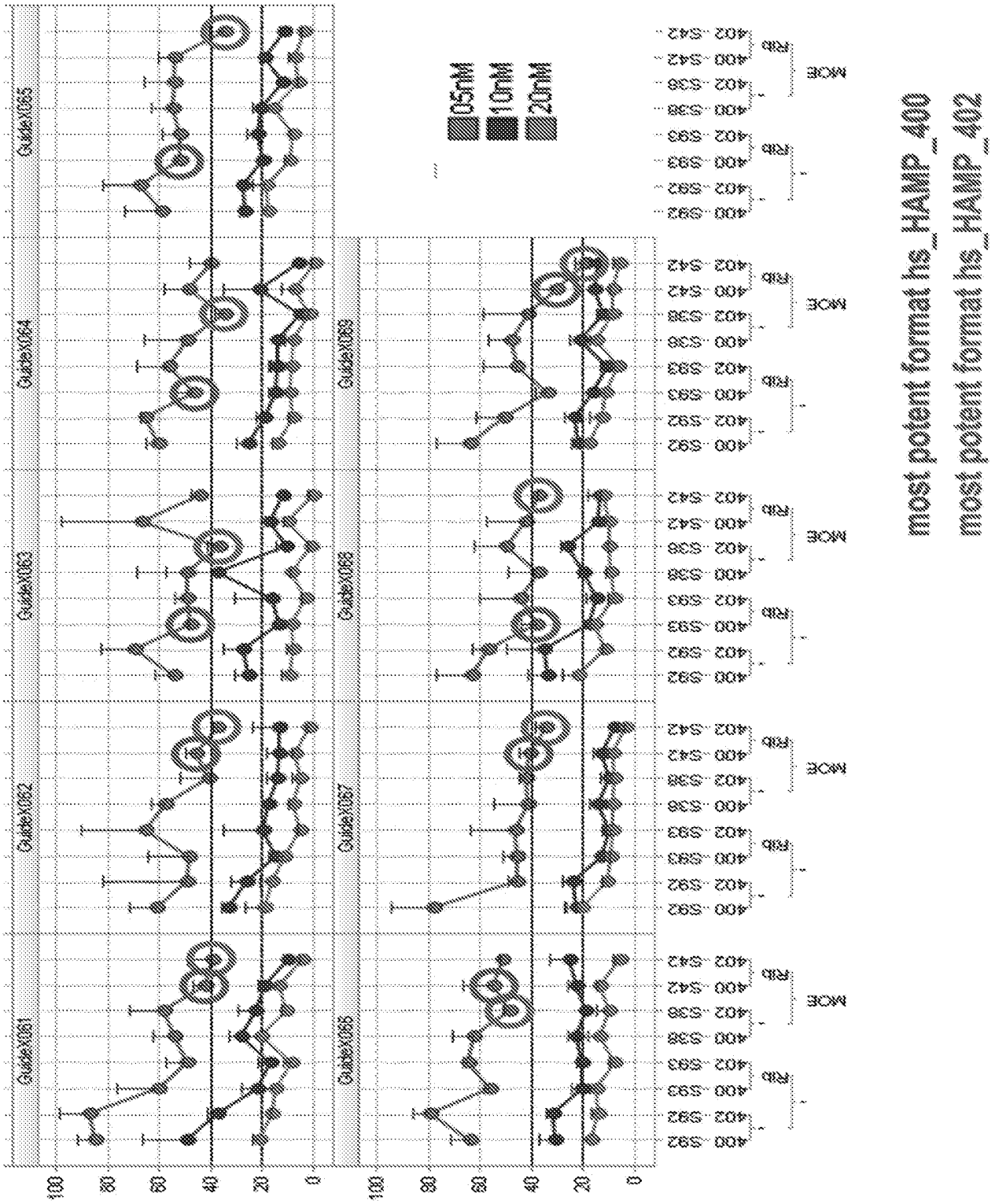

Guide1061
Guide1062
Guide1063
Guide1064
Guide1065
Guide1066
Guide1067
Guide1068
Guide1069
05nM
10nM
20nM
MOE
R9
most potent format hs_HAMP_400
most potent format hs_HAMP_402

FIG. 5A Guide

Format	Pos	P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	P7	P8	P9	P10	P11	P12	P13	P14	P15	P16	P17	P18	P19	OV20	OV21
A106S42	400	T	A	t	t	C	C	A	A	G	A	C	C	t	A	t	G			ribp	C6	
A107S42	400	T	A	t	t	C	C	A	A	G	A	C	C	t	A	t	G			ribp	C6	
A107*S42	400	T	A	t	t	C	c	A	A	G	A	c	C	t	A	t	G			ribp	C6	
A107*3'X058_pos4_DNA_S42	400	T	A	t	T	C	c	A	A	G	A	c	C	t	A	t	G			ribp	X058	
A107*3'X058_pos7_DNA_S42	400	T	A	t	t	C	c	T	A	G	A	c	C	t	A	t	G			ribp	X058	
A107*3'X058_pos8_DNA_S42	400	T	A	t	t	C	c	A	T	G	A	c	C	t	A	t	G			ribp	X058	
A106S42	402	T	T	t	A	t	t	C	C	A	A	G	A	C	C	t	A			ribp	C6	
A107S42	402	T	T	t	A	t	t	C	C	A	A	G	A	C	C	t	A			ribp	C6	
A107*S42	402	T	T	t	A	t	t	C	c	A	A	G	A	c	C	t	A			ribp	C6	
A107*_3'X058_pos2_DNA_S42	402	T	T	t	A	t	t	C	c	A	A	G	A	c	C	t	A			ribp	X058	
A107*_3'X058_pos4_DNA_S42	402	T	T	t	T	t	t	C	c	A	A	G	A	c	C	t	A			ribp	X058	
A107*_3'X058_pos2,4_DNA_S42	402	T	T	t	T	t	t	C	c	A	A	G	A	c	C	t	A			ribp	X058	
21mer A22S26	400	T	A	T	T	C	c	A	A	G	A	C	C	t	A	T	G	T	T	C	u	u

FIG. 5B Sense

S1	S2	S3	S4	S5	S6	S7	S8	S9	S10	S11	S12	S13	S14	S15	S16	S17	S18	S19	OV20	OV21
	A	A	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A		T	ribp	C6
	A	A	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A		T	ribp	C6
	A	A	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A		T	ribp	C6
	A	A	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A		T	ribp	C6
	A	A	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A		T	ribp	C6
	A	A	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A		T	ribp	C6
	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A	t	A	T	T	ribp	C6
	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A	t	A	T	T	ribp	C6
	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A	t	A	T	T	ribp	C6
	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A	t	A	T	T	ribp	C6
	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A	t	A	T	T	ribp	C6
	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A	t	A	T	T	ribp	C6
G	A	A	c	A	t	A	G	G	t	c	t	t	G	G	A	A	t	A	u	u

RNA

2'-OMe-RNA

DNA

2'-F-RNA

2'-MOE-RNA

FIG. 6

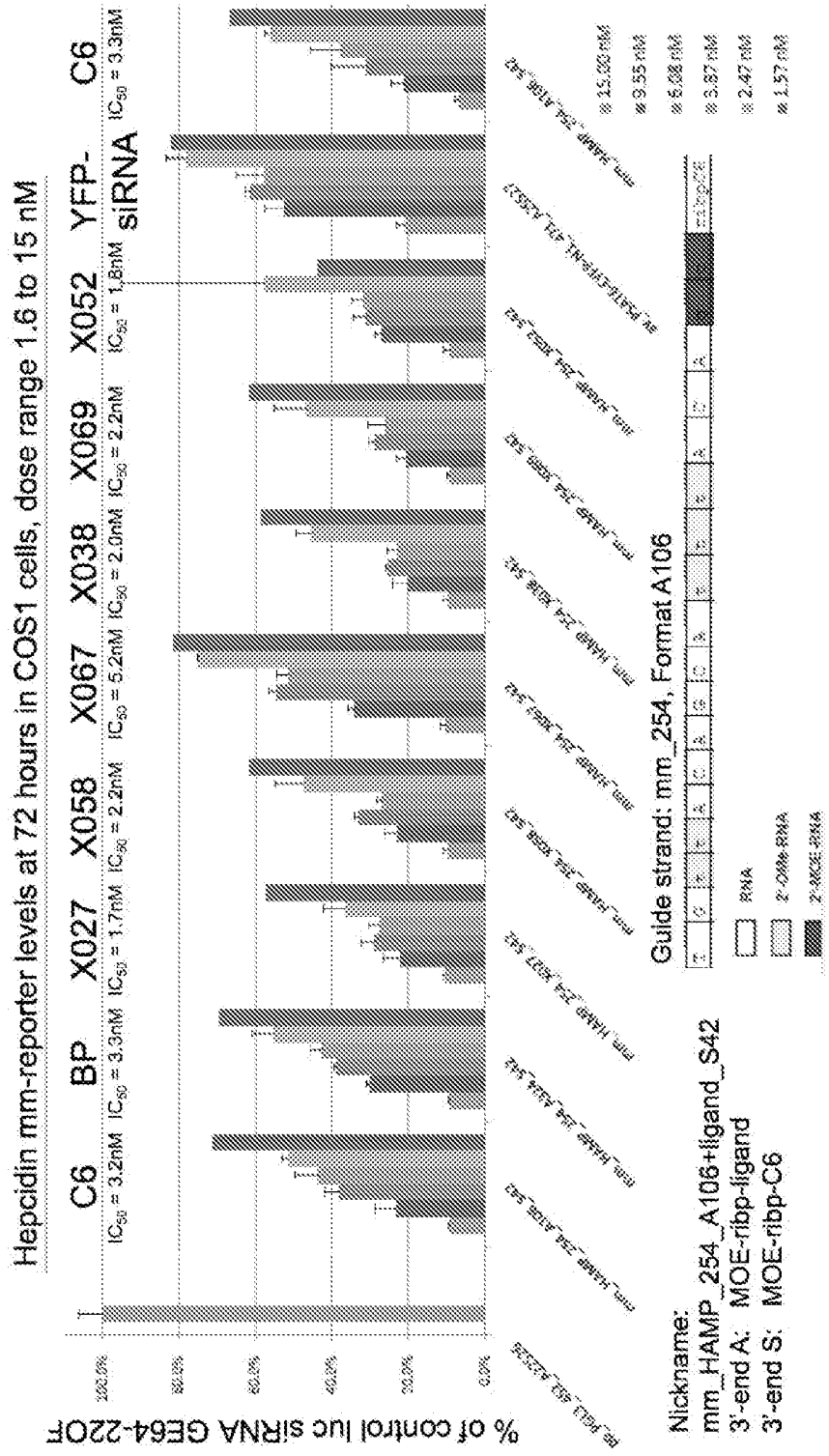

Hepcidin mm-reporter levels at 72 hours in COS1 cells, dose range 1.6 to 15 nM
C6 BP X027 X058 X067 X038 X069 X052 YFP- C6
siRNA
% of control luc siRNA GE64-22OF
Nickname:
mm_HAMP_254_A106+ligand_S42
3'-end A: MOE-ribp-ligand
3'-end S: MOE-ribp-C6
Guide strand: mm_254, Format A106
RNA
2'-OMe RNA
2'-MOE RNA

FIG. 7A

Hepcidin *in vivo* knockdown – 48 hours post dose

ABI *Hamp1* Taqman Assay

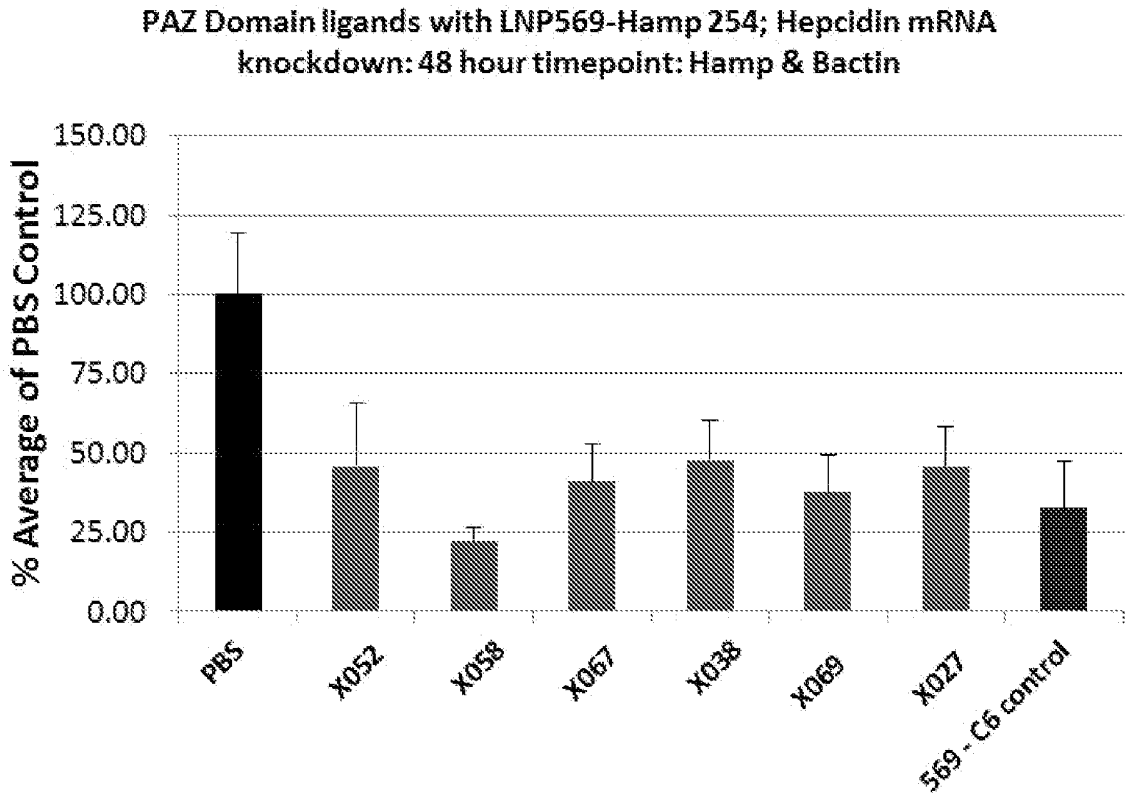


FIG. 7B

Hepcidin *in vivo* knockdown – 48 hours post dose

Hamp1 specific Taqman Assay*

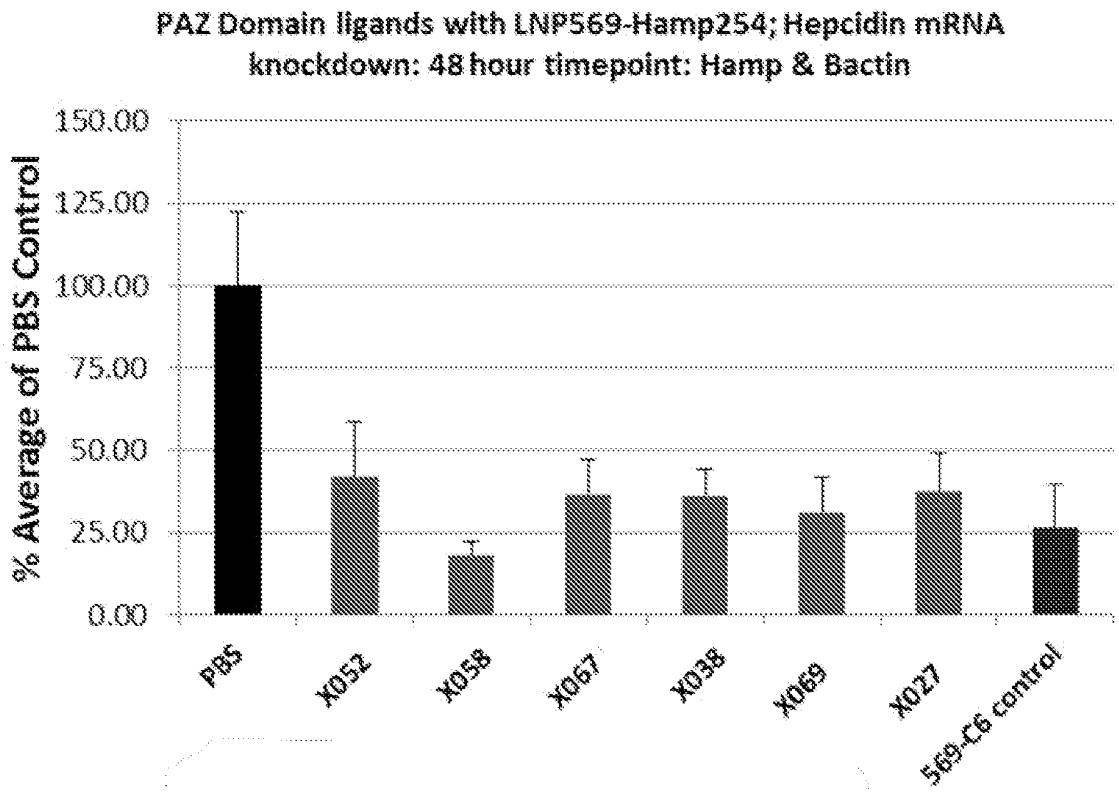


FIG. 8A

Hepcidin *in vivo* knockdown – 168 hours post dose

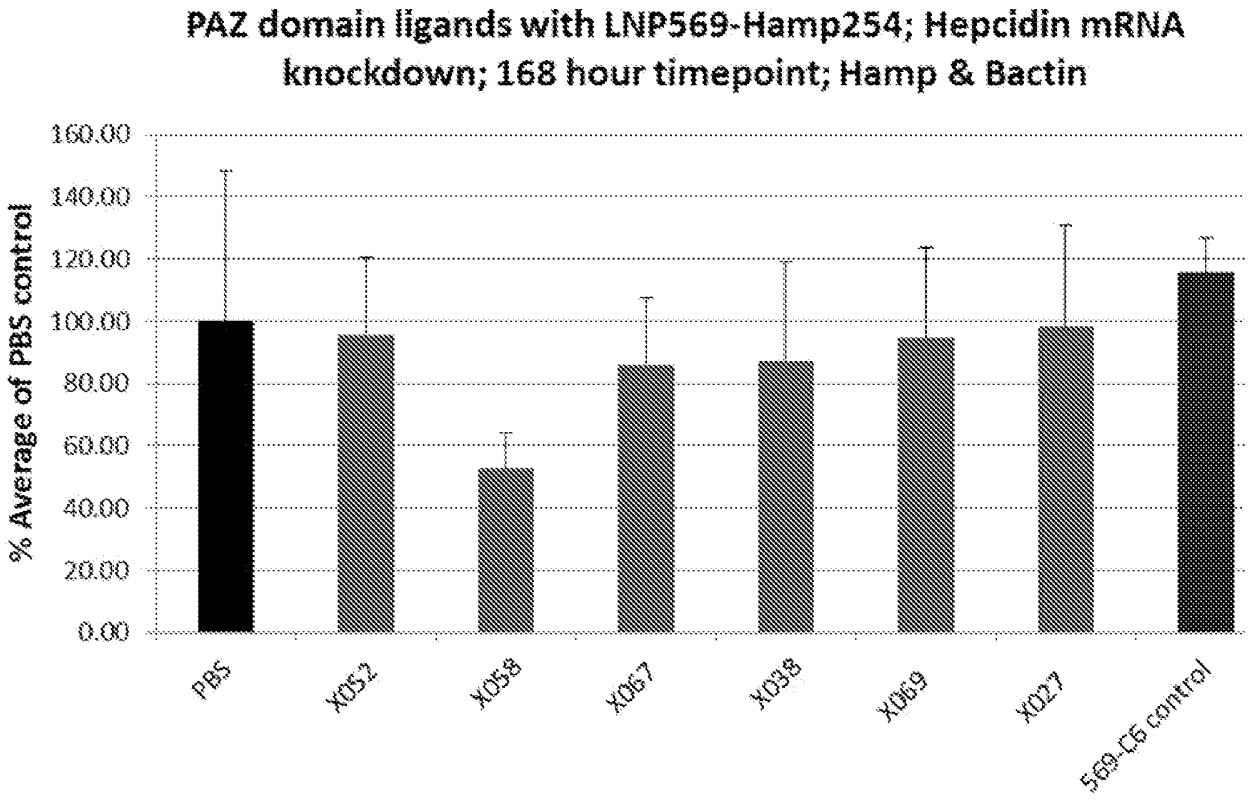


FIG. 8B

X058 and C6 Ago2 Pulldown
Hepcidin 18-mer oligonucleotides

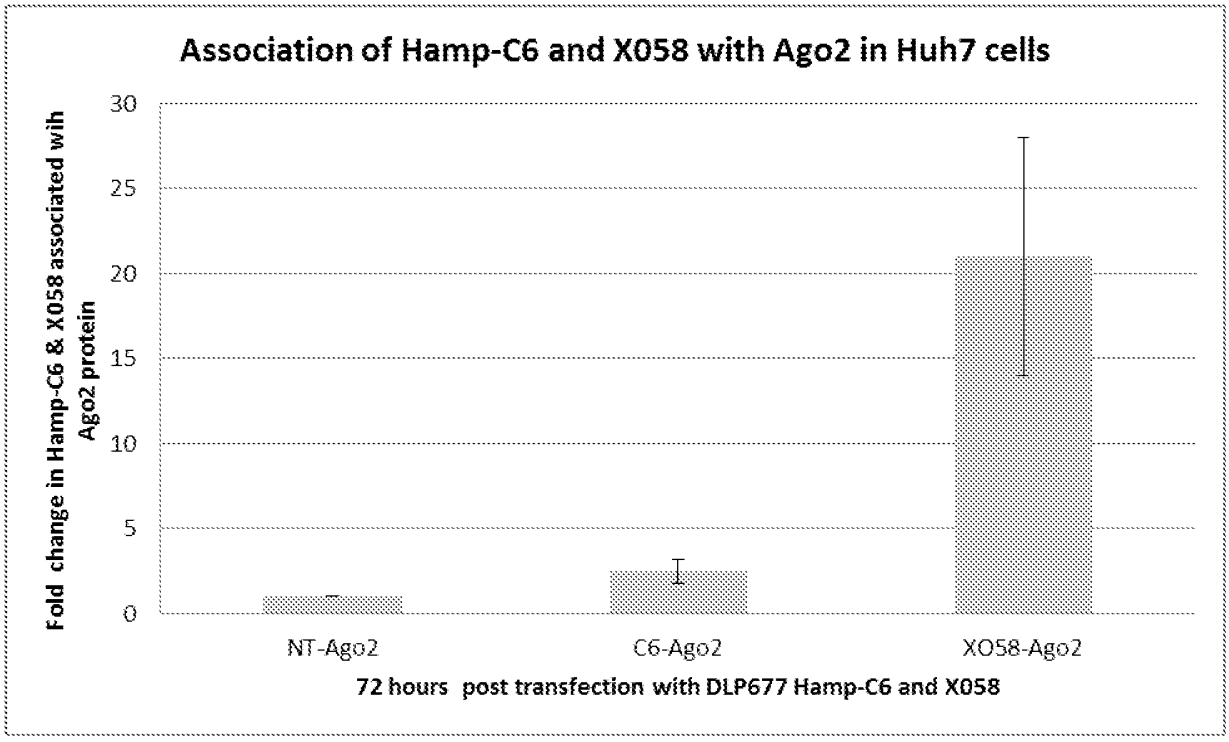


FIG. 9

In vivo comparison of A160 & A161 format

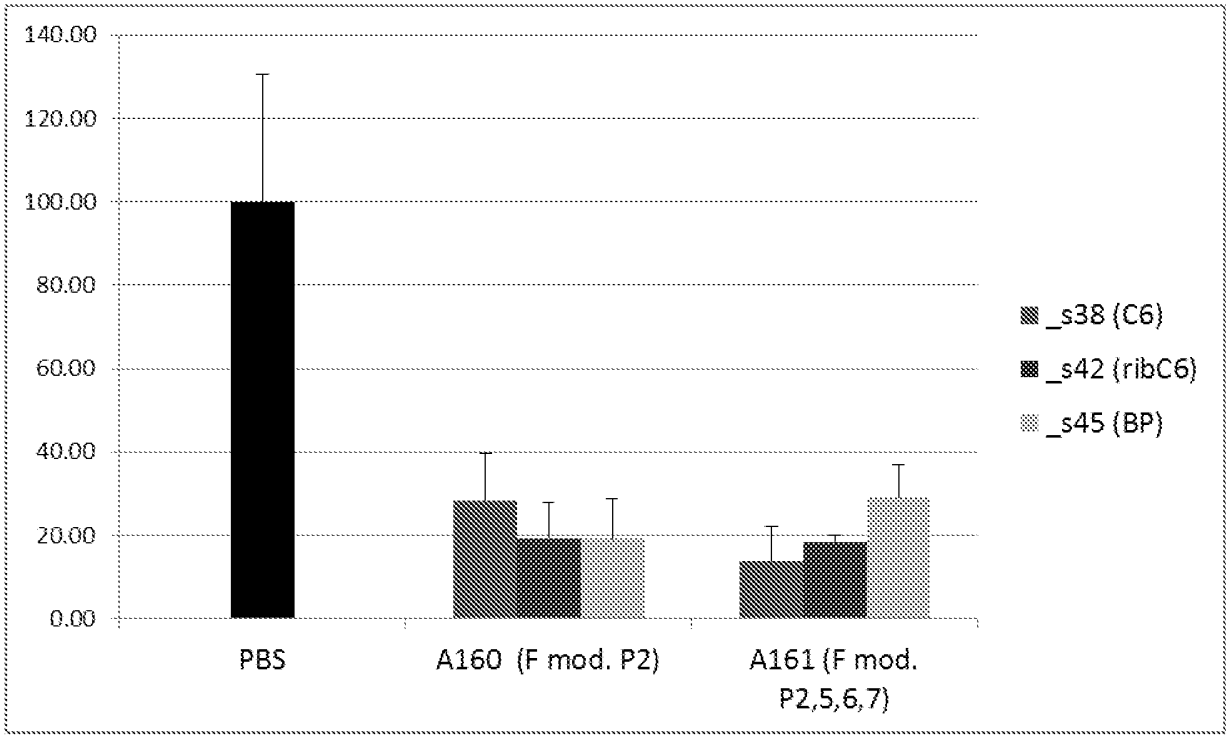


FIG. 10

(siRNA 400)			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18		
Guide strand			T	A	u	T	C	c	A	A	G	A	c	C	u	A	u	G	T	T	ribp	X058
Sense strand	C6	ribp	T	T	A	A	G	G	u	u	c	u	G	G	A	u	A	c	A	A		

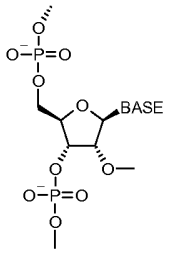
(siRNA 402)			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18		
Guide strand			T	T	u	a	u	u	C	c	A	A	G	A	c	C	u	A	T	T	ribp	X058
Sense strand	C6	ribp	T	T	A	u	A	A	G	G	u	u	c	u	G	G	A	u	A	c		

RNA

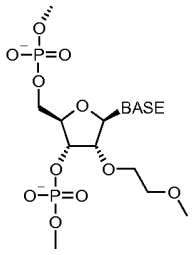
2'-OMe-RNA

DNA

2'-MOE-RNA

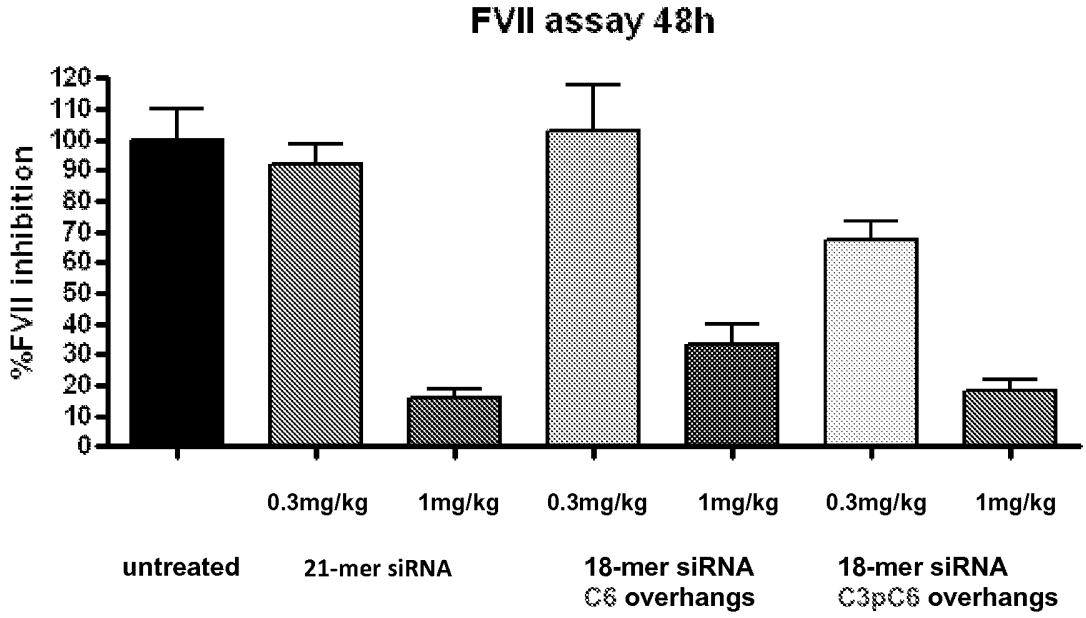


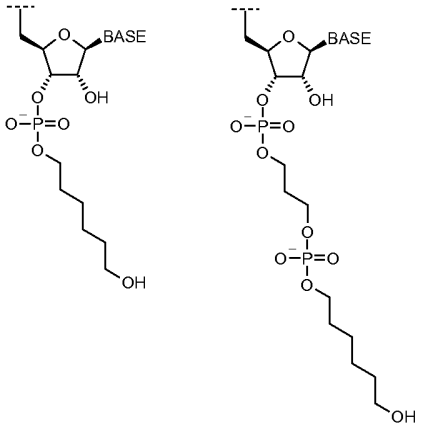
2'-OMe-RNA



2'-MOE-RNA

FIG. 11





C6 overhang C3pC6 overhang

FIG. 12

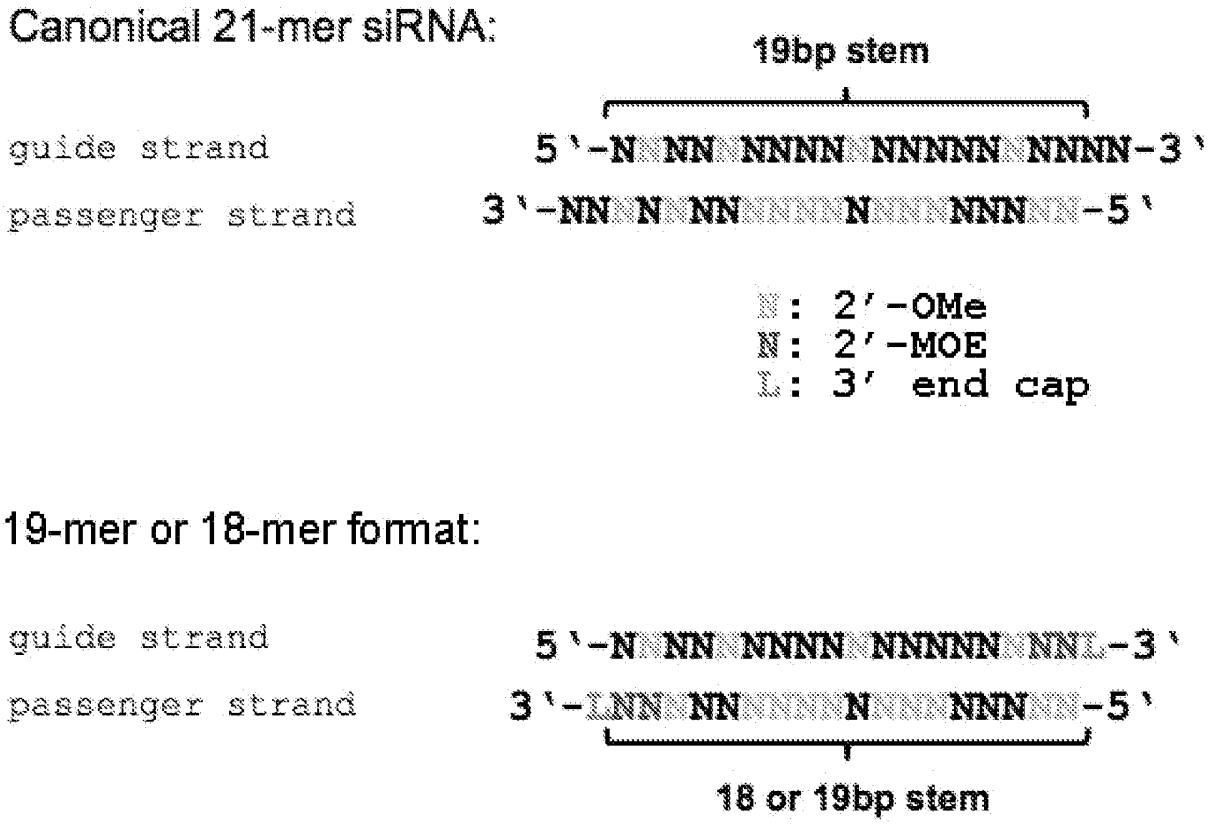

Canonical 21-mer siRNA:
19bp stem
guide strand
5'-N NN NNNN NNNNN NNNN-3'
passenger strand
3'-NN N NN N NNN -5'
N: 2'-OMe
N: 2'-MOE
L: 3' end cap
19-mer or 18-mer format:
guide strand
5'-N NN NNNN NNNNN NNL-3'
passenger strand
3'-LNN NN N NNN -5'
18 or 19bp stem

FIG. 13A

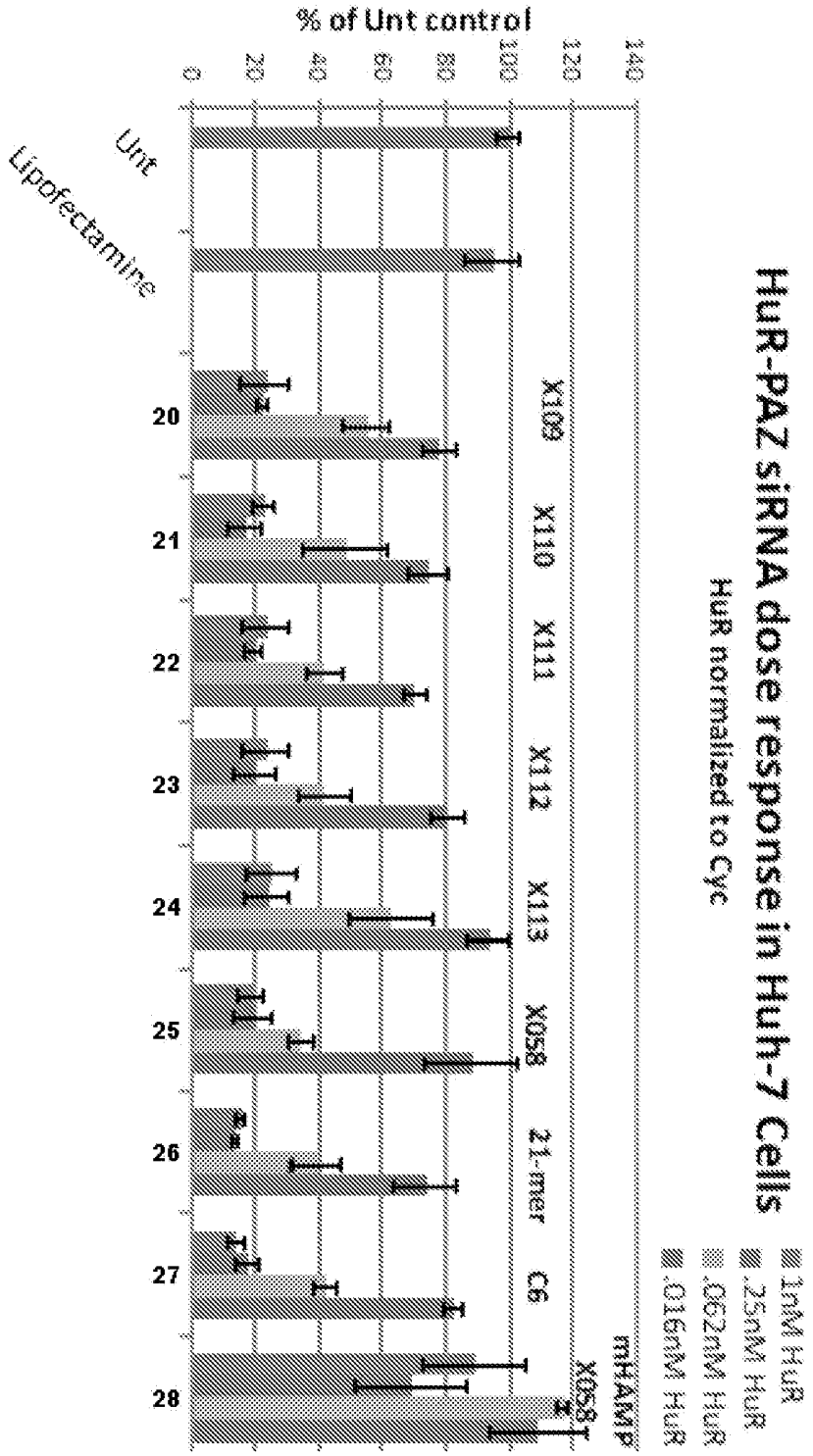

HuR-PAZ siRNA dose response in Huh-7 Cells
HuR normalized to Cyc
% of Unt control
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
140
Unt
Lipofectamine
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
X109
X110
X111
X112
X113
X058
21-mer
C6
mHAMP
X058
1nM HuR
.25nM HuR
.062nM HuR
.016nM HuR

FIG. 13B.

Duplex ID	PAZ ligand	NB ref. label or Nickname
20	X109	hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42
21	X110	hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42
22	X111	hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42
23	X112	hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42
24	X113	hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42
25	X058	hs_ELAVL1_1186_MAN_S42
26	21-mer	hs_ELAVL1_1186_A22_S26
27	C6	hs_ELAVL1_1186_A106_S42
28	mHamp	mm_HAMP_254_A106*_3'X058_S42

PAZ oligos have a DNA modification on the 5' end of AS strand which is different than X058. This could make a big difference in duration of effect.

Modification	Modified sequence
MAN	U002pUpApApU004pU004pApU004pCpU004pApU004pU004pCpCpGpU005pA005pC027pX109
MAN	UpUpApApU004pU004pApU004pCpU004pApU004pU004pCpCpGpU005pA005pC027pX058

FIG. 14A.

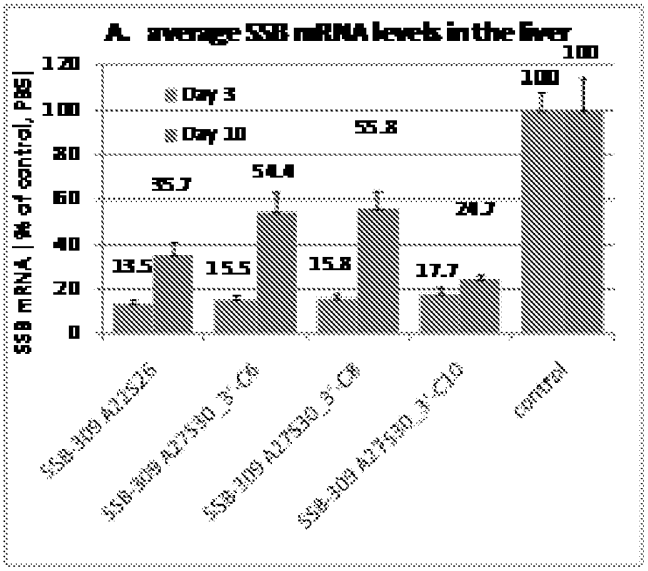


FIG. 14B

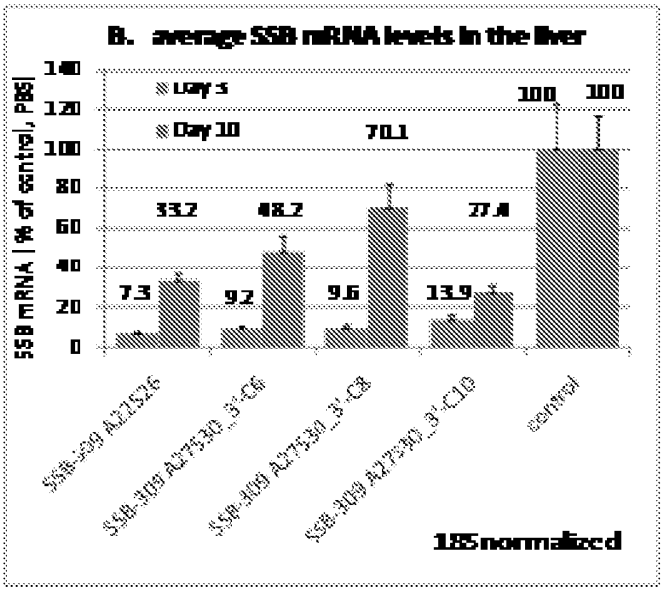
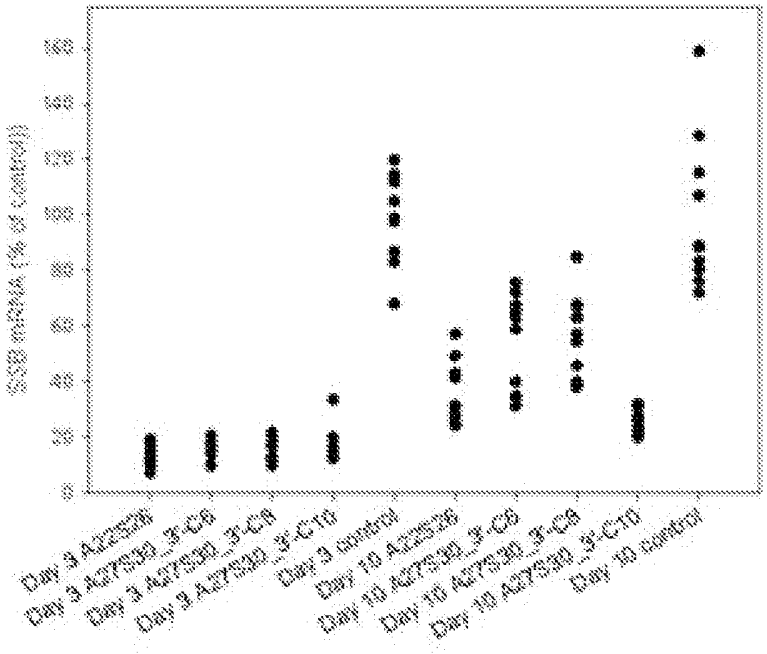


FIG. 15


Day 3 A225336
Day 3 A275330_3'-C6
Day 3 A275330_3'-C8
Day 3 A275330_3'-C10
Day 3 control
Day 10 A225336
Day 10 A275330_3'-C6
Day 10 A275330_3'-C8
Day 10 A275330_3'-C10
Day 10 control

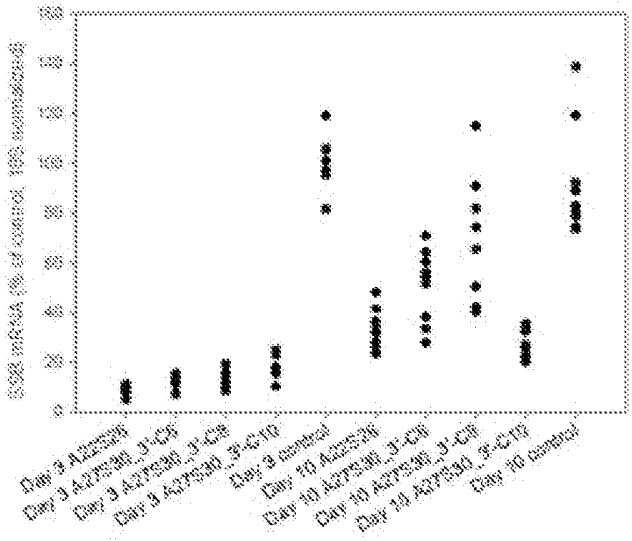
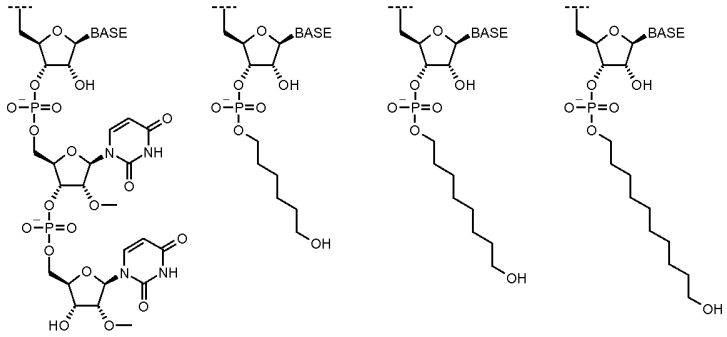
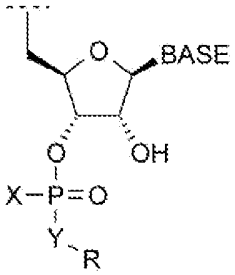

Day 3 A225336
Day 3 A275330_3'-C6
Day 3 A275330_3'-C8
Day 3 A275330_3'-C10
Day 3 control
Day 10 A225336
Day 10 A275330_3'-C6
Day 10 A275330_3'-C8
Day 10 A275330_3'-C10
Day 10 control

FIG. 16

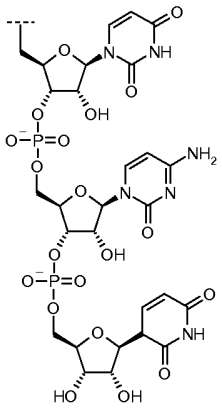


liver LNP-formulated SSB siRNAs

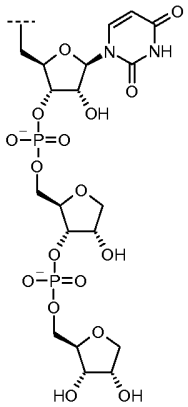


X = O^-, S^-, NH_2, BH_3, CH_3, alkyl, aryl, O-alkyl, O-aryl
Y = O, S, NH, CH_2
R = alkyl, aryl, alkyl-aryl, aryl-alkyl, ... (PAZ ligand)

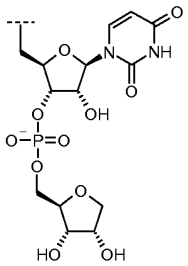
FIG. 17



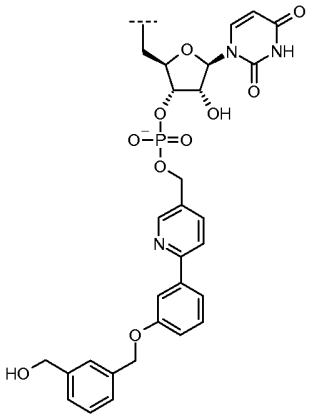
CU overhang



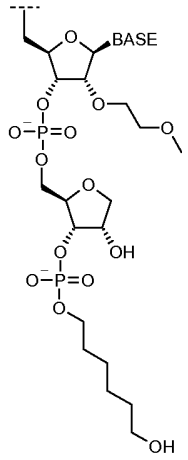
diribitol



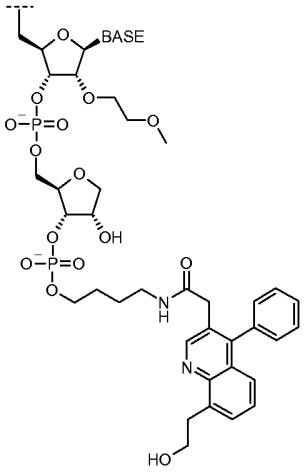
ribitol



X027

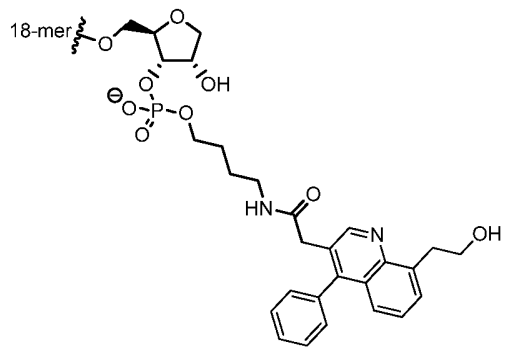


ribitol with C6 cap

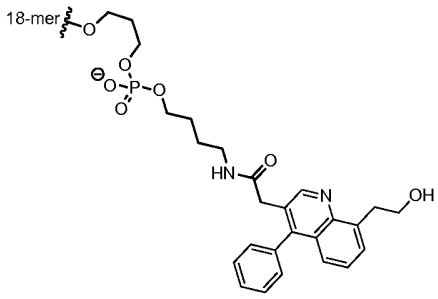


ribitol with X058 cap

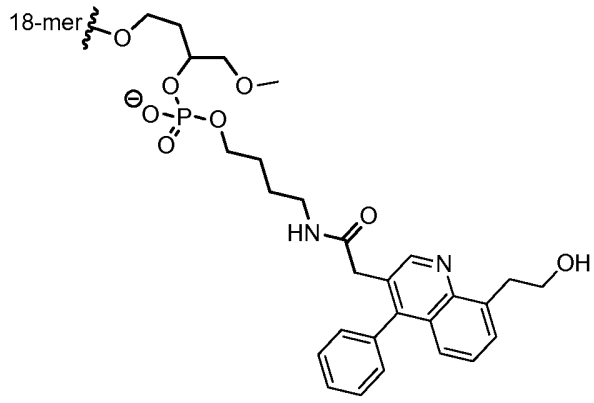
FIG. 18



Ribitol X058



C3 X058



A5300 X058

FIG. 19

Duplex ID	HuR description	IC50
1	ribitol and X058 (control)	2.92 pM
2	ribitol and C6 (control)	1.48 pM
3	C3 in place of ribitol and X058	11.83 pM
4	C3 in place of ribitol and C6	2.41 pM
5	C5300 in place of ribitol and X058	3.72 pM
6	C5300 in place of ribitol and C6	1.83 pM

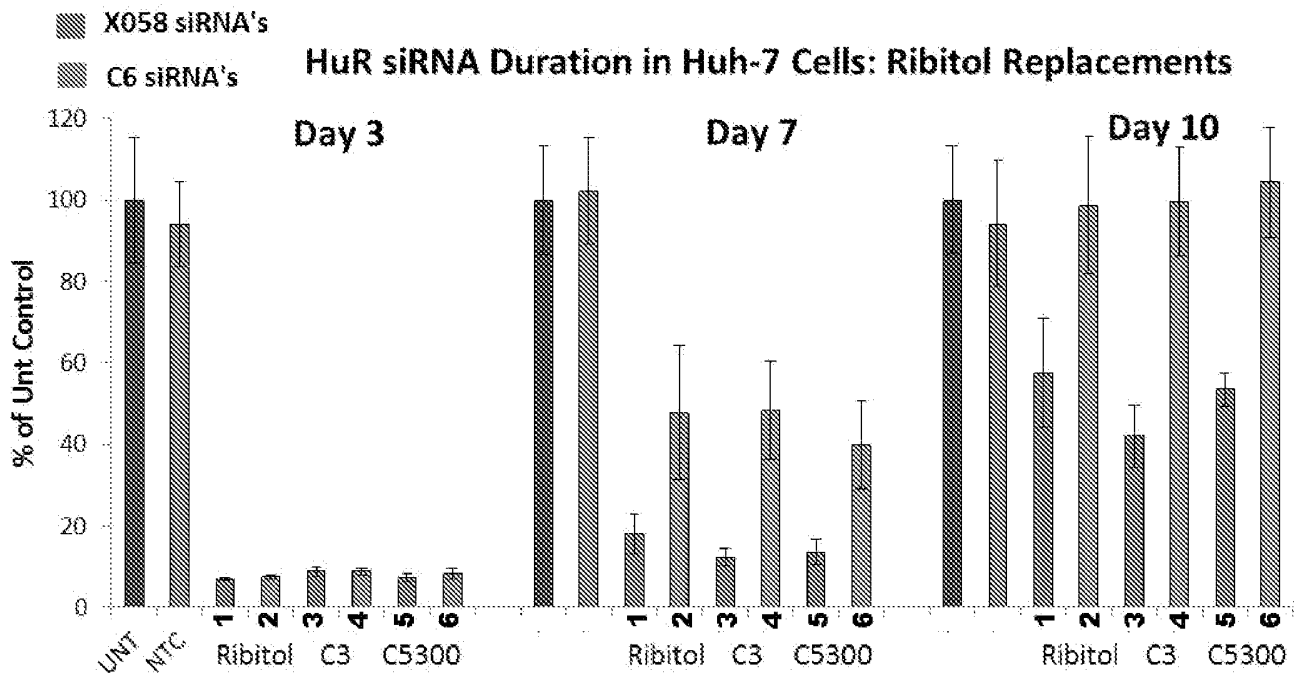
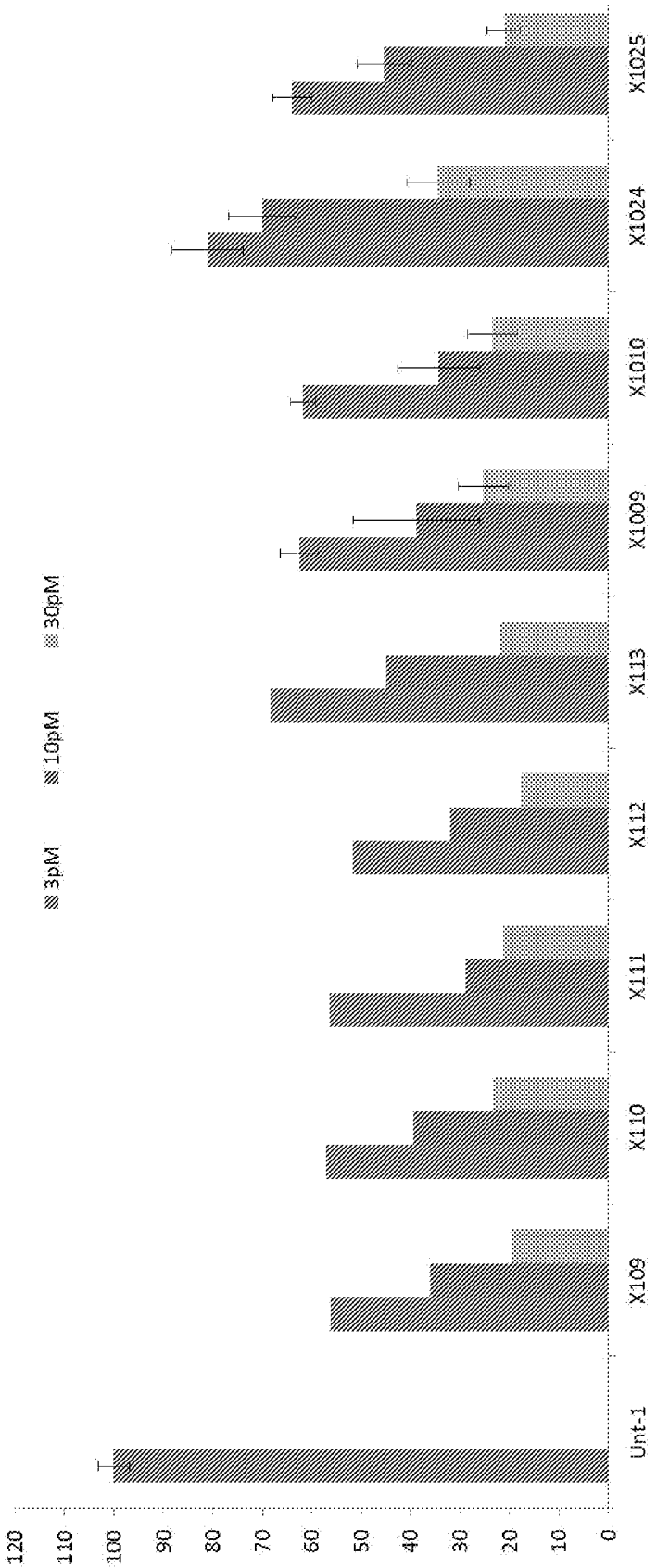


FIG. 20A


Dose Response Comparison of C3 Linker HuR-PAZ duplex's
3pM
10pM
30pM
120
110
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
Unt-1
X109
X110
X111
X112
X113
X1009
X1010
X1024
X1025

24

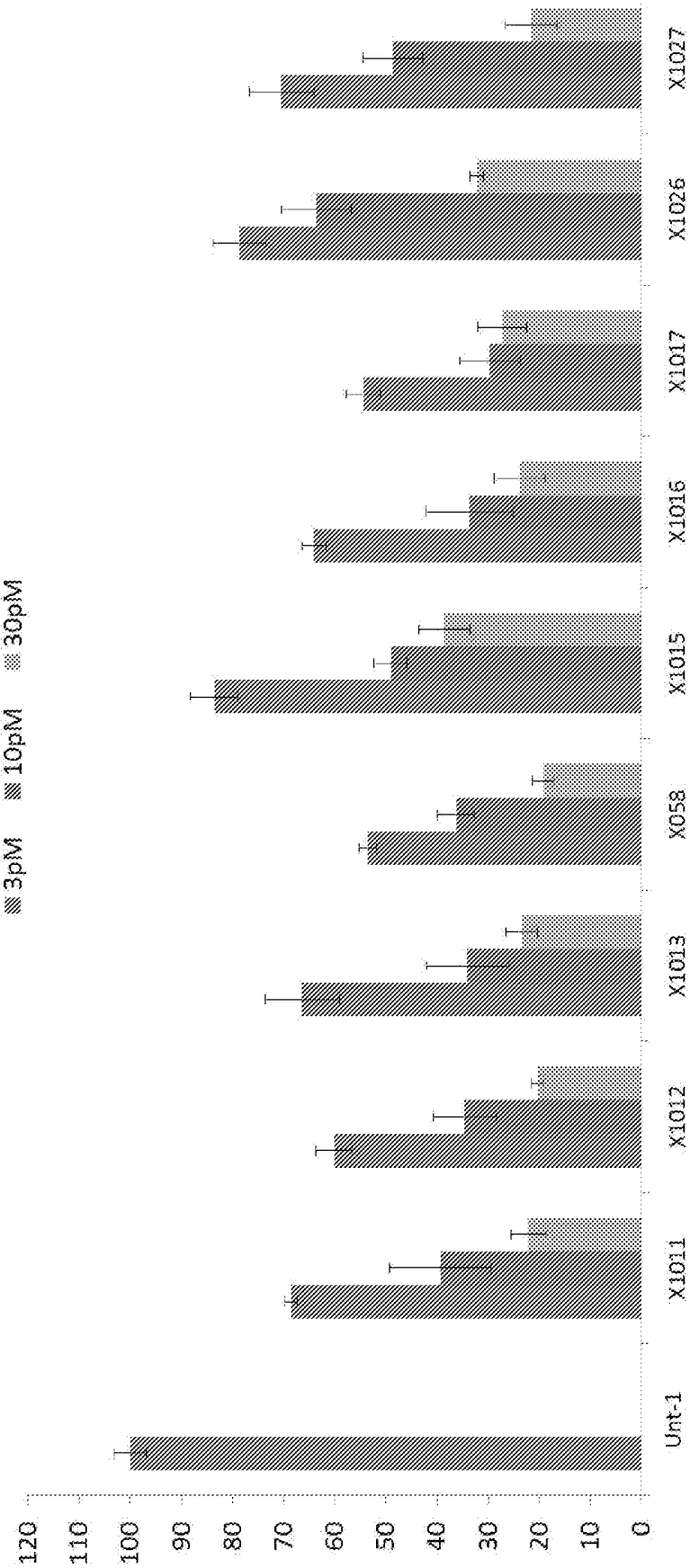
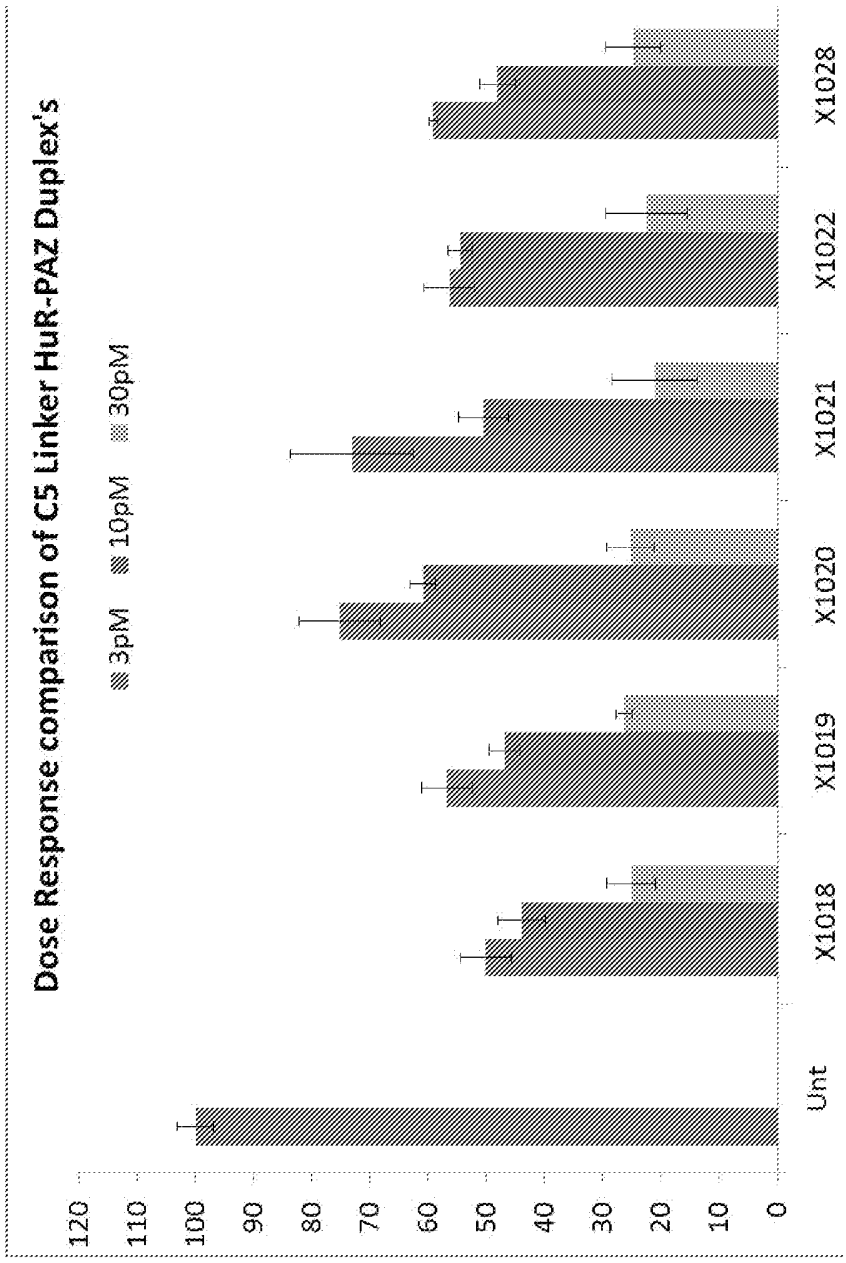

Dose Response Comparison of C4 Linker HuR-PAZ duplex's
3pM
10pM
30pM
120
110
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
Unt-1
X1011
X1012
X1013
X058
X1015
X1016
X1017
X1026
X1027

FIG 20B

FIG. 20C


Dose Response comparison of C5 Linker HuR-PAZ Duplex's
3pM
10pM
30pM
120
110
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
Unt
X1018
X1019
X1020
X1021
X1022
X1028

26

FIG. 21

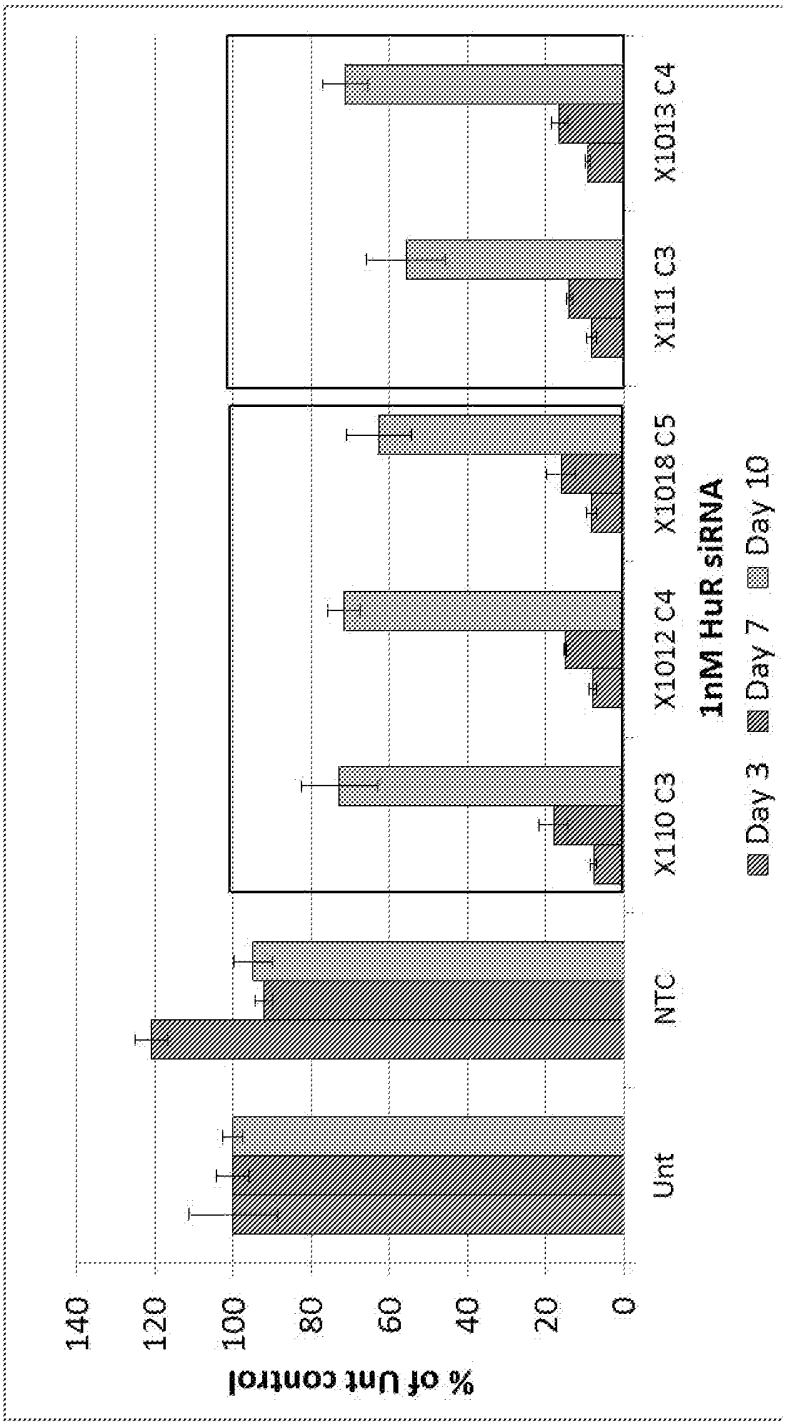

% of Unt control
140
120
100
80
60
40
20
0
Unt
NTC
X110 C3
X1012 C4
X1018 C5
X111 C3
X1013 C4
1nM HuR siRNA
Day 3
Day 7
Day 10

FIG. 22

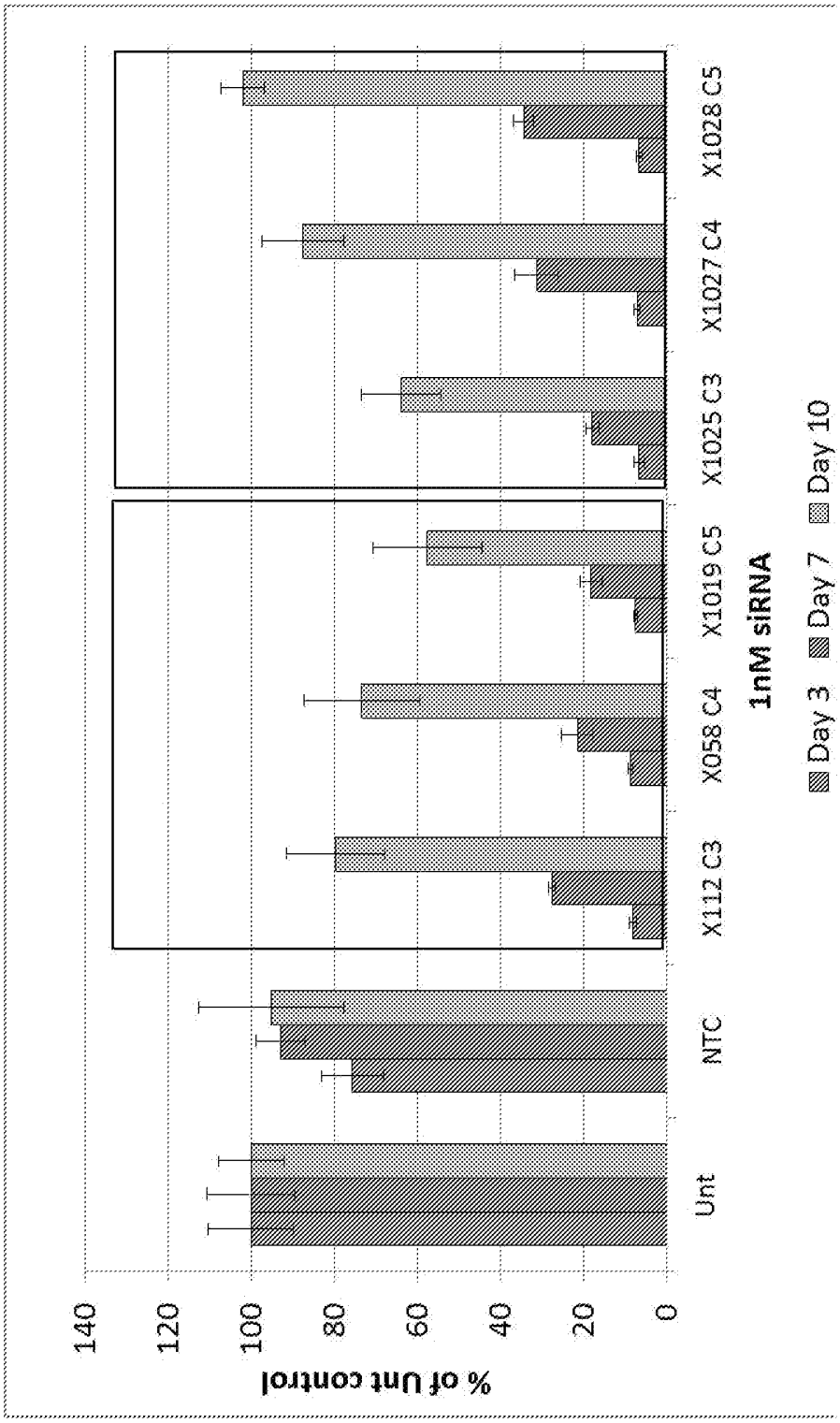

% of Unt control
140
120
100
80
60
40
20
0
Unt
NTC
X112 C3
X058 C4
X1019 C5
X1025 C3
X1027 C4
X1028 C5
1nM siRNA
Day 3
Day 7
Day 10

FIG. 23

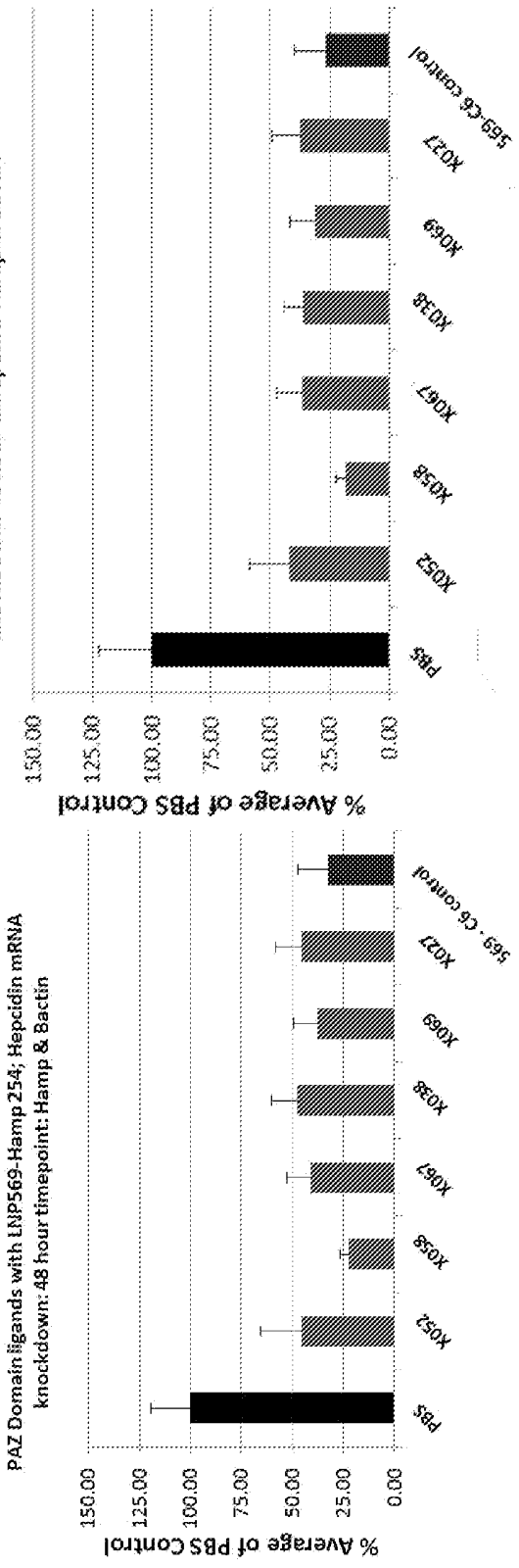

PAZ Domain ligands with LNP569-Hamp254; Hepcidin mRNA knockdown: 48 hour timepoint: Hamp & Bactin
% Average of PBS Control
150.00
125.00
100.00
75.00
50.00
25.00
0.00
PBS
X052
X058
X067
X038
X069
X027
569-C6 control
PAZ Domain ligands with LNP569-Hamp 254; Hepcidin mRNA knockdown: 48 hour timepoint: Hamp & Bactin
% Average of PBS Control
150.00
125.00
100.00
75.00
50.00
25.00
0.00
PBS
X052
X058
X067
X038
X069
X027
569 - C6 control

FIG. 24

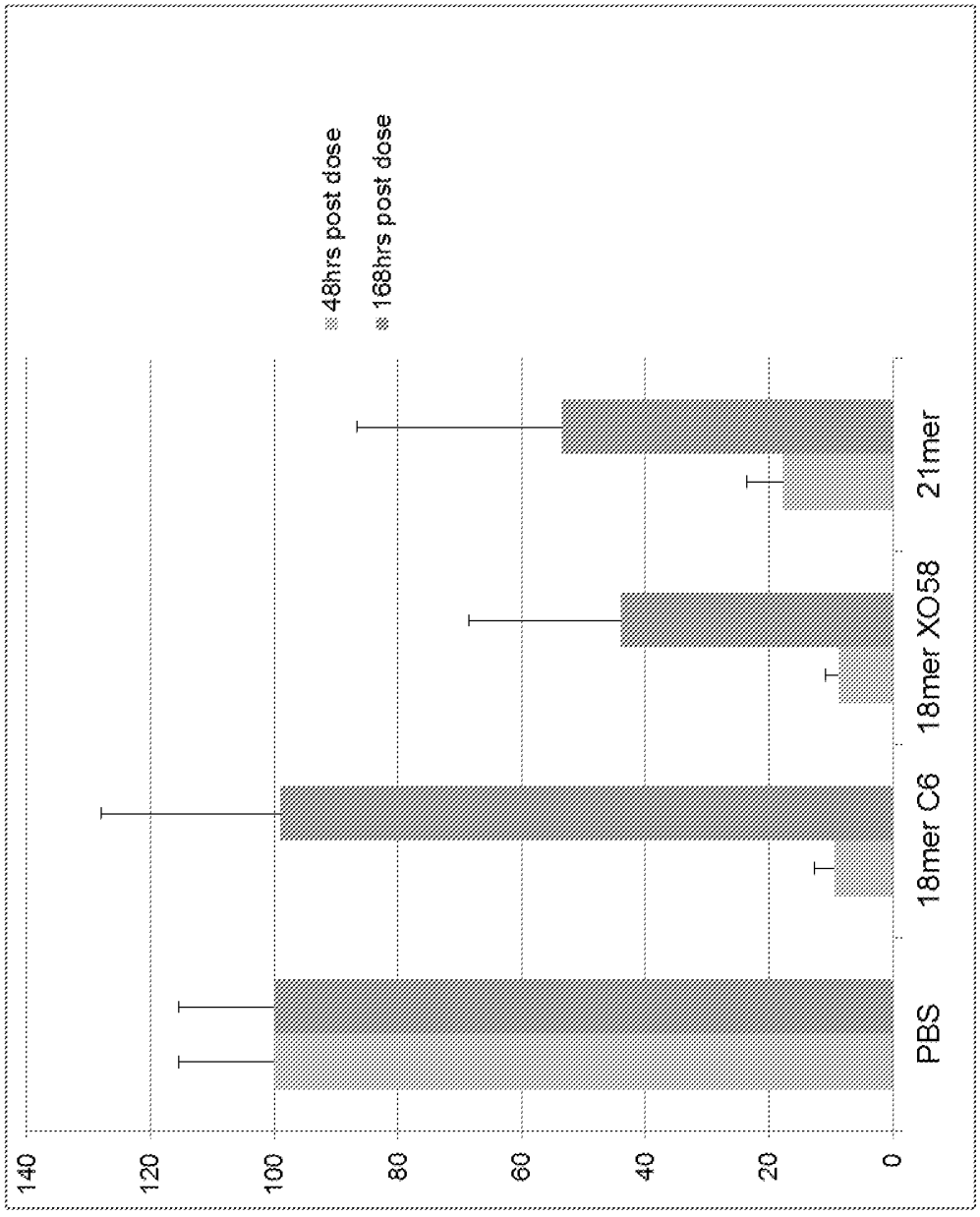
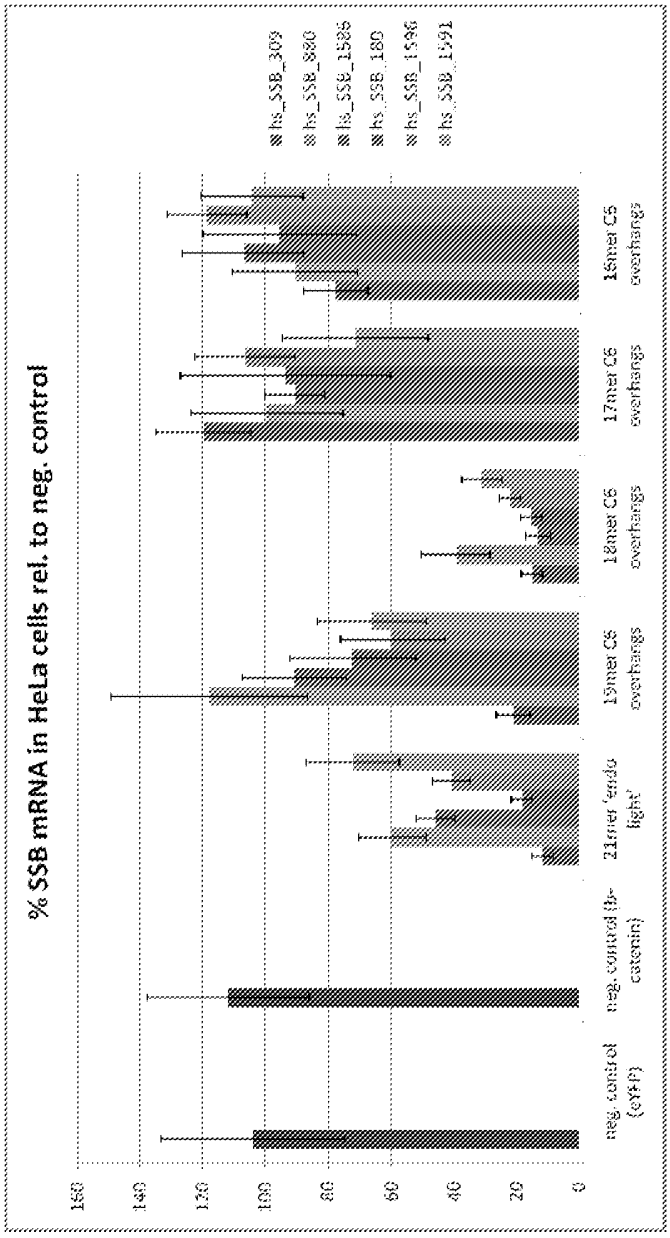

Hepcidin mRNA
48hrs post dose
168hrs post dose
140
120
100
80
60
40
20
0
PBS
18mer C6
18mer XO58
21mer
DLP-677, 1 mg/kg

FIG. 25


% SSB mRNA in HeLa cells rel. to neg. control
160
140
120
100
80
60
40
20
0
neg. control (eYFP)
neg. control (b-catenin)
21mer 'endo light'
15mer C6 overhangs
18mer C6 overhangs
17mer C6 overhangs
15mer C6 overhangs
hs_SSB_309
hs_SSB_880
hs_SSB_1585
hs_SSB_180
hs_SSB_1586
hs_SSB_1591

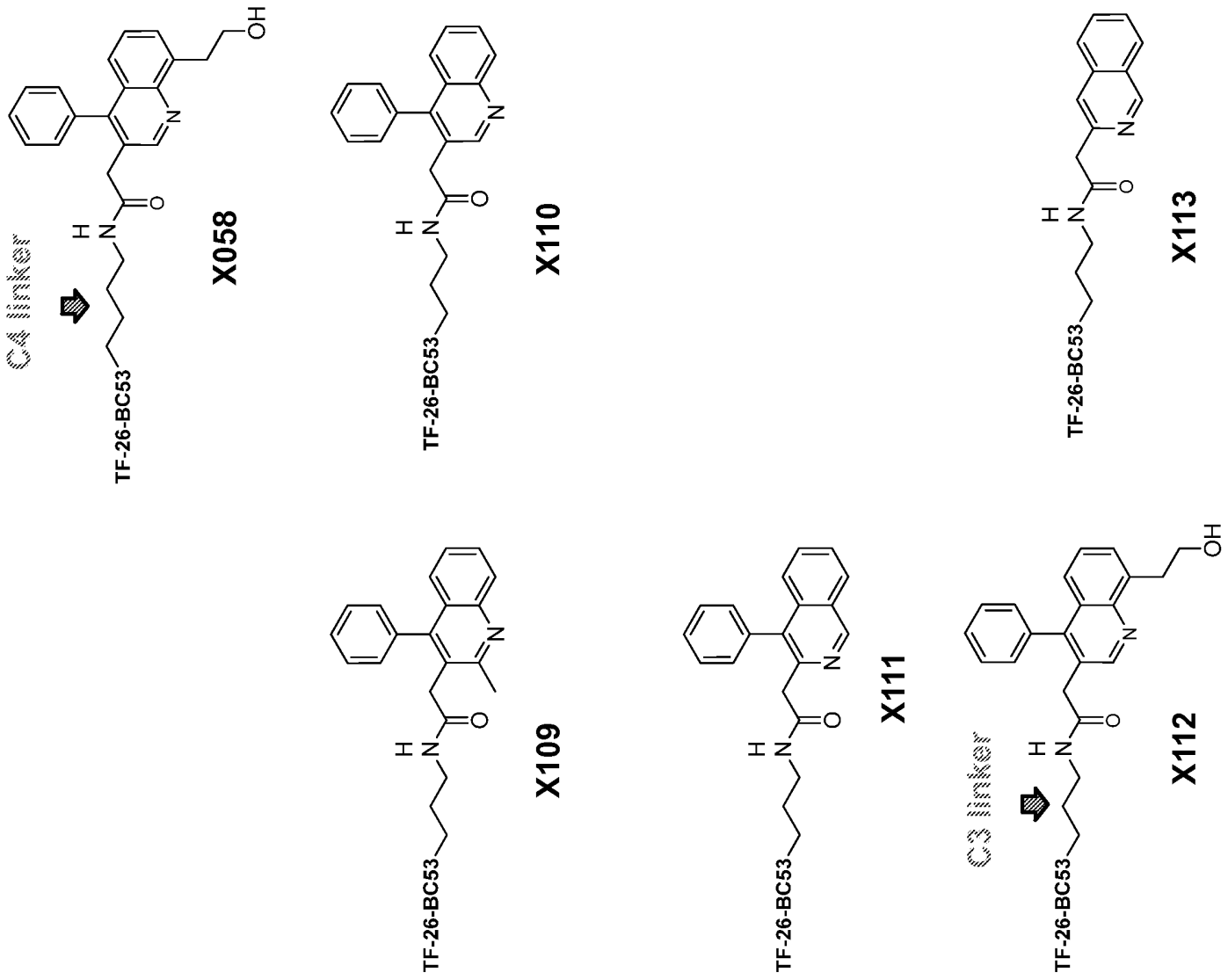
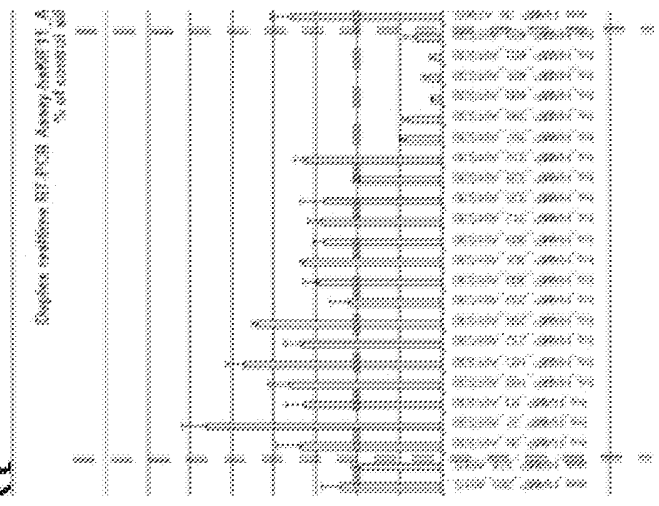
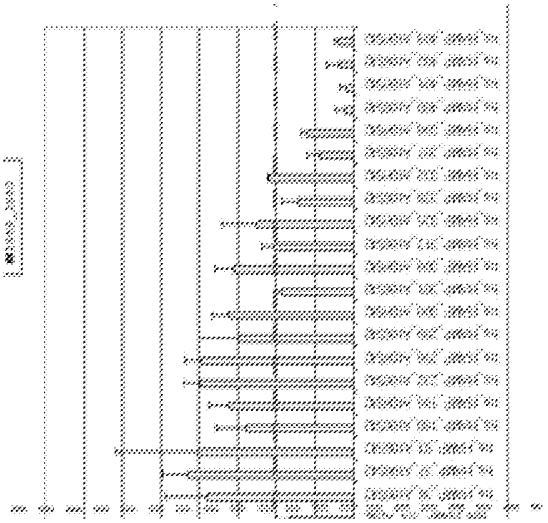


FIG. 26.

FIG. 27.



Chem. Mod.
19-mer dTsdT
siRNAs, HuH7 cells



Chem. Mod.
18-mer dTsdT
siRNAs, HuH7 cells

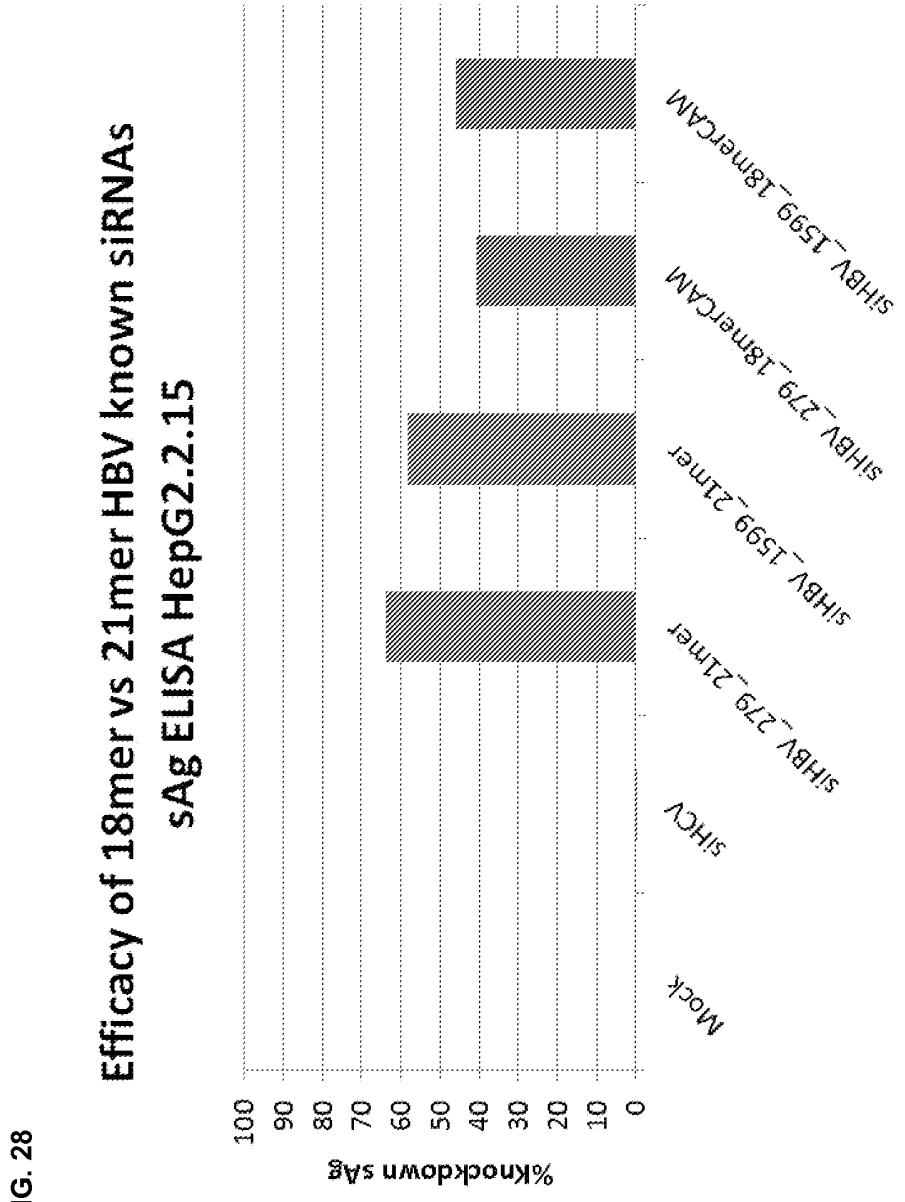

Efficacy of 18mer vs 21mer HBV known siRNAs
sAg ELISA HepG2.2.15
%knockdown sAg
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
Mock
siHCV
siHBV_279_21mer
siHBV_1599_21mer
siHBV_279_18merCAM
siHBV_1599_18merCAM

FIG. 28

摘要

本披露涉及包含HBV RNAi劑的組合物。在一些實施例中，該HBV RNAi劑包含正義鏈和反義鏈，每條鏈是18-mer並且這些鏈一起形成平端雙鏈體，其中至少一條鏈的3'端終止於磷酸酯或修飾的核苷間接頭並且按5'至3'順序進一步包含：間隔子；第二磷酸酯或修飾的核苷間接頭；和3'端帽。在一些實施例中，該正義鏈和反義鏈兩者的3'端按5'至3'順序都進一步包含：間隔子；第二磷酸酯或修飾的核苷間接頭；和3'端帽。這兩條鏈可以具有相同或不同的間隔子、磷酸酯或修飾的核苷間接頭和/或3'端帽。這些鏈可以是核糖核苷酸，或者任選地，一個或多個核苷酸可以被修飾或取代。任選地，至少一個核苷酸包含修飾的核苷間接頭。任選地，該RNAi劑可以在一個或兩個5'端被修飾。任選地，該正義鏈可以包含5'端帽，該5'端帽減少由此鏈介導的RNA干擾的量。任選地，該RNAi劑附接至配體。此形式可以被用來設計針對多種不同靶標和序列的RNAi劑。本披露還涉及用於製備此類組合物的工藝，以及此類組合物例如介導RNA干擾的方法和用途。本披露還涉及治療、減輕和預防患者的HBV的方法，所述方法涉及向該患者給予治療量的HBV RNAi劑的步驟。